

PETER LANG
New York • Washington, D.C./Baltimore • Bern
Frankfurt am Main • Berlin • Brussels • Vienna • Oxford

April Wilson

German Quickly

A Grammar for Reading GERMAN

REVISED EDITION



PETER LANG
New York • Washington, D.C./Baltimore • Bern
Frankfurt am Main • Berlin • Brussels • Vienna • Oxford

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Wilson, April.
German quickly: a grammar for reading German /
April Wilson. — Rev. ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references.
1. German language—Grammar. 2. German language—Textbooks
for foreign speakers—English. I. Title.
PF3112.W55 438.2'421—dc21 2003012899
ISBN 0-8204-6759-6

Bibliographic information published by **Die Deutsche Bibliothek**.
Die Deutsche Bibliothek lists this publication in the "Deutsche
Nationalbibliografie"; detailed bibliographic data is available
on the Internet at http://dnb.ddb.de/.

Cover design by Lisa Barfield

The paper in this book meets the guidelines for permanence and durability
of the Committee on Production Guidelines for Book Longevity
of the Council of Library Resources.



275 Seventh Avenue, 28th Floor, New York, NY 10001
www.peterlangusa.com

Printed in the United States of America

Foreword

German Quickly: A Grammar for Reading German evolved from the German reading course I have taught to students in the University of Chicago community over the past thirty years. It has the following features that make it a valuable text for students who need to learn German quickly:

1. Explanations have been revised several times in response to student questions and comments, so that the book provides important grammatical information about the structure of German, which simply is not provided by other German textbooks. In this edition, I have expanded upon the grammar explanations of the 1993 edition, and I have included more reading and general review selections. I have also added questions to some of the exercise sentences in anticipation of common mistakes, and I have added reassuring comments when I know students might be feeling overwhelmed.

2. It carefully describes key grammatical points in detail without giving students superfluous information. Consequently, students have been able to translate passages from thinkers as complex as Freud, Kafka, Mann, Rilke, Heidegger, Tillich, Nietzsche, and Benjamin after about 100 hours or so of study.

3. Proverbs and aphorisms are used as translation exercises, even in the early pages of the text. These help sustain students' enthusiasm for German when their ability to read is at an elementary level. *German Quickly* is both scholarly and fun.

4. There are 12 sections in the appendix, including strategies for reading German, an important word list, a summary of German grammar, verb charts, and a Humanities Vocabulary, which is especially valuable for students beginning to read scholarly articles in specialized fields. There is also a partial answer key, which should prove helpful to students studying German independently.

5. People reading *German Quickly* are welcome to communicate with me though e-mail: april@aprilwilson.com. I am eager to know who my readers are, and would be happy to suggest additional readings based on specific interests.

The Structure of German Quickly, and How to Use It

This text consists primarily of grammar explanations with sample exercises and an accompanying vocabulary. There are also periodic final exercises for additional vocabulary and grammar practice. Cognates are placed in italics in the exercise sentences to encourage students to guess their meanings.

Most of the exercise sentences consist either of proverbs or of a running saga of two major characters—Fräulein Meier and a mailman. Some of the proverbs included are unfamiliar to most Germans and are not representative of German culture. However, I have included them because they are intriguing. They contain a wide variety of ideas about life and human nature—some insightful, some bizarre, and some whimsical—which tend to add to the interest of learning a foreign language. Fräulein Meier and the mailman are intended for fun. (Although a German woman of Fräulein Meier's age living in Germany today would be called *Frau* Meier instead, I have retained the old-fashioned term *Fräulein* to highlight the slightly Victorian nature of her romance with the mailman.)

In addition to reading passages from Bichsel, Kleist, Buber, and Nietzsche, I have included some Biblical reading passages and Grimm fairy tales because they are familiar and repetitive, and because people enjoy reading something "real" even when their grasp of German is not quite solid.

German Quickly is best suited for a semester reading course; it can be covered in a quarter, however. In a five week (highly) intensive course, I have been able to go through it in four weeks. In a fifteen week course, I generally cover it in from ten to eleven weeks. In any class, this text should be supplemented with outside readings. I have deliberately kept the number of reading passages to a minimum so that, with additional readings, *German Quickly* could be adapted to any German reading course in the general humanities, philosophy, theology, art history, history, sociology, classics, linguistics, music, and the like. A teacher also could have the free-

dom to update reading materials whenever he or she wished. A suggested syllabus for *German Quickly* is given at the end of Appendix A.

Some useful German readers might be: *Einander Verstehen: Ein Deutsches Literarisches Lesebuch* (Marianne and Martin Loschmann), *Dichter, Denker und Erzähler* (Edith Ehrlich and Peter Niels Heller), *Modern Theological German* (Helmut Ziefle). Dual language texts, such as Wittgenstein's *Zettel,* or Kafka's *Parables and Paradoxes* can also be helpful, or texts originally in English such as Hemingway's *Der alte Mann und das Meer,* or mysteries by Agatha Christie. The Bible is also a good source for German passages. Moreover, students can do Internet searches for German articles that specifically interest them. CNN's web site also offers a German edition that is easily accessible, and German magazines and newspapers such as *Der Spiegel* and *Die Zeit* have online editions.

I have discussed the advantages and disadvantages of various German dictionaries in Appendix I, and I would strongly recommend reading this section before purchasing a dictionary. However, dictionaries are often revised, so students should supplement my comments with reviews on web sites such as Amazon.com.

It is important to acquire a German vocabulary of the most common words as soon as possible, and I include advice about memorizing words in Chapter 2, section 2.10.

German Quickly has a section in Appendix C entitled "English Grammar Necessary for Learning German." I have placed chapter references next to my grammar explanations, and I hope students unfamiliar with grammar will consider it a useful reference.

The beginning exercise sentences at the end of each chapter tend to be easier to translate, while the later sentences are more challenging. Students may wish to translate the easier sentences when reading *German Quickly* for the first time; they can use the harder sentences as review sentences once they become more familiar with grammar. Students also might find it helpful to mark sentences that seem confusing initially, to see if they become clearer during review sessions.

I hope that *German Quickly* will live up to its title, and that people will enjoy this introductory text as well as any subsequent readings. After all, *Frisch begonnen ist halb gewonnen!*—A fresh start is half the victory!

Acknowledgments

Thanks are due to the publishers for permission to reproduce the following copyright texts:

"November" from *Eigentlich möchte Frau Blum den Milchmann kennenlemen* by Peter Bichsel, copyright 1964. Walter-Verlag, Olten. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

Selections from *Die Erzählungen der Chassidim* by Martin Buber, copyright 1949. Manesse Verlag, Zürich. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

Selections from *Die Erzählungen* by Thomas Mann. copyright 1966. S. Fischer Verlag, Frankfurt am Main. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

Selections from *Deutsche Literaturgeschichte* by Fritz Martini, copyright 1965. Alfred Kröner Verlag, Stuttgart. Reprinted by permission of the publisher.

"Der Schwan" (translated by Ludwig Zimmerer) and "Der Elefant" from *Der Elefant* by Slawomir Mrozek, copyright 1967. Gustav Kiepenheuer, Berlin. Reprinted by pemission of the publisher.

Selections from *Zettel* by Ludwig Wittgenstein, copyright 1967. Basil Blackwell, Oxford. Reprinted by permission of G. E. M. Anscombe.

Special thanks are also due to my extraordinary students who through the years have contributed enormously to the vision and revision of my book, and to my family, especially my mother, who named *German Quickly.*

Contents

(Contents listed in bold face type are those which students often need to refer to.)

Pronunciation Guide

Although it is not necessary to learn to pronounce words in order to read German, it is helpful to have a general idea of how they sound in order to be able to find them in your dictionaries more quickly. Moreover, if you look at some words, you can guess their English definitions by saying them. For example, *jung* is pronounced *young,* and indeed does mean *young.*

When you are pronouncing these words, try to guess their definitions as well. All German nouns are capitalized; examples are: *Garten, Lampe,* and *Gras.* All German infinitives end in *-n* or *-en;* examples are: *bringen, finden,* and *kommen.* (There is an answer key to the definitions of all these words in Appendix J.)

Vowels

Vowels are either long or short. They are long . . .
when they are doubled: *Paar, Haar, Schnee;*
when they are followed by *h*: *sehen, Jahr, Ohrring;*
or when they are followed by a single consonant: *gut, rot*

Vowels are short . . .
when they are followed by a double consonant: *Bett, Mann, hoffen;*
or when followed by two or more consonants: *sitzen, ernst*

a long (as the *a* in father): *Vater, haben, sagen*
a short (as the *o* in hot): *Wasser, Hand, alt*
e long (as in m*ay*): *See, geben*
e short (as in l*e*t): *Ende, Henne*
i long (as in gr*ee*t): *Tiger, Universität*
i short (as in s*i*t): *ist, dick, Mitte, Mittag, Mittwoch*
ie is like the long *i* (although this sounds like an *e* in English): *Bier, hier, fliegen, liegen*
o long (as in *o*pen): *Sohn, Brot, Segelboot*
o short (as in s*o*ng): *Sonne, Sommer*
u long (as in d*u*ne): *Blume, Pudel* (a dog!), *Handschuh*
u short (as in b*u*sh): *Mutter, und, unter*

Umlauted vowels (modified vowels)

ä long (as in h*a*ir): *Mädchen, Väter, Waschbär (literally: washing-bear)*
ä short (is the same as the short *e): Männer, Länder, Rotkäppchen* (a fairy tale heroine)
ö long (pronounce the German long *e* with rounded lips): *Söhne, schön* (beautiful)
ö short (pronounce the German short *e* with rounded lips): *öffnen, östlich*
ü long (pronounce the German long *i* with rounded lips): *kühl, grün, Bücherwurm*
ü short (pronounce the German short *i* with rounded lips): *Hütte, küssen*
ä, ö, and *ü* are occasionally written *ae, oe,* and *ue*. Examples are: *spaet* rather than *spät; Oel* rather than *Öl;* and *Bueffel* rather than *Büffel (an animal).*

Dipthongs

The diphthongs ei, ai, ey, and *ay* (are like the *i* in wine): *Wein, Mai*
au (like the *ou* in mouse): *Maus, Haus, Augenblick* (literally: the blink of an eye—moment)
äu and *eu* (are like the *oy* in joy): *neu, Fräulein, Nachteule, Feuer* (A *Feuerstuhl* is literally a *fire chair,* and it means *motorcycle*!)

Consonants

The following consonants and combinations of consonants are pronounced as they are in English: *f, h, k, m, n, p, t, ck, nk, ph.* (I have placed an * in front of the differences in pronunciation of consonants that are most important.)

b is like the English *b* when it begins a word: *bevor, Baumwolle* (literally: tree-wool); but when ending a word, it is like the English *p*: *halb, Grab*

c is seldom seen at the beginning of a German word; in German, it is always either a proper name or a "foreign" (Latin, French) word.

c before *a, e, i* is like the *ts* in bats: *Cäsar, Cicero*

c before *a, o, u* is like the English *k: Café*

ch There are four different *ch* sounds (although it does not really matter whether or not you can differentiate them) *ch* is pronounced in the front part of the mouth. and it approximates the *h* in hew. It follows *e, i,* umlauts, consonants, and in a few words it precedes *e* or *i: ich, mich, Licht, China*

ch is pronounced in the back part of the mouth as in the Scotch Loch, and it follows *a, o, u,* and *au: Nacht, Macht*

ch is pronounced like the English *k* when beginning words of Greek origin or preceding the vowels *a* and *u* or consonants: *Christus, Charakter*

ch is pronounced like the *sh* in chef when beginning words of French origin: *Chauvinist*

chs is pronounced like the *x* in six: *sechs, Lachs* (goes well with bagels!)

d when beginning a word is like the English *d: Donnerstag, Dingsbums* (thing-a-ma-jig) when ending a word, it is like the English *t: Hund, Gesundheit*

g when beginning a word is like the English *g* in good: *Goldfisch;* or when it begins a syllable, it also takes a hard *g: Regen* (What part of speech is *Regen?* How do you know?) but when it ends a word or syllable, it is like the English *k: Tag, Weg*

-ig as an ending is pronounced like the German *ich: König, hungrig, durstig* but when an ending is added, *g* becomes a hard *g* again: *Königin, hungriger, durstiger*

h when beginning a word or syllable is like the English *h: hören, helfen, harmlos, aha*

* *j* is like the English *y* in young: *jung, ja, Jahrhundert*

l is like the English *l* in land: *laut, Lippe*

ng is pronounced like the English *ng* in singer: *England, länger, Fingerhut* (literally: finger-hat)

pf both letters are pronounced: *Apfel, Pfund, pfui*

qu is pronounced like the English *kv: Quecksilber, Qualität*

r has no equivalent in English. It is somewhat like the French *r: studieren, reparieren, klar*

s when it begins a word or syllable is like the English *z* in zest: *senden, Suppe, Sanduhr* (literally: sand-clock); otherwise, it is like the English *s* in sun: *Gast, Fledermaus*

* *ß* and *ss* are pronounced like the English *ss* in mass. *ss* is often used between two short vowels: *Klasse, besser.* Prior to the German spelling reform of 1996, *ß*

was often used at the end of a word or syllable: *Kuß, muß.* Now, *ß* becomes ss after a short vowel sound: *dass* (*that*) and it remains as an *ß* after a long vowel or a diphthong: *Erdnuß, barfuß.* (Do not worry if this seems confusing. It will not be important with regard to reading German. However, it is crucial that you do not mistake an *ß* for a B.)

sp and *st* are both pronounced like the English *sh* in she: *spanisch, Spinne* (an insect), *Staat, Stinktier* (an animal!)

th is like the English *t: Luther, Goethe, Beethoven; Theologie*

* *v* is pronounced like the English *f* in words of German origin: *Volk, Vorwort, vier, Vergißmeinnicht* (a flower); but in words of "foreign" origin, *v* is pronounced like the English *v: November*

* *w* is like the English *v: Wald, Wörterbuch, Wassermelone*

x is like the English *ks: Axt, Vexierbild* (literally: vexing-picture—a jigsaw puzzle)

z is pronounced like the English *ts* in bats: *Zoo, Zickzack, Zigarre.* (In his novel *Der Zauberberg* [*Magic Mountain*] Thomas Mann referred to what kind of object as a *Quecksilber Zigarre*?)

1

A General Introduction: Cognates, Genders, Compounds, and Plurals

(Note that this is just a general introduction, and do not be concerned if you do not assimilate all the information presented in this chapter. It will be a useful reference later.)

1.1. Cognates

A cognate is a word that is derived from the same original form; *kühl* and *cool* are cognates, as are *Maus* and *mouse; Vater* and *father; frei* and *free.* Here are some consonant relationships that exist between German and English and which will help you figure out German-English cognates more easily. Being able to recognize cognates reduces the number of words you need to memorize or look up in your dictionaries.

German	can correspond to	**English**
f, ff (medial or final)		*p*
Affe		ape
hoffen		to hope
scharf		sharp
Schiff		ship

pf (initial, medial, or final)	can correspond to	*p, pp*
Pfeife		pipe
Pflaster		plaster
Apfel		apple
b (medial or final)	can correspond to	*v* or *f*
geben		to give
Grab		grave
halb		half
d	can correspond to	*th*
Pfad		path
Feder		feather
Dorn		thorn
Ding		thing
ch	can correspond to	*k*
Buch		book
machen		to make
suchen		to seek
cht	can correspond to	*ght*
Macht		might
Sicht		sight
Recht		right
Nacht		night
g	can correspond to	*y* or *i*
sagen		to say
legen		to lay
Nagel		nail
fliegen		to fly
k	can correspond to	*c*
Kalb		calf
komisch		comical
kommen		to come
kritisch		critical
s, ss, ß (medial or final)	can correspond to	*t*
hassen		to hate

grüßen		to greet
Fuß		foot
Straße		street
besser		better
tz, z	can correspond to	*t*
Zunge		tongue
Pflanze		plant
Katze		cat
t	can correspond to	*d*
trinken		to drink
Tochter		daughter
Karte		card
kalt		cold

Note that although there is a correspondence between consonants, you sometimes need to be more flexible with vowels: *hören*—to hear; *Haus*—house; *lassen*—to let; *Sonne*—sun; *kalt*—cold

1.2. Figure out the following

(a) Wörter: Pfefferminze, Kirchenmaus, Nachtigall *(a bird)*, tanzen
(b) Sprichwörter (proverbs): Blut ist dicker als Wasser.
Die Ratten verlassen das sinkende Schiff.
Reiche *(rich)* Leute *(people)* haben fette Katzen.
(c) Buchtitel: Dante: *Die göttliche Kömödie*
Shakespeare: *Hamlet, Prinz von Dänemark; Ende gut, alles gut; König Lear*
Beckett: *Warten auf Godot*
Albee: *Wer hat Angst vor Virginia Woolf?*
Simon: *Barfuß im Park*
Hemingway: *Der alte Mann und das Meer*

1.3. Genders

German nouns can be one of three genders: masculine, neuter, or feminine. If an article precedes a noun. it will indicate the gender of the noun. Examples are:

masculine	**feminine**	**neuter**
der Mann *(the man)*	*die* Frau *(the woman)*	*das* Kind *(the child)*
der Wind *(the wind)*	*die* Lampe *(the lamp)*	*das* Tier *(the animal)*

der Apfel *(the apple)*	*die* Sonne *(the sun)*	*das* Buch *(the book)*
der Löffel *(the spoon)*	*die* Gabel *(the fork)*	*das* Messer *(the knife)*

Although you do not need to memorize the genders of nouns in order to read German, it will later be important for you to identify these genders in context. Therefore, you may eventually wish to use the following basic rules to determine the gender of a noun as a reference section. There is also a list of common suffixes that gives their genders and plural endings in Appendix H.

Masculine

(a) nouns that denote male beings: der Vater *(father),* der Onkel *(uncle),* der Hahn *(rooster),* der König *(king)*

(b) nouns that end in *-er,* which have been formed from verbs:
der Fahrer *(the driver)* cf. fahren *(to drive)*
der Erfinder *(the inventor)* cf. erfinden *(to invent)*

Feminine

(a) nouns that denote female beings: die Mutter *(mother),* die Tante *(aunt),* die Henne *(hen)*

(b) nouns ending in *-ei, -ie, -heit, -keit, -ik, -schaft, -tät, -tion, -ung:* die Geologie, die Gesundheit *(health),* die Freundlichkeit *(friendliness),* die Musik, die Freundschaft *(friendship),* die Universität, die Rotation, die Sammlung *(collection)*

(c) nouns that end in *-in* (a suffix added to nouns that are usually masculine):
die Nachbarin *(the neighbor lady)* cf. der Nachbar *(the neighbor)*
die Freundin *(the girl friend)* cf. der Freund *(the friend)*
die Königin *(the queen)* cf. der König *(the king)*

(d) moreover, many (but not all) nouns that end in *-e* are also feminine: die Erde *(earth),* die Rose *(rose),* die Hölle *(hell)*

Neuter

(a) nouns that end in *-chen* or *-lein* (which are diminutives):
das Fräulein *(the little woman)* cf. die Frau *(the woman)*
das Häuschen *(the little house)* cf. das Haus *(the house)*
das Brüderlein *(the little brother)* cf. der Bruder *(the brother)*

(b) nouns that have been formed directly from verbs

das Singen *(the singing)* cf. singen *(to sing)*
das Leben *(the life)* cf. leben *(to live)*
das Streben *(the striving)* cf. streben *(to strive)*

(c) nouns that end in *-ium, -tum, -ment,* and *-sel:*
das Studium *(study),* das Christentum *(Christianity),* das Abonnement *(subscription),* das Rätsel *(riddle)*

1.4. Compounds

New words in German sometimes can be formed by combining simpler words. Some of these words can be particularly graphic. Here are examples:

Abend *(evening)* + Land *(country)*—Abendland *(occident)*
Morgen *(morning)* + Land *(country)*—Morgenland *(orient)*
Morgen *(morning)* + Röte *(red)*—Morgenröte *(dawn)*
Eier *(eggs)* + Auflauf *(riot, running amuck)*—Eierauflauf *(soufflé)*

The gender of the noun is determined by its final component. Thus, even in a word as long as Unfallversicherungsgesellschaft *(accident-insurance-society),* the article will be *die* because the suffix *-schaft* is feminine.

1.5. Plurals

Because it is very important for you to be able to recognize plural forms, I have discussed them in more detail in Chapter Sixteen (16.1—16.4). However, here is a general introduction to them. Do not worry if you cannot assimilate them. ***The main thing to notice is that if a noun ends in -l, -e, -r, or -n, or occasionally -s (and even more rarely -a), it might be a plural!*** Nouns ending in any other letter will *always* be singular.

Plurals of German nouns are indicated by the use of the definite article *die (the)* plus one of the following endings:

1. *-l:*

singular	**plural**
der Apfel *(the apple)*	*die* Äpfel *(the apples)*
der Titel *(the title)*	*die* Titel *(the titles)*

Note that when a masculine noun ends in *-l,* either an umlaut will be added to the medial vowel, or there will be be no ending whatsoever, and you must rely on the article *die* to inform you whether the noun is singular or plural.

2. ***-e:***

singular	**plural**
der Freund *(the friend)*	*die* Freunde *(the friends)*
der Gast *(the guest)*	*die* Gäste *(the guests)*
das Jahr *(the year)*	*die* Jahre *(the years)*

Occasionally an umlaut is added.

3. ***-er:***

singular	**plural**
* *der* Lehrer *(the teacher)*	*die* Lehrer *(the teachers)*
das Kind *(the child)*	*die* Kinder *(the children)*
das Land *(the country)*	*die* Länder *(the countries)*
das Haus *(house)*	*die* Häuser *(the houses);*

Occasionally an umlaut is added.
*Note that there is no plural ending for masculine nouns ending in *-er;* ONLY the *die* article will inform you whether the noun is singular or plural.

4. ***-(e)n:***

singular	**plural**
der Student *(the student)*	*die* Studenten *(the students)*
* *das* Mädchen *(the girl)*	*die* Mädchen *(the girls)*
die Nummer *(the number)*	*die* Nummern *(the numbers)*
die Freundschaft *(the friendship)*	*die* Freundschaften *(the friendships)*
die Katze *(the cat)*	*die* Katzen *(the cats)*

* Note that there is no plural ending for neuter nouns ending in *-en;* ONLY the *die* article will inform you whether the noun is singular or plural.
Note that whenever the noun ends in -en and the article is die, the noun will always be plural!!!
die Mädchen (girls); die Katzen (cats); die Studenten; die Wahrheiten (truths); die Ideen (ideas)

5. ***-s:***

A few nouns of "foreign" origin form their plurals by adding an *-s* ending:

singular	**plural**
der Chef *(the boss)*	*die* Chefs *(the bosses)*
das Genie *(the genius)*	*die* Genies *(the geniuses)*

6. -a

These are always formed from Latin words: *Spezifica; Charakteristika*

1.6. Summary

1. any noun that does not end in *-l, -e, -r, -n,* or, occasionally *-s,* can *not* be plural
2. any noun with the article *die* and the ending *-en* will always be plural: *die* Katz*en*—the cats
3. the articles *der* with a masculine noun *(der Mann, der Professor)* and *das (das Lernen)* cannot be plural.

1.7. Indicate which of the following words is plural. How do you know? Because all of the words are cognates, guess their definitions as well:

der Singer; die Universität; der Junge; die Männer; der Apfel; das Schreiben; das Haus; die Bücher; die Nacht; die Studentinnen; das Auge; die Freundschaft; die Freundlichkeit; die Damen, die Großväter, der Titel; die Wochen; die Regeln; die Autos; die Namen; die Bären; die Mädchen; die Revolution.

2

The Present Tense of Verbs and the Personal Pronouns

2.1. All verbs in their infinitival form end in *-en,* or sometimes in *-n.* This is the form you will find in your dictionaries.

Examples are: *singen (to sing), finden (to find), tanzen (to dance), bringen (to bring);* and *wandern (to wander), tun (to do),* and *handeln (to act).*

These verbs are conjugated in the following way:

	singen	***bringen***	***wandern***
ich *(I)*	singe	bringe	wandere
du *(you)**	sing**st**	bring**st**	wander**st**
er *(he)* es *(it)*			
sie *(she)*	singt	bringt	wandert
wir *(we)*	sing**en**	bring**en**	wander**n**
ihr *(you)**	singt	bringt	wandert
sie *(they)*	sing**en**	bring**en**	wander**n**
Sie *(you)*	sing**en**	bring**en**	wander**n**

**du* (one person) and *ihr* (two or more people) are informal forms of *you,* and they are to be used only with close friends, family, children, animals, and God. Because these forms seldom appear in scholarly writings, you need not be too

concerned about memorizing them unless you intend to read either literature or the Bible.

2.2. The pronoun *Sie* (which can refer either to one person or to several people) is formal, and it is the only German pronoun to be capitalized regularly.

The pronoun *ich (I)* is never capitalized.

Note that all plural pronouns—*wir (we), sie (they),* and *Sie (you)*—with the exception of *ihr (informal you)* have the same form as the infinitive (*gehen, sagen, hören,* etc.).

Note also the similarity among *sie (she), sie (they)* and *Sie (you).* Because the same word is used for both *she* and *they,* you must pay careful attention to the verb in order to translate *sie* correctly. Compare:

sie geh*t*—*she* goes.
sie geh*en*—*they* go.

When *Sie* is capitalized in mid-sentence, it will always be translated as *you.* However, when *Sie* begins a sentence it can be either *you* or *they;* you need extra information to decide which translation is preferable, although it usually will be *they:* *Sie* gehen oft dorthin—*They* (or *you*) go there often.

2.3. When the subject is a singular noun, the third person singular verb form will be used, while when the subject is plural, the plural verb form will be used:

Die Katze spiel*t*—The cat *plays.*
Die Katzen spiel*en*—The cats *play.*

2.4. One German verb form expresses all three forms of the English present— the present *(I sing),* the progressive *(I am singing),* and the emphatic *(I do sing).* Here are examples:

Es *regnet*—It *is raining.*
Obwohl er nichts *sagt, weiß* er doch die Antwort—Although he *is saying* nothing, he *does know* the answer, nevertheless.
Er ist glücklich, wenn er *tanzt*—He is happy when he *is dancing.*

Therefore, it is best to translate the verb according to which form sounds smoothest to you in English.

2.5. The two most crucial verbs (which are irregular) are: *sein (to be) and haben (to have).* Memorize their forms:

		***sein*—to be**	***haben*—to have**
ich	(I)	bin	habe
du	(you, informal)	bist	hast
er, sie, es	(he, she, it)	ist	hat
wir	(we)	sind*	haben
ihr	(you, informal)	seid	habt
sie	(they)	sind*	haben
Sie	(you, formal)	sind*	haben

*Note that the *we, they, you* forms of *sein* are different from the infinitive. This is the case *only* with the verb *sein.*

2.6. Translate the following pronouns and verbs; (optional) state the infinitive of each of the verbs:

sie denkt; er findet; ich vergesse; sie haben; Sie sind; sie lassen; ich gebe; sie sind; er hat; ich sage; es heilt; sie tut; Sie machen; sie helfen

2.7. Some verbs will have a vowel change in both second and third person singular. Here is an example, and here are the infinitival and third person singular forms of the most important of these verbs:

sprechen *(to speak):*

ich spreche	*(I speak)*	wir sprechen	*(we speak)*
du sprichst	*(you speak)*	ihr sprecht	*(you speak)*
*er spricht	*(he speaks)*	sie sprechen	*(they speak)*
*es spricht	*(it speaks)*	Sie sprechen	*(you speak)*
*sie spricht	*(she speaks)*		

1. Variation I:

brechen *(to break);* er bricht
geben *(to give);* er gibt
helfen *(to help);* er hilft
essen (*to eat*); sie ißt
treten *(to step);* sie tritt;
nehmen (*to take*); sie nimmt

2. Variation II:

geschehen *(to occur);* es geschieht
lesen *(to read);* er liest
sehen *(to see);* er sieht
stehlen *(to steal);* er stiehlt

3. Variation III:

fahren *(to travel);* er fährt
wachsen *(to grow);* er wächst
fallen *(to fall);* er fällt

lassen *(to let);* er läßt;
waschen (*to wash*); sie wäscht
schlafen *(to sleep);* er schläft;

4. Two other important irregulars verb are *wissen* *(to know)*, and *werden* *(to become)*, which are conjugated as follows:

wissen
ich weiß *(I know)*
du weißt *(you know)*
sie weiß *(she knows)*
wir wissen *(we know)*
ihr wißt *(you know)*
sie wissen *(they know)*
Sie wissen *(you know)*

werden
werde *(I become)*
wirst *(you become)*
wird *(she becomes)*
werden *(we become)*
werdet *(you become)*
werden *(they become)*
werden *(you become)*

When not used as a verb, *weiß* means *white.*

When used as an auxiliary, *werden* will mean *will* (Chapter 10) or *is* (Chapter 28); because *werden* is used with the passive mood much more frequently than it is used as *to become,* be aware that *werden* should not automatically be translated as *become.*

2.8. Translate the following pronouns and verbs:
er nimmt; du liest; sie sieht; es geschieht; er weiß; es bricht; sie läßt; du ißt; du wächst; sie wäscht

2.9. Translate these sentences. (Ignore the endings on the adjectives; they will be explained in Chapter Four: 4.1–4.3) I will put words that are cognates in italics to give you practice in figuring them out.

1. Der Mensch *ist,* was er ißt.
2. Kinder und Narren *(fools) sagen* die Wahrheit.
3. Keine Antwort *ist* auch eine Antwort.
4. Der Arzt *hilft,* die *Natur heilt.*
5. Das Herz *lügt* nicht.
6. Schöne Gesichter *haben* viele Richter *(judges).*
7. Ein *neuer* Arzt braucht einen *neuen* Kirchhof *(graveyard).*
8. Ein *gutes Wort findet* einen *guten* Ort (*place*).
9. *Gutes* Gespräch kürzet den *Weg.*

10. Ein *gebranntes* Kind scheut das *Feuer.*
11. Es regnet Bratwürste! (This is an odd description of a down-pour!)
12. Ich bin ein Berliner.

Vocabulary (Words marked * should be memorized eventually. Words with an * are on my important word list in Appendix B, and should be memorized. I will usually list each important word in the chapter vocabulary three times, and then omit it.) Note: **Plurals of nouns are listed in parentheses.**

* die **Antwort** (-en)—answer
* der **Arzt** (¨e)—doctor
* **auch**—also
der **Berliner** (-)—Berliner; doughnut
die **Bratwurst** (¨e)—sausage
brauchen—to need
* **brechen** (bricht)—to break
* **bringen**—to bring
* **denken**—to think
* **der, das, die**—the
* **du**—you (informal)
* **ein, eine**—a, one
* **er**—he
* **es**—it
* **essen** (ißt)—to eat
das **Feuer** (-)—fire
* **finden**—to find
* die **Frau** (-en)—woman. wife
* **geben** (gibt)—to give
gebrannt—burned
* das **Gesicht** (-er)—face
das **Gespräch** (¨e)—conversation
* **gut**—good
* **haben** (hat)—to have
heilen—to heal
* **helfen** (hilft)—to help
* das **Herz** (-en)—heart
* **ich**—I
* **ihr**—you (informal, pl.)
* **kein**—no
das **Kind** (-er)—child
der **Kirchhof** (¨e)—graveyard
kürzen—to shorten
* **lassen** (läßt)—to let, to leave
lesen (liest)—to read
lügen—to lie, fib
* der **Mann** (¨er)—man, husband
* der **Mensch** (-en) -person
der **Narr** (-en)—fool
die **Natur** (-en)—nature
* **nehmen** (nimmt)—to take
* **neu**—new
* **nicht**—not
der **Ort** (-e)—place
regnen—to rain
der **Richter** (-)—judge
* **sagen**—to say, speak
scheuen—to avoid
* **schön**—beautiful
* **sehen** (sieht)—to see
* **sein** (ist)—to be
* **sie**—she, they
* **Sie**—you (formal)
* **sprechen** (spricht)—to speak
* **viel**—many, much
wachsen (wächst)—to grow
* die **Wahrheit** (-en)—truth
waschen (wäscht)—to wash
* der **Weg** (-e)—way, path
* **werden** (wird)—to become
* **wir**—we
* **wissen** (weiß)—to know
* das **Wort** (-e or ¨er)—word

2.10. It is important to begin memorizing German vocabulary words as soon as possible, as it will allow you more time to concentrate on grammar. Here are some suggestions to make memorization easier:

1. Some words are easy to memorize: *Garten*–garden; *kalt*–cold; *komisch*–comic. Allow yourself to remember them.
2. Treat memorizing a word like remembering a person's name. When you see an unfamiliar word that you must memorize, say it and the definition several times and find some meaningful link to make it more memorable. Adverbs are especially difficult to memorize because it is more difficult to establish a link with them. However, anything goes! The adverb *schon* means *already;* "He was already *(schon)* happy because the sun *shone*" might be a useful mnemonic device. Different words require different strategies. Allow yourself to use the best strategy for the word required, rather than using the same strategy for all words.
3. Take the time to learn the word correctly in the first place. It will pay off in the long run.
4. If you have established a false link (you think *noch* means "after," rather than *"still,"*) try to undo this link as soon as possible, as it will plague you until you do. Remind yourself of the correct definition, and try to think about it during the day, or when trying to fall asleep. Try not to allow yourself to think of any word as "the word I always forget." Pretend the word is a competitor, and by learning it you have won a game.
5. Keep a list of words you often forget, and place them where you can refer to them easily. Highlight words in your dictionaries so you can find them more quickly as well.
6. Try to memorize a few words at a time. Anytime words all start sounding the same is a time to stop trying to memorize them.
7. Place words on post-it notes, and scatter them throughout your home.
8. If a word appears in an especially vivid sentence, write the sentence down for future reference.
9. Use every opportunity you can to memorize words. Pay special attention to the recurring words in the grammar explanations, and you might be able to remember them without setting aside special time to memorize them.
10. Find a friend to memorize words with you.

2.11. Vocabulary aid: guess and memorize the words in the following sentences:

1. Fräulein Meier hat zwei gute Katzen.
2. Sie ist schön.

3. Die Kinder sind gut.
4. Er hilft viel
5. Ich weiß nicht.
6. Der Arzt hilft nicht.
7. Oft sagen sie die Wahrheit.
8. Er ißt die Bratwurst. (Is *Bratwurst* singular or plural?)

2.12. Guess the following place names:

Akropolis
Asien
Bangladesch
Belgien
Bolivien
Brasilien
Eiffelturm
Florenz
Griechenland
Grönland
Großbritannien
Schottland
Herzegowina
Indien
Irak
Irland
Jugoslawien
Kiew
Mittelamerika
Neufundland
Neuseeland
Niederlande
Nordpol
Polen
Rom
Rußland/Russland
Sarajewo
Kap der Guten Hoffnung
Wien
Sibirien
Singapur
Troya
Türkei
Venedig

3 (PART 1)

The Case Endings: Nominative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative

(I am dividing this chapter into two parts because it is too long to be assimilated in one assignment; however, I believe that the chapters should be considered a unit.)

There are four different cases of German articles, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. These cases are the nominative, accusative, genitive, and dative.

3.1. The **nominative** is the subject of the sentence, and it can also be the predicate noun (any noun after the verbs "to be," "to become," or "to remain"). Examples are:

Der Dichter schreibt gut—The *writer* writes well.
Das Kind ist *ein guter Spielkamerad*—The *child* is *a good playmate.*
Die Katze schläft viel—The *cat* sleeps a lot
Die Frauen bleiben gute *Freundinnen*—The *women* remain good *friends.*

In the nominative case, the definite article, which indicates both the gender and case of the noun, is:

der for masculine nouns *(der Dichter)*
das for neuter nouns *(das Kind)*
die for both feminine and plural nouns *(die Katze, die Frauen)*

3.2. The **accusative** is like the English direct object; it is the object of most verbs (including the verb *haben*—to have), and of some prepositions (listed in Chapter 5). Examples are:

Der Briefträger tötet *den Wolf (masculine)*—The mailman kills *the wolf.*
Das Kind hält *das Stofftier (neuter)*—The child holds *the stuffed animal.*
Die Katze genießt *die Katzenminze (feminine)*—The cat enjoys *the catnip.*
Die Studenten schreiben die *Aufsätze (plural)*—The students write *the essays.*

Note that in any sentence, the subject will always have a more "active" role than an object. **In English, the subject will nearly always precede the verb, while the object will usually follow it.**

The accusative article is *den* for masculine nouns, *das* for neuter nouns, and *die* for feminine and plural nouns. Note that the accusative article is the same as the nominative article with the exception of the masculine gender (*). Here is a chart:

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	der*	das	die	die
accusative	den*	das	die	die

3.3. The difference in articles is extremely important because sometimes in German the object will appear *before* the verb:

Den Mann tötet *der* Wolf (nominative)—*The wolf kills the* man.
Die Frau liebt *der* Mann (nominative)—*The man* loves *the* woman.

If you see *den* in a sentence, it will never be the subject.
If you see *der* in a sentence attached to an "obvious" masculine noun *(der Mann, der Professor, der Wolf),* it will always be the subject, which means you will have to put the noun in front of the verb when you are translating the sentence into English.

Note also that if the first noun in the German sentence is singular and the verb is plural, or if the first noun in the German sentence is plural and the verb is singular, the object is again appearing *before* the verb, and therefore, the word order will have to be switched in your English translation:

Die Frau **tötet** die Männer—The men kill **the** woman.
Die Männer **tötet** die Frau—The woman **kills the** men.

3.4. However, German usually "plays fair." The word order will be the same as in English if there is no obvious clue:

Die Mutter liebt **die** Tochter—The mother loves the daughter.
Das Kind liebt **die** Katze—The child loves the cat.

The main exception to this is when the subject is obvious:

Das Brot ißt **das** Kind—The child eats the bread.

3.5. Translate these sentences, noting the case and, if possible, the gender of each noun (remember that cognates are marked by italics):

1. [Die] Übung *(practice) macht* den *Meister.*
2. Der hinkende *(limping)* Bote *(messenger) bringt* die Wahrheit.
3. [Ein] Anfang ist kein Meisterstück *(masterpiece).* (In other words, you cannot be an expert when starting something new.)
4. Fleiß *(effort)* bricht *Eis.* (What is the verb infinitive of *bricht?* Be careful.)
5. Die Wahrheit hat ein schönes Angesicht *(face),* aber zerrissene *(torn)* Kleider.
6. Ein Zwerg *(dwarf)* bleibt immer ein Zwerg.
7. *Hast* bricht Beine.
8. Bauern lieben *lange* Bratwürste und kurze Predigten.
9. Unglück hat breite *Füße.* (This is a strange proverb!)
10. Arbeit überwindet *(overcomes) alle* Schwierigkeiten.
11. Den Wolf tötet der Bauer.

Vocabulary (words marked * should be memorized; you might wish to start making flash cards for them)

* **all**—all, every
* der **Anfang** (¨e)—beginning
das **Angesicht**—face, countenance
* die **Arbeit** (-en)—work
der **Bauer** (-n)—farmer
das **Bein** (-e)—leg
* **bleiben**—to remain
die **Bratwurst** (¨e)—sausage
* **brechen** (bricht)—to break
* **breit**—wide, broad
* **bringen**—to bring
das **Eis** (-)—ice
* der **Fleiß**—effort
der **Fuß** (¨e)—foot
die **Hast**—haste
* **immer**—always
das **Kleid** (-er)—dress, clothes
* **kurz**—short

* **lang**—long
* **lieben**—to love
* **machen**—to do, make
der **Meister** (-)—master
das **Meisterstück** (-e)—masterpiece
die **Predigt** (-en)—sermon
die **Schwierigkeit** (-en)—difficulty
töten—to kill
die **Übung** (-en)—practice
das **Unglück** (-e)—misfortune
* die **Wahrheit** (-en)—truth
der **Zwerg** (-e)—dwarf

3.6. The genitive is a form used to indicate possession. It is also used with some prepositions (see 5.13), verbs, and some time phrases.

When the genitive appears (and when it is not the object of a preposition or a verb), an "of" must be added in order to have a correct translation. Examples are:

Der Freund *des Vaters (masculine)* ist hier—The friend *of the father* is here.
Das Lieblingstier *des Kindes (neuter)* ist ein Panther—The favorite animal *of the child* is a panther.
Die Mutter *der Braut (feminine)* ist noch schön—The mother *of the bride* is still beautiful.
Die Freunde *der Studenten (plural)* sind intelligent—The friends *of the students* are intelligent.

3.7. The genitive article is *des* for masculine and neuter nouns, and it is *der* for feminine and plural nouns. Whenever you see the article *des,* the noun will always be in the genitive case, and it will always be singular. It will never be plural!!! When the genitive is used with masculine and neuter nouns, the nouns generally will have an *-s* or an *-es* ending:

Glück ist die Mutter *des* Unglück*s*—Fortune is the mother of misfortune.
Die Leidenschaften sind die Würzen *des* Leben*s*—The passions are the spices of life.

The genitive noun usually will follow the noun it possesses:

Sie ist die Mutter *des Kindes*—She is the mother *of the child.*
Vorsicht ist die Mutter *der Weisheit*—Caution is the mother *of wisdom.*
Reichtum ist die Stiefmutter der *Tugend*—Wealth is the stepmother *of virtue.*

However, a genitive noun occasionally will precede the noun it possesses:

Der Mund ist *des Bauches* Henker—The mouth is *the stomach's* hangman.
Armut ist *der Künste* Mutter—Poverty is *the arts'* mother.
Die Welt ist des *Teufels* Braut—The world is *the devil's* bride.

3.8. The genitive of proper nouns can be written in either of the following two ways:

Er ist Homers Student—He is Homer's student.
Er ist der Student Homers—He is the student *of* Homer.

Be careful when you see a proper noun with an *s* on it. There obviously is a big difference between "He is the student, Homers" and "He is the student *of* Homer."

Even feminine proper nouns take a genitive *-s* ending:

Er ist ein Freund Fräulein Meiers—He is a friend *of* Fräulein Meier.

3.9. Translate these sentences, noting the case and gender of each noun:

1. Der Löwe ist der *König* der Tiere.
2. Der *Wille* ist die Seele des *Werkes.*
3. Selbsterkenntnis ist der Anfang der *Besserung.*
4. Eile *(haste)* ist die *Mutter* der Unvollkommenheit *(imperfection).*
5. Die Augen sind der Spiegel *(mirror)* der Seele.
6. Die Ziege *(goat)* ist die *Kuh* des kleinen *Mannes.*
7. Flüche sind des *Teufels* Sprüche.
8. Das *unordentliche* Leben der Leute ist das Wohlleben *(well-being)* der Ärzte.
9. Der Schatten der Tugend ist Ehre.
10. Den *Freund* des Arztes liebt die *junge* Frau.
11. Ruhe ist der Tagelohn (daily reward) der Arbeiter. (Is *Arbeiter* singular or plural? How do you know?)

Vocabulary Note: genitive and plural endings of masculine and neuter nouns and plural endings of feminine nouns are listed in parentheses; genitive endings are given first: *der Arbeiter* (-s, -): *des Arbeiters* (genitive); *die Arbeiter* (plural)

* die **Arbeit** (-en)—work
der **Arbeiter** (-s, -)—worker
* der **Arzt** (-es, ¨e)—doctor
das **Auge** (-s, -en)—eye
die **Besserung** (-en)—improvement
die **Ehre** (-n)—honor
der **Fluch** (-es, ¨e)—curse
* **klein**—small (here it means poor)
die **Ruhe**—rest
der **Schatten** (-s, -)—shadow
die **Seele** (-n)—soul
die **Selbsterkenntnis**—self-knowledge
der **Spiegel** (-s, -)—mirror
der **Spruch** (-es, ¨e)—maxim, saying
der **Teufel** (-s, -)—devil
das **Tier** (-es, -e)—animal, beast

die **Kuh** (- ¨e)—cow
* das **Leben** (-s, -)—life
der **Löwe** (-n, -n)—lion
* die **Leute** (pl.)—people
* der **Mann** (-es, ¨er)—man, husband
die **Mutter** (¨)—mother
die **Tugend** (-en)—virtue
das **Werk** (-es, -e)—work
* der **Wille** (-ns, -)—will
das **Wohlleben** (-s, -)—well-being
die **Ziege** (-n)—goat

3 (PART II)

The Case Endings: Dative Case

3.10. The dative is used for indirect objects, and it is the object of some prepositions (see Chapter 5) and of some verbs such as *helfen (to help), folgen (to follow), antworten (to answer), glauben (to believe),* and *gehören (to belong to).* When the dative is used as the object of a verb or of a preposition, you can translate the sentence literally, as you would in English:

Der Student hilft dem *Professor*—The student helps *the professor.*
Das Kind spielt mit der *Katze*—The child plays with *the* cat.
Fräulein Meier antwortet *dem Briefträger*—Fräulein Meier answers *the mailman.*

At other times, however, a "*to*" or a "*for*" must be added so that the sentence will make sense:

Dem Fuchs sind die Trauben zu sauer—*For the fox,* the grapes are too sour.
Das Kind ist *der Mutter* eine Freude—The child is a joy *for the mother.*
Die Erklärung ist *dem Professor* nicht klar—The explanation is not clear *to the professor.*

3.11. Here are masculine, neuter, feminine, and plural examples of the dative:

Der Mann schreibt *dem Freund (masculine)* den Brief—The man writes *the friend* the letter (or: The man writes the letter *to the friend*).
Das Kind gibt *dem Tier (neuter)* das Essen—The child gives *the animal* the food (or: The child gives the food *to the animal*).
Die Mutter gibt *der Tochter (feminine)* die Blumen—The mother gives *the daughter* the flowers (or: The mother gives the flowers *to the daughter*).
Die Eltern schreiben *den Kindern (plural)* Briefe—The parents write *the children* letters (or: The parents write letters *to the children*).

The dative article is *dem* for masculine and neuter nouns, it is *der* for feminine nouns, and it is *den* for plural nouns.

Moreover, the dative endings for all plural nouns will always be *-n*. Here are examples:

Die Männer helfen *den* Männer*n*—The men help the men.
Die Kinder folgen *den* Kinder*n*—The children follow the children.
Die Frauen antworten *den* Fraue*n*—The women answer the women.

A review question: In what other instances does the ending on the noun indicate the case of the noun?

3.12. Also note that in a sentence which begins with the subject, the noun in the dative case will always precede the noun in the accusative or predicate nominative case:

Die Mutter *(nominative)* **singt dem Kind** *(dative)* **das Lied** *(accusative)*—**The mother sings (to) the child the song.**
Der Sohn *(nominative)* **ist dem Vater** *(dative)* **eine Freude** *(predicate nominative)*—**The son is a joy to the father.**

3.13. Because *der* can be either dative feminine or genitive feminine, its placement in the clause is crucial. Compare:

Die Reise ist *der Frau (dative)* unangenehm—The trip is unpleasant for the woman.
Die Reise *der Frau (genitive)* ist unangenehm—The trip of the woman is unpleasant. (Or: The woman's trip is unpleasant.)
Er beschreibt *der Frau (dative)* den Begriff—He describes the concept *to* the woman.
Er beschreibt den Begriff *der Frau (genitive)*—He describes the *woman's* concept.

3.14. Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of nouns in the dative case for which you must supply a "to" or a "for":

1. Der *Winter* schadet *(harms)* dem fleißigen *Hamster* nicht.
2. [Die] Geduld *(patience)* ist der Seele ein Schild *(shield)*.
3. Der Frau ist die Arbeit unangenehm. (You will learn in chapter 4 why *unangenehm* cannot modify *Arbeit.)*
4. Alles schmeckt *(tastes)* dem *hungrigen* Bauch *(stomach)* wohl.
5. Die Bedeutung *(meaning)* des *Dramas* bleibt den Zuschauern *(viewers)* ein Rätsel *(riddle, puzzle)*.
6. Das Kind *sagt* der *Mutter* die Wahrheit.
7. Fräulein Meier *bäckt* dem Briefträger einen *Apfelkuchen*.
8. Der Professor erklärt den *Studenten* das *Problem*.
9. Die Arbeit der Frau ist schwer.
10. Den Studenten gefällt (pleases) das *Lernen* der deutschen Sprache *hoffentlich*.

Vocabulary (verbs marked *i* are intransitive, which means they cannot take a direct object; reminder: the first notation in parentheses for masculine and neuter nouns is the genitive *singular* ending, while the second notation is the plural ending)

* **alles**—everything
der **Apfelkuchen** (-s, -)—apple cake
der **Bauch** (-es, -e)—belly, stomach
* **bleiben** (i)—to remain
das **Drama** (-s, -en)—drama
erklären—to explain
* **fleißig**—industrious
die **Geduld**—patience
hoffentlich—hopefully
das **Lernen** (-s, -)—learning
* **nicht**—not
das **Rätsel** (-s, -)—riddle, puzzle
* **sagen**—to say
schaden (i)—to harm
der **Schild** (-s, -e)—shield
schmecken (i)—to taste
schwer—difficult
die **Seele** (-n)—soul
* die **Sprache** (-n)—language
unangenehm—unpleasant
* die **Wahrheit** (-en)—truth
* **wohl**—good, well
der **Zuschauer** (-s, -)—viewer, audience

3.15. Here is a chart for all forms for both the definite *(der)* and indefinite *(ein)* articles. Both the definite and indefinite articles have the same endings except for the masculine and neuter nominative and the neuter accusative (note the asterisks on the chart). Because *ein* by definition cannot be plural, I am showing the plural form of this paradigm by using *kein* (no).

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	der	das	die	die
	ein*	**ein***	eine	keine
accusative	den	das	die	die
	einen	**ein***	eine	keine
genitive	des	des	der	der
	eines	eines	einer	keiner
dative	dem	dem	der	den
	einem	einem	einer	keinen

3.16. Here is another table to help you become more familiar with these endings:

der can be:
masculine nominative: *Der Mann* ist hier—The *man* is here.
feminine genitive: Der Freund *der Frau* ist alt—The friend *of the woman* is old.
plural genitive: Der Freund *der Frauen* ist alt—The friend *of the women* is old.
feminine dative: Der Freund schreibt *der Frau* eine E-mail—The friend writes an e-mail *to the woman.*
(At least *der* can *never* be accusative!)

das can be:
neuter nominative: *Das Buch* ist interessant— *The book* is interesting.
neuter accusative: Der Student liest *das Buch*—The student reads *the book.*

die can be:
feminine nominative: *Die Frau* ist hier— *The woman* is here.
plural nominative: *Die Frauen* sind hier— *The women* are here.
feminine accusative: Der Mann sieht *die Frau*—The man sees *the woman.*
plural accusative: Der Mann sieht *die Frauen*—The man sees *the women.*

des can be:
masculine genitive: Der Sohn *des Mannes* ist hier—The son *of the man* is here.
neuter genitive: Die Katze *des Kindes* ist klein—The cat *of the child* is small.

dem can be:
masculine dative: Wer gibt *dem Mann* den Brief?—Who gives the letter *to the man?*
neuter dative: Wer singt *dem Kind* das Lied?—Who sings the song *to the child?*

den can be:
masculine accusative: Der Mann tötet *den Wolf*—The man kills *the wolf.*

plural dative: Die Frau schreibt *den Männern*—The woman writes *(to) the men.*

3.17. Review: most of the time, the case of the noun is revealed by the article, and there are no case ending markers on the nouns. However, there are three exceptions!!!

1 & 2. masculine and neuter genitive nouns: des Mann**es**; des Buch**es**
3. dative plural nouns: den Kinder**n**; den Häuser**n**; den Regel**n**

3.18. Translate the following sentences; state the gender and case of each noun (the vocabularly list is on p. 27):

1. Der *Freund* der Verlobten (engaged couple) *sendet* der Mutter der *Braut* eine E-mail.
2. Die Mutter und die Kinder sehen die *Kuh* und die *Kälber.*
3. Das Kind liest das *Kinderbuch.*
4. Die Frau des Arztes bezweifelt *(doubts)* die Wahrheit des Sprichwortes.
5. Die Mutter *kocht* dem Vater und dem Kind ein *gutes Essen* (meal).
6. Der *Professor* zeigt den *Studenten* den *Film.*
7. Fräulein Meier schenkt der Briefträger eine *rote Rose.*

3.19. There are also some other words that have the same case endings as the definite articles, *der, das,* and *die.* They are:

dieser *(this one):* Dieser Mann ist nett—This man is nice.
jeder *(each, every):* Jedes Kind ist interessant—Every child is interesting.
mancher *(some, many a):* Manche Sprichwörter sind wahr—Some proverbs are true.
solcher *(such):* Solch ein Mensch ist ein guter Freund—Such a person is a good friend.
welcher *(what, which):* Welche Katze ist freundlich?—Which cat is friendly?

Note that *dieser* means *this* when it is singular and *these* only when it is plural. Compare:

Dieser Mann kennt diese Frau—This man knows *this* woman.
Diese Männer kennen diese Frauen—*These* men know *these* women.

Note also the difference between *dieses* when it is neuter nominative (or accusative) and when it is neuter genitive:

Dieses Kind (*nominative*) ist müde—*This child* is tired.
Die Eltern dieses Kindes (*genitive*) sind müde—The parents *of this child* are tired.

3.20. The case endings must be memorized! Although you probably can read most sentences at this point without knowing case endings, you will run into trouble later when sentences become more complicated. In fact, if you do not understand cases and if you cannot identify case endings, you simply will not be able to read German. Make certain that you understand these case ending chapters and review them often if you need to. (The subsequent chapters will also help you memorize these endings.)

When I discuss word order in Chapter Six, I will indicate in detail the way that the subject can appear on either side of the verb. When the subject appears on the "other" side of the verb, recognition of case endings is crucial even in short sentences. Here are examples:

Ein vorwitziges Schäflein *(accusative)* frißt der Wolf *(nominative)*—The wolf eats an impertinent little sheep.
Der Tugend *(dative)* ist kein Ziel *(nominative)* zu hoch—No goal is too high for virtue.

3.21. Translate these sentences, indicating the gender and case of each noun. (If you are unaccustomed to recognizing case endings, it is a good idea to continue identifying the cases of nouns in future lessons until the process becomes automatic. Do not be surprised if memorizing the case endings takes you a long time.)

1. Wiederholung ist die *Mutter* der Weisheit.
2. Die *Erde* bedeckt die Fehler der Ärzte. (Doctors tend not to fare very well in German proverbs!)
3. Der ganzen *Welt* leuchtet die *Sonne.* (What is the subject of this sentence? Be careful!)
4. Fleiß ist der *Vater* des Glückes.
5. Der Segen der Eltern baut den Kindern [die] *Häuser.* (This is difficult—it contains all four cases.)
6. Gesundheit ist die *Tochter* der Arbeit.
7. Ein böses *(guilty)* Gewissen *(conscience)* ist der Vorgeschmack *(foretaste)* der *Hölle.*
8. *Man* entgeht *(avoids)* vielleicht der Strafe, aber man entgeht nicht dem Gewissen.
9. *Zeit* ist die Arznei des Zorns.
10. Jedes *Ding* hat zwei *Seiten.*
11. Der *Tochter* schreibt der *Vater.*

12. Das *gestohlene Brot* schmeckt dem Mann *gut;* aber *am Ende (finally)* hat er den Mund voller *(full of)* Kieselsteine. (Proverbs)
13. Wir sind die Kinder *Gottes.*
14. Was Fliegen *(flies—the insect)* sind den müßigen *(idle)* Knaben, das sind wir den *Göttern. (König Lear)* (Note that *Knaben* and *Göttern* are in the dative case. Are they singular or plural?)

Vocabulary (Please memorize words marked *; words marked ** will no longer appear in the chapter vocabularies.)

- * **aber**—but, however
- ** die **Arbeit** (-en)—work
- ** **der Arzt** (-es, ⸚e)—doctor
- die **Arznei** (-en)—medicine
- * **bauen**—to build
- **bedecken**—to cover
- * **böse**—bad, guilty
- * **dies**—this, these
- * das **Ding** (-es, -e)—thing
- die **Eltern** (pl.)—parents
- **entgehen** (i)—to escape
- * die **Erde** (-n)—earth
- der **Freund** (-es, -e)—friend
- * der **Fehler** (-s, -)—error
- * der **Fleiß** (-es)—effort
- die **Fliege** (-n)—fly
- * **ganz**—entire
- **gestohlen**—stolen
- das **Gewissen** (-s, -)—conscience
- * das **Glück** (-es)—happiness, luck
- * der **Gott** (-es, ⸚er)—God, god
- das **Haus** (-es, ⸚er)—house
- die **Hölle** (-n)—hell
- * **jeder (jedes, jede . . .)**—each, every
- das **Kalb** (-es, ⸚er)—calf
- der **Kieselstein** (-es, -e)—pebble
- die **Kuh** (⸚e)—cow
- der **Knabe** (-n, -n)—boy, knave
- **leuchten** (i)—illuminate
- * **man**—one (always a prounoun)
- der **Mund** (-es, -er)—mouth
- * **nicht**—not
- **schenken**—to give as a present
- **schmecken** (i)—to taste
- * **schwer**—difficult
- die **Seele** (-n)—soul
- der **Segen** (-s, -)—blessing
- die **Seite** (-n)—side
- **senden**—to send
- die **Sonne**—sun
- das **Sprichwort** (-s, ⸚er)—proverb
- die **Strafe** (-n)—punishment
- die **Tochter** (⸚)—daughter
- * **vielleicht**—perhaps
- * die **Weisheit**—wisdom
- die **Wiederholung** (-en)—repetition
- * **zeigen**—to show
- * die **Zeit** (-en)—time
- der **Zorn** (-s, -)—wrath

3.22. Vocabulary Aid

1. Die Leute sagen oft die Wahrheit.
2. Dieses Sprichwort ist nicht wahr.
3. Die Bedeutung (meaning) dieses Sprichwortes ist unklar.

4. Der Briefträger tut viel.
5. Alles schmeckt dem hungrigen Mann gut.
6. Jeder Freund des Briefträgers kennt Fräulein Meier.
7. Das Glück ist allzu kurz.
8. Die Antwort ist diesen Studenten unklar.
9. Die Katzen sind in der Küche.
10. Dem Sohn sendet die Mutter eine E-Mail.
11. Ein guter Mensch hat viele Freunde.

4

Adjectives and Adverbs

4.1. Adjectives

An adjective is a word that is used to modify a noun. Common adjectives are: **alt** *(old),* **jung** *(young),* **groß** *(large, great),* **klein** *(small),* and **gut** *(good).*

When adjectives appear directly before a noun with no article in front of them, they will have "strong" case endings which are similar to the endings of the definite article *(der, das, die).* A "strong" ending is simply one that reveals the gender and case of the noun. Here is a chart comparing definite article endings and strong adjective endings:

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	der Wein	das Essen	die Lampe	die Freunde
	guter Wein	gutes Essen	rote Lampe	neue Freunde
accusative	den Wein	das Essen	die Lampe	die Freunde
	guten Wein	gutes Essen	rote Lampe	neue Freunde
genitive	*des Weins	*des Essens	der Lampe	der Freunde
	guten Weins	guten Essens	roter Lampe	neuer Freunde
dative	dem Wein	dem Essen	der Lampe	den Freunden
	gutem Wein	gutem Essen	roter Lampe	neuen Freunden

* Note that the definite article endings and strong adjective endings are identical in all instances except for masculine and neuter genitive, which you will encounter rarely.

Here are examples:

Nominative: *Guter* Wein ist teuer—Good wine is expensive.
Accusative: Fräulein Meier trinkt *guten* Wein gern—Fräulein Meier likes to drink *good wine.*
Genitive: Die Farbe *guten* Weins ist manchmal rot—The color *of good wine* is sometimes red.
Dative: Der Student ist mit *gutem* Wein zufrieden—The student is satisfied with *good wine.*

Adjectives are most frequently strong when they appear in plural cases:

Gute Freunde teilen *viele* Geheimnisse—*Good* friends share *many* secrets.
Die Eltern *kleiner* Kinder sind oft müde—The parents *of small* children are often tired.

4.2. Adjectives also will have strong endings when they succeed the indefinite article *(ein)* in masculine and neuter nominative cases and in the neuter accusative case. Here are examples:

Ein gut**er** Mann *(masculine nominative)* ist hier—A good man is here.
Ein gut**es** Kind *(neuter nominative)* ist hier—A good child is here.
Der Mann kennt ein gut**es** Kind *(neuter accusative)*—The man knows a good child.

Because in these cases the indefinite article *ein* does not reveal the gender of the noun, the adjective following *ein* (gut*er*, gut*es*) will tell you the gender instead.

All definite and indefinite articles are strong (since they are *always* the first adjectives to modify the noun; i.e., one always says: "*the* good cat" rather than "good *the* cat"). Other adjectives that are always strong are the possessive adjectives ***(mein**—my; **dein**—your, **sein**—his, its; **ihr**—her, their; **unser**—our; **euer**—your,* and ***Ihr**—your* [see 7.8–9]); ***kein**—no;* and the ***der*** words ***(dieser**—this, this one; **jeder**—each, every; **solcher**—such;* and ***welcher**—which, what).*

Any adjective (such as *old, new, happy,* etc.) can be strong when it is the only adjective modifying a noun. Examples are:

Alte Freunde sind *gute* Freunde—Old friends are good friends.
Gutes Gespräch kürzt den Weg—Good conversation shortens the way.

4.3. However, most adjectives follow an article or some other adjective, which is always strong. Here are examples:

Das *gute* Beispiel ist nützlich—The good example is helpful.
Die Katze des *netten* Mannes ist dick—The cat of the nice man is fat.
Eine *freundliche* Grüße ist immer willkommen—A friendly greeting is always welcome.
Jede *neue* Aufgabe ist schwer—Each new task is difficult.

Whenever an adjective follows an article or a *der* word, it will end in either *-e* or *-en*. The endings for these adjectives are called "weak" endings because, unlike the endings of articles or other strong adjectives, they do not reveal the gender or case of the noun. Here is a chart:

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural***
nominative	der gute Wein	das neue Auto	die rote Lampe	**die alten** Katzen
accusative	den guten Wein	das neue Auto	die rote Lampe	**die alten** Katzen
genitive	des guten Weins	des neuen Autos	der roten Lampe	der alten Katzen
dative	dem guten Wein	dem neuen Auto	der roten Lampe	den alten Katzen

*Note that the plural weak ending is always *-en,* so *die* + *-en* on the end of an adjective will always be plural!

Whenever adjectives appear before nouns they **always** will have endings; the endings will be:
-e, -en, -es, -er, or possibly *-em.*

4.4. If two or more adjectives (other than articles or *der* words, etc.) **stand together, they generally will have the same endings.** They both will have strong endings if they are not preceded by an article, and they will have weak endings if they are preceded by an article. Here are examples:

Schwarz*e* dick*e* Nashörner sind im Zoo—Fat black rhinoceri are in the zoo. *(strong endings)*
Die schwarz*en* dick*en* Nashörner sind im Zoo—The fat black rhinoceri are in the zoo. *(weak endings)*

4.5. When an adjective normally ends in *-el* or *-er*, the -e **will be omitted whenever the adjective has an ending.** Here are examples of such adjectives: *teuer, ungeheuer, übel,* and *dunkel.* Compare:

Der Wein ist **teuer**; Der **teure** Wein schmeckt gut—The expensive wine tastes good.
Das Tier ist ungeheu**er**; Das ungeheu**re** Tier ist gefährlich—The monstrous animal is dangerous.
Die Hexe ist üb**el**; Die üb**le** Hexe ist häßlich—The evil witch is ugly.

4.6. An adjective with either a strong or a weak ending will always appear immediately before the noun it modifies, not afterwards. Eine junge Katze—a young cat

In this respect, German is **not** like French or Spanish.

4.7. Adjectives that do not appear before the noun they modify will not take an ending. However, such adjectives will **always** be predicate adjectives (adjectives following verbs such as *to be, to become, to look, taste, feel, smell, seem, appear,* etc.) Here are examples:

Die Kerze ist *rot*—The candle is *red.*
Das Essen schmeckt *gut*—The food tastes *good.*
Es wird *dunkel*—It is growing *dark.*

4.8. Adverbs

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. Common adverbs are: ***heute*** *(today),* ***bald*** *(soon),* ***hier*** *(here),* ***dort*** *(there),* ***doch*** *(nevertheless),* ***auch*** *(also, even),* ***noch*** *(still),* ***sehr*** *(very),* ***ganz*** *(very, entirely),* ***vielleicht*** *(perhaps),* ***meistens*** *(for the most part, mostly),* ***darum*** *(therefore),* ***aber*** *(but, however),* ***fast*** *(almost),* and ***nicht*** *(not).*

Adverbs will usually be found close to the words they modify. Here are examples of adverbs:

Das Kind geht *oft* in den Zoo—The child *often* goes to the zoo.
Der *sehr* fleißige Briefträger ist *immer hier*—The *very* industrious mailman is *always here.*
Vielleicht ist Fräulein Meier *deshalb meistens morgens* zu Hause—*Perhaps* Fräulein Meier is *therefore mostly* (or usually) at home *mornings* (or in the morning).

However, if *nicht* or another adverb appears at the end of the clause, it will negate the verb: Der Winter schadet dem fleißigen Hamster *nicht*—The winter does *not* harm the industrious hamster.

4.9. Noncomparative adverbs will never have a special ending, as adjectives do. In fact, adverbs often can be differentiated from adjectives only by whether or not they have endings. For example, Sie hat ein ***schönes,*** gemaltes Bild—She has a *beautiful,* painted picture (a painted picture, which also happens to be beautiful) is different from: Sie hat ein ***schön*** gemaltes Bild—She has a *beautifully* painted picture (a picture, which may have an ugly scene, but is still painted beautifully).

It is extremely important to remember that any descriptive words that do not have endings and that are not predicate adjectives will **always** be adverbs! Here are more examples:

Der Zug fährt *langsam* nach Berlin—The train goes *slowly* to Berlin.
Der Kolibri summt *leise* in der Finsternis—The hummingbird hums *softly* in the darkness.
Ein Reh steht *still* und *verklärt* wie im Traum—A deer stands *quietly* and *radiantly* as if in a dream.

However, German adverbs and predicate adjectives will have the same form:

Fräulein Meier schreibt *gut*—Fräulein Meier writes *well.* (adverb)
Fräulein Meier ist *gut*—Fräulein Meier is *good.* (predicate adjective)

4.10. Here are the most common types of adverbs. This is to give you a general idea of adverbs, and is not meant to overwhelm you.

A. Adverbs indicating time (cf. Appendix G)

morgens *(mornings),* ***abends*** *(evenings),* ***nachts*** *(nights),* ***damals*** *(at that time),* ***bald*** *(soon),* ***dann*** *(then),* ***oft*** *(often),* ***schon*** *(already),* ***immer*** *(always),* ***nun*** *(now),* ***lange*** *(for a long time),* ***endlich*** *(finally).*

B. Adverbs indicating place
hier *(here),* ***dort*** *(there),* ***überall*** *(everywhere).*

C. Adverbs indicating "manner"
1. *Limitation:* ***fast*** *(almost),* ***ungefähr*** *(approximately).*
2. *Extension:* ***außerdem*** *(moreover),* ***sonst*** *(otherwise),* ***auch*** *(also, even),* ***sogar*** *(even),* ***ziemlich*** *(rather),* ***noch*** *(still),* ***eigentlich*** *(actually),* ***vielmehr*** *(rather).*
3. *Exaggeration:* ***sehr*** *(very),* ***recht*** *(really),* ***besonders*** *(especially),* ***ganz*** *(quite, very, entirely).*

4. *Caution:* ***vielleicht*** *(perhaps),* ***möglich*** *(possibly),* ***wahrscheinlich*** *(probably).*
5. *Extent:* ***meistens*** *(mostly, for the most part),* ***wenigstens*** *(at least),* ***zu*** *(too),* ***genug*** *(enough).*
6. *Cause or reason:* ***daher*** *(therefore),* ***darum*** *(therefore),* ***deshalb*** *(on that account),* ***dabei*** *(thereby).*

4.11. Note that many words have different meanings depending on whether they are adjectives or adverbs. *Gleich, gerade, eben, lauter* (see your Troublesome Word list, 36.1) are examples.

Die Freunde haben die *gleichen* Meinungen—The friends have the *same* opinions. (adjective)
Der Vater des Briefträgers geht *gleich* weg—The mailman's father leaves *immediately.* (adverb)

The adjectival meaning usually will be listed first in your dictionary. If an adjective and an adverb have essentially the same meaning, only the adjective may be listed. For example, *leicht* will be listed as an adjective with the definitions *light, easy,* but it can also be translated as an adverb—*lightly, easily.*

4.12. Translate these sentences, noting which words are adjectives and which are adverbs. Try to guess the gender of the noun by looking at the adjectives:

1. Ein *hungriger Bär tanzt* schlecht.
2. *Alte Kirchen* haben dunkle Fenster.
3. Magre Mücken stechen *(sting)* übel. (If you are puzzled by the form *magre,* review 4.5)
4. Gestrenge *(strict)* Herren regieren nicht lange.
5. *Verbotenes* Obst *(fruit)* ist *süß.*
6. [Die] Armut ist die Erfinderin *aller Dinge. (Erfinderin* is feminine because *Armut* is feminine.)
7. Stumme *Hunde* und *stille Wasser* sind gefährlich *(dangerous).* (Is *Wasser* singular or plural? How do you know?)
8. Eine *alte Wunde blutet leicht.*
9. Finstere Gedanken sind die Kinder eines *melancholischen* Kopfes. (Is *Kopfes* singular or plural? How do you know?)
10. Ein gutes Gewissen *(conscience)* ist ein sanftes *(soft)* Ruhekissen *(pillow).*
11. Kinder sind der Reichtum armer Leute.
12. Eine *Hand wäscht* die *andere.*
13. Arbeit hat *bittere* Wurzeln, aber *süße Frucht.*
14. Tod ist der Arzt des armen *Mannes.*

15. Der Teufel *hindert* und verdirbt das *tägliche Brot* und *alle* Gaben Gottes.(Luther)
16. Der *Historiker sieht* rückwärts *(backwards); endlich* glaubt er auch rückwärts. (Nietzsche)
17. Wind mit dunklen Wolken *(clouds) bringt Regen,* und heimliches *(secret)* Geschwätz *(gossip)* schafft *saure* Gesichter. (Proverbs)
18. Ein törichter *(foolish) Sohn* ist seines Vaters Herzeleid *(suffering),* und ein zänkisches *(cranky) Weib* ist wie *(like)* ein ständig triefendes *(dripping)* Dach *(roof).* (Proverbs) (Is *ständig* an adjective or an adverb? How do you know?)
19. Die üblen Mücken tötet Fräulein Meier. (Who dies? How do you know?)

Vocabulary

* **all**—all, every
* **ander** (adj.)—other
* **arm** (adj.)—poor
die **Armut**—poverty
* **auch**—also, even
der **Bär** (-en, -en)—bear
bitter (adj.)—bitter
bluten (i)—to bleed
das **Dach** (-es, ¨er)—roof
* das **Ding** (-s, -e)—thing
* **dunkel** (adj.)—dark
* **endlich** (adv.)—finally
der **Erfinder** (-s, -)—inventor
das **Fenster** (-s, -)—window
finster (adj.)—dark, gloomy
* die **Frucht** (¨e)—fruit
die **Gabe** (-n)—gift
* der **Gedanke** (-ns, -n)—thought
gefährlich (adj.)—dangerous
* **gern** (adv.)—gladly;
er tut das gern—he likes to do that
das **Geschwätz** (-es)—gossip
* das **Gesicht** (-es, -er)—face
das **Gewissen** (-s, -)—conscience
* **glauben** (i)—to believe
* **gut** (adj.)—good; (adv.)—well
* der **Herr** (-n, -en)—Lord, Master, Mr.
das **Herzeleid**—suffering
hindern—to hinder
der **Historiker** (-s, -)—historian
der **Hund** (-es, -e)—dog
die **Kirche** (-n)—church
* der **Kopf** (-es, ¨e)—head
* **lange** (adv.)—for a long time
* **leicht** (adj. & adv.)—easy, easily
* die **Leute** (pl.)—people
* **machen**—to make, do
mager (adj.)—thin
melancholisch—melancholy
* der **Mensch** (-en, -en)—person
die **Mücke** (-n)—gnat
das **Obst** (-es, -arten)—fruit (Northern European fruit only!)
der **Regen** (-s, -)—rain
regieren—to rule
der **Reichtum** (-s,)—wealth
rückwärts (adv.)—backwards
sanft (adj.)—soft
sauer (adj.)—sour
schaffen—to create
* **schlecht** (adj. & adv.)—bad, guilty
* **sehen** (sieht)—to see
* **sein** (poss. adj.)—his
ständig (adj. & adv.)—constant, constantly

* **still** (adj. & adv.)—quiet, quietly
stumm (adj.)—mute
süß (adj.)—sweet
* **täglich** (adj. & adv.)—daily
tanzen—to dance
der **Teufel** (-s, -)—devil
* der **Tod** (-es, -e)—death
töten—to kill
übel (adj. & adv.)—evil, bad, wicked
verboten (adj.)—forbidden
verderben (verdirbt)—to spoil
* **viel** (adj.)—many; (adv.)—much, a lot
* **vielleicht** (adv.)—perhaps
das **Werk** (-es, -e)—work
die **Wolke** (-n)—cloud
die **Wunde** (-n)—wound
waschen (wäscht)—to wash
die **Wurzel** (-n)—root
das **Wasser** (-s, -)—water
das **Weib** (-s, -er)—wife

4.13. Vocabulary aid

1. Der Weintrinker hat oft ein schlechtes Gewissen *(conscience).*
2. Die Katzen Fräulein Meiers sind vielleicht hungrig.
3. Die Kinder alter Leute haben oft Probleme.
4. Ein armer Mensch hat keine Freunde.
5. Viele Leute trinken gern Wein.
6. Was *(what)* ist den Herren verboten?
7. Auch ein Feind ist zu viel.
8. Die Arbeit des Historikers interessiert den Professor.
9. Die gesammelten *(collected)* Werke der amerikanischen Historiker sind auch in einer Bibliothek in Berlin. (Is *Historiker* singular or plural? How do you know?)

4.14. Guess these cognates if you do not know them already: kühl; täglich; das Licht; hilflos; freundlos; der Realismus; komisch; der Sohn; der Fuß; der Schneemann; das Brot; westlich; Montag; Freitag; Juni; die Klasse; dumm; Auge; nervös; natürlich; die Glasvase; die Hoffnung; der Fingernagel; der Schuh; göttlich; der Segelboot
Farben (*colors*): rot, blau, grün, grau, rosa, braun, weiß, schwarz (cf. swarthy)

5 (PART 1)

Prepositions

5.1. German prepositions are often quite difficult to translate because there is no simple one-to-one correspondence between them and English prepositions.

Often they will have to be translated according to what seems intuitively right. Most so-called German idioms are merely German nouns or verbs used in conjunction with various prepositions. Do not worry about the preposition chapters, as they are primarily reference chapters with an overwhelming amount of information.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR REVIEW (see also my grammar explanations in Appendix C): A preposition is a word that shows the relationship of one word (usually a noun or pronoun) to another word in the sentence. Note the following prepositions in the squirrel and tree sentences: The squirrel runs **up** the tree; The squirrel runs **down** the tree; The squirrel runs **under** the tree; The squirrel runs **behind** the tree; The squirrel runs **along** the tree's branches; The squirrel runs **between** the trees.

German prepositions are usually a nuisance, as there is no consistent correlation between them and English prepositions, and they will essentially all mean: *up, to, at, on,* or *from*. Thus looking them up in your dictionaries is generally unhelpful. *Mostly, your translation will be correct if you allow your common sense to help you:*

Das Kind spielt **mit** der Katze—The child plays **with** the cat.
Er fährt **mit** dem Bus—He goes **by** bus.
Sie lacht **über** den Witz—She laughs **at** the joke.

Leben **auf** dem Mississippi—Life **on** the Mississippi
Wer hat Angst **vor** Virginia Woolf?—Who's afraid **of** Virginia Woolf?

5.2. German prepositions fall into four categories:

1. those taking the **accusative** case: ***bis*** *(until),* ***durch*** *(through, by),* ***für*** *(for),* ***gegen*** *(against),* ***ohne*** *(without),* ***um*** *(around, at),* ***entlang*** *(along),* ***wider*** *(against)*
2. those taking the **dative** case: ***aus*** *(out of, of, from),* ***außer*** *(except),* ***bei*** *(at, near, with),* ***mit*** *(with),* ***nach*** *(after, according to),* ***seit*** *(since),* ***von*** *(of, from),* ***zu*** *(to, at),* ***gegenüber*** *(opposite, vis-à-vis)*
3. those taking either the **dative or** the **accusative** case according to the verb use: ***an*** *(on, at, to),* ***auf*** *(on, upon, on top of),* ***hinter*** *(behind),* ***in*** *(in, into),* ***neben*** *(next to),* ***über*** *(over, about),* ***unter*** *(under, among),* ***vor*** *(before, ago),* ***zwischen*** *(between)*
4. those taking the **genitive:** ***trotz*** *(in spite of),* ***statt*** *(instead of),* ***während*** *(during),* ***wegen*** *(because of),* ***um . . . willen*** *(for the sake of).*

By "taking" a case, I mean that the noun following the preposition will be in the case that the preposition dictates. Note: the noun following the preposition will **not** be nominative. ***Although it is rarely necessary to memorize what prepositions take what case when reading German, it will be useful at this point to identify the case for practice in memorizing case endings.***

In these two chapters I have listed the most common definitions of each preposition, along with the most frequent idioms. At this point, you should memorize only the initial definitions of the prepositions and the idioms which I have asterisked. Note that the prepositions and the most common idioms are also listed in Appendix D.

5.3. Sometimes the preposition following the verb will completely dictate the translation of the verb. **When you look up verbs, you should check for prepositions accompanying them to see if the verbs *and* prepositions have specific definitions**. Here are examples:

halten—to stop
halten für—to consider
bestehen auf—to insist on
bestehen aus—to consist of
kommen auf—to think of
kommen aus—to come from
kommen zu—to get around to

5.4. Sometimes prepositions are used in German, which can be omitted in your English translations:

Ein Gast wird *zu* einer Last—A guest *becomes* a burden.
Er hält den Mann *für* ein Genie—He *considers* the man a genius.
Er frevelt *an* das Gesetz—He *violates* the law.

5.5. Note that whenever the article **der** follows a preposition, **it will be feminine dative case 95% of the time**. This is because:

1. a noun following a preposition cannot be nominative
2. **der** cannot be accusative
3. prepositions taking the genitive occur only about 5% of the time.

Here are examples: zu der Frau (*to the woman*); vor der Tür (*in front of the door*); in der Hütte (*in the hut*); mit der Katze (*with the cat*); nach der Legende (*according to the legend*)

5.6. Moreover, whenever the article **den** follows a preposition, and the noun has an *-n* ending, it will be plural 80% of the time. This is because:

1. **den** can be either masculine accusative or dative plural, and few masculine nouns end in *-en*
2. *-n* is the dative plural ending for most nouns

Here are examples: zu den Frauen; vor den Türen; in den Hütten; mit den Katzen; nach den Legenden

5.7. Prepositions taking the accusative

bis*—until (with reference to time), as far as (with reference to space)*

Bis heute hat Fräulein Meier den Witz nicht gehört—*Until* today, Fräulein Meier had not heard the joke.
Der Student fährt nur *bis* Chicago—The student travels only *as far as* Chicago.

This preposition is often also used in conjunction with other prepositions such as:

Er fährt *bis um* neun Uhr—He travels *until* nine o'clock.
Er tut das *bis zum* bitteren Ende—He does that *to* the bitter end.

durch*—through, by means of, across*

Der Wanderer geht *durch* den Wald—The hiker goes *through* the woods.
Viele steigen *durch* Sünde, manche fallen *durch* Tugend—Many rise *through* (by means of) sin, some fall *through* (by means of) virtue.

für*—for, instead of*

Fräulein Meier bäckt *für* den Briefträger—Fräulein Meier bakes *for* the mailman.
* *Was für* ein Mann ist er?—*What kind of* man is he?

gegen*—against, towards*

* Der Ritter kämpft *gegen* den Drachen—The knight fights *against* the dragon.
* Es wird *gegen* Abend kühler—It grows cooler *towards* evening.
* *Gegen* zehn Uhr kommt er—*Around* ten o'clock he is coming.

ohne*—without*

Ohne ihre Katzen ist Fräulein Meier traurig—Fräulein Meier is unhappy *without* her cats.

um*—at, around*

* *Um* sechs Uhr ist sie gewöhnlich hier—*At* six she is usually here.
* Der Briefträger läuft *um* die Rennbahn—The mailman runs *around* the track.
Fräulein Meier *bittet* den Briefträger *um* Hilfe—Fräulein Meier *asks* the mailman *for* help.
Manchmal schleicht Fräulein Meier wie die Katze *um* den heißen Brei—Sometimes Fräulein Meier beats *around* the bush. (Literally: creeps like a cat around the hot porridge).

wider*—against, contrary to*

Das ist *wider* meinen Willen—That is *against* my will.

There is also an accusative preposition that generally follows its object:

entlang*—along*

Der Wanderer läuft den Fluß *entlang*—The hiker walks *along* the river.

[The prepositions taking the accusative can be memorized by singing them to the tune of *London Bridge is Falling Down:* durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, ohne, um, ohne, um; durch, für, gegen, ohne, um; bis, bis, bis, bis.]

5.8. Translate these sentences:

1. Ein Glaube ohne Tat ist wie *(like)* ein *Feld* ohne Saat *(seed).*
2. Unglück, *Nägel und Haar* wachsen durch das ganze *Jahr.*
3. Liebe ohne Gegenliebe ist wie *(like)* eine Frage ohne [eine] Antwort.
4. Furcht *(fear)* hält alle Speisen *(food)* für Gift *(poison).*
5. Fünf *Jahre* lang kämpfte *(fought)* der Professor gegen die *Windmühlen.* (Note that *lang* is actually an adverb meaning *for: for* five years. . .)
6. Fräulein Meier wickelt *(wraps)* den Briefträger um den kleinen *Finger.*
7. Was für ein Mann ist der Briefträger?
8. Der Gesundheitsfanatiker *(health fanatic) schwimmt* jeden Morgen um *sechs* Uhr wider den *Strom.*

Vocabulary

* **bis**—until
* **durch**—through
das **Feld** (-es, -er)—field
* die **Frage** (-n)—question
* **fünf**—five
* **für**—for
* die **Furcht**—fear
* **ganz**—whole, entire
* **gegen**—against, towards, around
die **Gegenliebe** (-n)—reciprocal love
der **Glaube** (-ns, -n)—faith, belief
das **Haar** (-s, -e)—hair
* **halten für**—to consider
* das **Jahr** (-s,-e)—year
* **jeder**—every, each
* **klein**—small, little
* **lang**—for
* die **Liebe** (-n)—love
* der **Morgen** (-s, -)—morning
der **Nagel** (-s, ¨)—nail
* **ohne**—without
die **Saat** (-en)—seed
* **sechs**—six
der **Strom** (-s, ¨e)—stream
* die **Tat** (-en)—deed
* die **Uhr** (-en)—clock
* **um**—at, around
das **Unglück** (-s, -e)—misfortune
wachsen (wächst) (i)—to grow
* **was für**—what kind of
* **wider**—against
die **Windmühle** (-n)—windmill

5.9. Prepositions taking the dative

aus—*out of, of, from (cities or countries)*

* Sie geht *aus* dem Haus—She goes *out of* the house.
* Sie kommt *aus* Zürich—She *is from* Zurich.
aus verschiedenen Gründen—*for* many reasons
Das Haus *besteht aus* Stroh—The house *consists of* straw.

***außer**—out of, outside, without, except*

* Alle *außer* dem Kind verstehen den Witz—*Except for* the child, everyone understands the joke.

***bei**—near, with, among, at the house of, at;* **beim** is a contraction of *bei* and *dem.*

Die Kneipe liegt *bei* der Universität—The pub is *near* the university.
Das Kind wohnt *bei* seinen Eltern—The child lives *with* his parents.

beim succeeded by any verb turned into a neuter noun means *while doing something:*

Beim Kaffeetrinken besprechen die Studenten die Philosophie Hegels—*While* drinking coffee, the students discuss the philosophy of Hegel.

***mit**—with, by, at*

* Das Kind spielt *mit* seinen Freunden—The child plays with his friends.
Er fährt *mit* dem Bus—He goes *by* bus.
Mit zehn Jahren begann der Briefträger zu arbeiten—*At the age of ten,* the mailman began to work.

***nach**—after, according to, to (with regard to direction)*

* *Nach* der Vorlesung geht der Student in die Kneipe—*After* the class, the student goes to the pub.
* *Nach* meiner Uhr ist es halb elf—*According to* my watch it is 10:30.
* Sie fliegt *nach* Europa—She is flying to Europe.
Sie geht *nach* Hause—She goes home.
* Die Studentin *fragt nach* der Bedeutung des Übels—The woman student *asks about* the meaning of evil.

* Moreover, this preposition often follows the noun when it means *according to:*

Meiner Meinung nach ist das wahr—*In my opinion* that is true.

***seit**—since, for*

* *Seit* vielen Tagen warten Vladimir und Estragon auf Godot—*For* many days Vladimir and Estragon *have been waiting for* Godot.

Generally, although *seit* will be used with a present verb, it should be translated into English as a present perfect or a present perfect progressive to make the translation sound smoother. Germans use the present tense with *seit* in order to indicate an ongoing activity: *Seit* acht Jahren wohnt die Studentin in Chicago—*For* eight years, the woman student has been living in Chicago (and she is living there even now). Only the following sentence would signify a completed action: Acht Jahre *lang* hat die Studentin in Chicago gewohnt—*For* eight years the woman student lived in Chicago (but now she is happily living elsewhere).

von**—from, of, by, about;* ***vom is a contraction of *von* and *dem.*

* Schiller war ein Freund *von* Goethe—Schiller was a friend *of* Goethe's.
Zwei *von* uns—Two of us
Sie spricht *von* dem Dichter—She speaks of the poet.
Ein Gedicht *von* Brecht—A poem *by* Brecht.
Von jetzt an—From now on

zu**—to, at, in addition to;* ***zum is a contraction of *zu* and *dem;* ***zur*** is a contraction of *zu* and *der.*

Sie ist nett *zu* dem alten Mann—She is nice *to* the old man.
* *zum* Beispiel (often abbreviated z.B.)—*for* example.
* *zu* Hause—*at* home
zum letzten Male—*for* the last time

***gegenüber**—vis-à-vis, opposite*

This preposition will nearly always follow the noun:

Sie sitzt dem Wahrsager *gegenüber*—She sits *opposite* the fortune teller.

[These prepositions can be sung to the tune of *The Blue Danube:* aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu; aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu; gegenüber, gegenüber, gegenüber, gegenüber.]

5.10. Translate these sentences (although I am still putting cognates in italics, I am not consistently doing so with cognates you have already seen several times):

1. Hunger treibt *(drives)* den Wolf aus dem *Busch.*
2. Faulheit ist der Schlüssel *(key)* zur Armut.
3. Die Leidenschaft *(passion)* ist ein reißendes *(grasping)* Tier mit *scharfen* Zähnen *(teeth).*
4. Ich rede von Enten *(ducks),* und du *sprichst* von Gänsen *(geese).* (In other words, we are speaking at cross-purposes.)
5. Der Mensch *lebt* nicht vom *Brot allein.*
6. Seit drei Jahren liest der Student die *Philosophie* Kants.
7. Kinder sind eine Brücke *(bridge)* zum Himmel.
8. Der Stolz *(pride)* frühstückt mit dem Überfluß *(abundance),* speist *(eats)* zu Mittag mit der Armut und ißt zu Abend mit der Schande *(shame).* (Note that *Stolz* is personified.)
9. Krankheit kommt mit Extrapost und schleicht *(creeps)* wieder weg wie *(like)* Schnecken *(snails).*
10. Von Sparenberg *(thrift-mountain)* kommt *man* leicht nach Reichenberg *(fat city).*
11. *Hoffnung* ist ein *Schiff* mit einem *Mast* von *Stroh. (Hoffnung* tends to be very unreliable in proverbs.)
12. *Gott* gegenüber hat der Christ *(Christian)* das Herz eines Kindes; dem Nächsten *(neighbor)* gegenüber hat er das Herz einer Mutter; und sich *(himself)* gegenüber hat er das Herz eines Richters *(judge).* (Note: *Gott* is **not** the subject of the first clause. What is?)

Vocabulary

* der **Abend** (-s, -e)—evening
* **allein**—alone
die **Armut**—poverty
* **aus**—out of, of, from
* **außer**—except for, out of
* **bei**—near, with, at the house of
der **Busch** (-es, -e)—bush
* der **Christ** (-en, -en)—Christian
die **Ente** (-n)—duck
* **essen** (ißt)—to eat
die **Extrapost**—special delivery
die **Faulheit**—laziness
frühstücken—to breakfast
die **Gans** (¨e)—goose
* **gegenüber**—opposite, vis-à-vis
* das **Herz** (-ens, -en)—heart
* der **Himmel** (-s, -)—heaven, sky
* die **Hoffnung**—hope
die **Krankheit** (-en)—sickness
* **leben**—to live
* **leicht**—easily
die **Leidenschaft** (-en)—passion
lesen (liest)—to read
* **machen**—to do, make
der **Mast** (-s, -en)—mast
* **mit**—with

der **Mittag** (-es, -e)—noon
* **nach**—after, according to, towards
* **oft**—often
* **reden**—to speak
reißend—grasping
der **Richter** (-s, -)—judge
die **Schande**—shame, scandal
scharf—sharp
das **Schiff** (-es, -e)—ship
schleichen (i)—to creep
der **Schlüssel** (-s, -)—key
* **seit**—since, for
der **Stolz** (-es)—pride
das **Stroh** (-es)—straw
das **Tier** (-es, -e)—animal
treiben—to drive
der **Überfluß** (-sses)—abundance
* **von**—of, from
* **weg**—away
* **wieder**—again
der **Zahn** (-es, ¨e)—tooth
* **zu**—to, towards

5 (PART II)

Prepositions

5.11. Prepositions taking either the dative or the accusative

These prepositions take the dative or the accusative, according to whether or not, in the course of the verbal action, a borderline is crossed by either the subject or the object. If a border is crossed, the preposition will take the accusative; if no border is crossed, the preposition will take the dative. Here are examples:

In the sentence, Der Mann *geht in das Haus (The man goes into the house),* the object of the preposition *in* will be accusative. In the sentence, Der Mann *ist in dem Haus (The man is in the house),* the object of the preposition *in* is dative because no border is being crossed.

In some instances, a sentence can have a slightly different meaning, depending on whether the object of the preposition is accusative or dative. For example, Das Flugzeug fliegt *über die* Berge *(accusative)*—The airplane flies over the mountains means that the plane has had to increase its altitude in order to fly over the mountains; Das Flugzeug fliegt *über den* Bergen *(dative)*—The airplane flies over the mountains, on the other hand, means that the airplane is flying over the mountains at a steady altitude; the airplane is parallel to the mountains. (However, this will rarely affect your translation; such a distinction is more important when learning to speak and write German.)

When these prepositions follow verbs of "mental activity" such as *antworten (answer), denken (think), erinnern (remind), hoffen (hope), lachen (laugh), sprechen (speak),* and *warten (wait),* the object generally will be accusative. Examples are:

Fräulein Meier *hofft auf* einen schönen Tag—Fräulein Meier *hopes for* a beautiful day.
Der Student *wartet auf* den Professor—The student *waits for* the professor.
Sie *lacht über* den Witz—She *laughs at* the joke.

Whenever verbs such as *sein, bleiben,* and *sitzen* are used, the object of the preposition will always be dative, because these verbs cannot imply motion or direction. Here are examples:

Die Katze *ist in der* Küche *(dative)*—The cat *is* in the kitchen.
Der Student *sitzt an dem* Schreibtisch *(dative)*—The student *sits* at the desk.

For each of the following prepositions I have listed both a dative and an accusative example, as well as idioms:

an—*at, on, to, in, near to;* ***am*** is a contraction of *an* plus *dem.*

Ich hänge das Bild *an die* Wand *(acc.)*—I hang the picture on the wall.
Das Bild hängt *an der* Wand *(dat.)*—The picture hangs on the wall.
Sie *denkt an* eine Sache *(acc.)*—She thinks *of a* thing.
Er *glaubt an* eine Sache *(acc.)*—He believes *in* a thing.
* Der Dichter *schreibt an* sie *(acc.)*—The poet writes *to* her.
Am Morgen *(dat.)*—*In* the morning
Der Verkäufer steht *an* der Tür *(dat.)*—The salesman stands *at* the door.
an sich (dat.)—in itself
von jetzt *an—from* now *on*

auf—*on, upon, on top of, in, at, to*

Er stellt den *Brief auf den* Tisch *(acc.)*—He puts the letter *on* the table.
Der Brief liegt *auf dem* Tisch *(dat.)*—The letter is *on* the table.
* *auf jeden* Fall *(acc.)*—*in* any case; *auf keinen* Fall *(acc.)*—*in* no case.
* warten *auf (acc.)*—to wait *for.* Sie *wartet auf den* Briefträger—She *is waiting for* the mailman.
antworten *auf (acc.)*—to answer (no preposition in English).
achten *auf (acc.)*—to pay attention *to.* Wir achten *auf die* folgenden

Schwierigkeiten—We are paying attention *to* the following problems.
auf Deutsch (acc.)—in German

***hinter**—behind*

Der Wolf läuft *hinter den* Busch *(acc.)*—The wolf goes *behind* the bush.
Der Wolf lauert *hinter dem* Busch *(dat.)*—The wolf lurks *behind* the bush.

in**—in, into;* ***im is a contraction for *in* plus *dem;* ***ins*** is *in* plus *das*

Ehrgeiz und Flöhe springen gern *in die* Höhe *(acc.)*—Ambition and fleas like to jump up into the air.
Der Funke glimmt auch *in der* toten Asche *(dat.)*—The spark glimmers even *in* the dead ash.

***neben**—beside, near, next to*

Der Briefträger stellt das Paket *neben die* Tür *(acc.)*—The mailman puts the package *next to* the door.
Das Kind sitzt *neben seinem* Vater *(dat.)*—The child sits *next to* his father.

***über**—above, over, about, across*

Der Briefträger geht *über die* Straße *(acc.)*—The mailman goes *across* the street.
Die Sonne scheint *über den* Bergen *(dat.)*—The sun shines *over* the mountains.
Das Kind *lacht über den* Witz *(acc.)*—The child *laughs at* the joke.
* *sprechen über (acc.)—to talk about*
über 100 Elefanten—*more than* 100 elephants

***unter**—under, beneath, among, below*

Das Buch fällt *unter den* Tisch *(acc.)*—The book falls *under* the table.
Unter dem Tisch liegt das Buch *(dat.)*—The book is lying *under* the table.
* *Unter den* Blinden ist der Einäugige König *(dat.)*—*Among* the blind, the one-eyed person is king.

***vor**—before, in front of, ago, with, of*

Der Student geht *vor die* Kneipe *(acc.)*—The student goes *in front* of the pub.
* Jetzt steht der Student *vor der* Kneipe *(dat.)*—Now the student stands *in front* of the pub.

* *Vor* sechs Minuten stand der Student *vor der* Kneipe *(dat.)*—Six minutes *ago*, the student stood *in front of the* pub.
*** *Vor* used in conjunction with time will *always* mean *"ago!"***

*** *vor allem***—above all.

Fräulein Meier ist *vor allem* kein Dummkopf—Fräulein Meier is *above all* no dolt.
* *vor* Freude *(dat.)*—*with* joy

zwischen *— between*

Das Buch fällt *zwischen den* Tisch und *den* Stuhl *(acc.)*—The book falls *between* the table and the chair.
Der unglückliche Mann sitzt *zwischen einem* Felsen und *einer* harten Stelle *(dat.)*—The unlucky man sits *between* a rock and a hard place.

5.12. Translate these sentences, note the cases of all the nouns when articles are given: (Hint: 95% of the time, **der** after a preposition will be feminine and dative—5.5.)

1. *Zeit, Ebbe* und *Flut* warten auf niemanden.
2. Ein *alter Fuchs* geht nie in die Falle.
3. Tugend *(virtue) sitzt* nicht an den Tischen großer Herren.
4. Gras und Unglück wachsen über Nacht.
5. Vor vielen *Jahren* studierte *(studied)* der Briefträger die *Philosophie* Schopenhauers.
6. Im *Wein* ist die Wahrheit
7. Das Kräutlein *(little herb)* Geduld *(patience*—this is the name of the *Kräutlein)* wächst nicht in *allen Gärten*.
8. Jammer *(sorrow) steht* vor der Tür, und Elend *(misery)* schlägt *(beats)* die Trommel *(drum)*.
9. Schlafen *bringt* kein Geld ins *Haus*.
10. Der Briefträger trifft den *Nagel* auf den Kopf mit seinen *(his)* Beobachtungen *(observations)* über Fräulein Meier.
11. *Alte Freunde, alter Wein und altes* Geld haben Wert in aller *Welt*.
12. Fräulein Meier lebt *wie Gott in Frankreich*. (The English expression for this is: *leads the life of Riley*—i.e., leads a wonderful life. What does the German expression mean literally?)

Vocabulary

* **alle**—all, everyone
* **alt**—old
* **an**—on, at
* **auf**—on, on top of
die **Beobachtung** (-en)—observation
die **Brücke** (-n)—bridge
die **Ebbe** (-n)—ebb
das **Elend** (-s)—misery
die **Falle** (-n)—trap
die **Flut** (-en)—flow
* das **Frankreich** (-s)—France
der **Fuchs** (-es, ¨-e)—fox
die **Geduld**—patience
* das **Geld** (-es)—money
* **groß**—large, great
* der **Herr** (-n, -en)—lord, master
* **hinter**—behind
* **in**—in, into
der **Jammer** (-s)—sorrow
* **jeder**—each, every
* der **Kopf** (-es, ¨-e)—head
* **leben**—to live
* der **Mensch** (-en, -en)—person
der **Nagel** (-s, ¨-)—nail
* **neben**—next to
* **nicht**—not
* **nie**—never
* **niemand**—no one
das **Schlafen**—sleeping
schlagen (schlägt)—to hit, to beat
* **sitzen** (i)—to sit
* **stehen** (i)—to stand
der **Tisch** (-es, -e)—table
treffen (trifft)—to hit
die **Tugend** (-en)—virtue
die **Tür** (-en)—door
* **über**—over, about
* **unter**—under, among
* **vor**—before, ago
* **vor allem**—above all
* die **Wahrheit** (-en)—truth
* **warten auf**—to wait for
der **Wein** (-s, -e)—wine
* der **Wert** (-es, -e)—value

5.13. Prepositions taking the genitive

These prepositions are used rarely. Here are the most common of them. Note that many of them include the English preposition *of* with their translation.

***trotz**—in spite of*

Trotz des Einwandes seines Vaters besucht der Briefträger Fräulein Meier—*In spite of* the objection of his father, the mailman visits Fräulein Meier.

***statt**—instead of*

Statt eines Hundes hat der Philosoph eine Katze—*Instead of* a dog, the philosopher has a cat.

***während**—during*

Während des Tages denkt Fräulein Meier an den Briefträger—*During* the day, Fräulein Meier thinks about the mailman.

***wegen**—because of* (This is another preposition that occasionally follows the noun.)

Wegen des schlechten Wetters bleibt Fräulein Meier zu Hause—*Because of* the bad weather, Fräulein Meier stays at home.
* Des schlechten Wetters *wegen* bleibt der Briefträger auch zu Hause—*Because of* the bad weather, the mailman also stays at home.

Other prepositions taking the genitive which are encountered even more rarely, and which need not be memorized are: ***außerhalb** (outside of)*, ***innerhalb** (inside of)*, ***diesseits** (on this side of)*, ***jenseits** (on that side of)*, ***oberhalb** (above)*, ***unterhalb** (below)*.

**** A final preposition consisting of two words is *um . . . willen*—for the sake of**

* *Um* ihrer Freundschaft *willen* bäckt Fräulein Meier oft für den Briefträger—*For the sake of* their friendship, Fräulein Meier often bakes for the mailman.

5.14. Translate these sentences:

1. Man leidet den Rauch des *Feuers* wegen.
2. Der *Vater* des Briefträgers wohnt außerhalb der Stadt.
3. Des schönen Wetters wegen ist Fräulein Meier bei guter Laune *(mood)*.
4. Statt eines Briefes bekommt Fräulein Meier ein Geschenk von dem Briefträger.
5. Trotz des Geschenkes des Briefträgers ist Fräulein Meier etwas traurig.
6. Während des Dramas *Warten auf Godot* wird der Briefträger müde (*tired*).
7. Man *küßt* das Kind *oft* um der Mutter willen.

Vocabulary

* **anstatt**—instead of
außerhalb—outside of
* **bekommen**—to receive
das **Drama** (-s, -men)—drama
etwas (as an adverb)—somewhat
* **fast**—almost
das **Feuer** (-s, -)—fire
* **gern**—likes to, gladly
das **Geschenk** (-s, -e)—present
küssen—to kiss

* **lachen**—to laugh
die **Laune** (-n)—mood
leiden—to suffer, endure
* **man**—one
der **Rauch** (-es)—smoke
die **Rede** (-n)—speech
* die **Stadt** (¨-e)—city
* **statt**—instead of
traurig—sad
* **trotz**—in spite of
* **um . . . willen**—for the sake of
* **vor** (with time)—ago
* **während**—during
* **wegen**—because of
werden (wird)—to become
das **Wetter** (-s, -)—weather
* **wohnen** (i.)—to live

5.15. Vocabulary aid

1. Hinter, neben, zwischen, vor
   an, auf, über, unter, in—
   alle wollen (wants to go) nach Aberdeen.
   Zum, am, im, beim, vom—
   alle Wege führen nach Rom.
2. Sein *(his)* ganzes Leben lang wohnte *(lived)* der Briefträger in Deutschland.
3. Jede Meile ist im Winter zwei.
4. Niemand unter diesen Studenten versteht die Philosophie Heideggers.
5. Seit einem Jahr arbeitet Fräulein Meier halbtags *(part-time)*.
6. Trotz seiner *(his)* unglücklichen Kindheit hat der Briefträger viel Hoffnung auf die Zukunft *(future)*.
7. Fast jeden Abend um halb acht (7:30) bekommt Fräulein Meier einen Brief mit Extrapost.

Reading Selection: *Fräulein Meier*

Fräulein Meier wohnt in Deutschland, aber sie ist kein typisches deutsches Fräulein, denn die Deutschen sind meistens fleißig, aber Fräulein Meier ist ein wenig faul. Sie bleibt mit ihren Katzen zu Hause und arbeitet halbtags als Ehestifterin (matchmaker). (Sie hilft Unverheirateten [singles], und manchmal heiraten diese dank ihrer [her] Hilfe.) Sie bekommt viele interessante Briefe, und der Briefträger besucht (visits) sie und spricht täglich mit ihr (her). Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger haben verschiedene (different) Weltanschauungen, und ihre (their) Gespräche sind deshalb sehr lebendig.

Fräulein Meier liest gern Sprichwörter, aber die Absichten dieser Sprichwörter sind diesem Fräulein unklar. Die Sprichwörter schildern gute, glückliche Menschen in folgender Weise: sie arbeiten viel, sie fürchten Gott, und sie mißtrauen dem leichten Leben. Aber Fräulein Meier arbeitet wenig, sie tut, was sie will *(wants to)*, und sie

ist doch glücklich. Vielleicht hat sie einen besseren Begriff von der Wirklichkeit als *(than)* die Erzähler der Sprichwörter.

Vocabulary (Words marked ** will no longer be listed in the chapter vocabularies.)

* **aber**—but, however
die **Absicht** (-en)—intention, point
** **bekommen**—to receive
der **Begriff** (-s, -e)—grasp, understanding
der Beruf (-s, -e)—occupation, job
besuchen—to visit
** **bleiben**—to stay, remain
* **denn**—for, because
deshalb—for that reason
* **doch**—nevertheless
ein wenig—somewhat
der **Erzähler** (-s, -)—teller, narrator
* **faul**—lazy
* **fleißig**—hard-working
* **folgend**—following
* **fürchten**—to fear
das **Gespräch** (-es, -e)—conversation
heiraten—to marry
irgendwo—somewhere
lebendig—lively
* **leicht**—easy
* **meistens**—mostly
** der **Mensch** (-en, -en)—person, human being
mißtrauen (i)—to mistrust
schildern—to portray
das **Sprichwort** (-es, ⸚er)—proverb
* **tun**—to do
verschieden—different
* **vielleicht**—perhaps
* **wegen**—because of
* die **Weise** (-n)—way
* die **Weltanschauung** (-en)—world view
* **wenig**—little
* die **Wirklichkeit**—reality
* **wohnen**—to live, reside

5.16. The Importance of Case Endings

Case endings are ***extremely*** important because

1. they tell you the relationship of nouns to one another in the clause
2. they provide guidelines for placement of the verb in your English translation.

NOMINATIVE (der, das, die)

If a noun or pronoun is nominative, you will nearly always want to put a verb after it in your English translation:

Der Mann tötet einen Wolf—The man kills a wolf.
Dem kranken Mann ist das Licht unangenehm—For the sick man, the light is disagreeable.

Oft schreibt der sensible Briefträger E-mails an eine nette Frau—Often, the sensitive mailman writes e-mails to a nice woman.
In einem Park liest eine junge Frau einen Roman—In a park, a young woman reads a novel.

ACCUSATIVE (den, das, die)

If a noun or pronoun is accusative, you will nearly always want to put a verb in front of it in your English translation:
Den Wolf tötet der Mann—The man kills the wolf.
Seit vielen Jahren tötet der Jäger böse Wölfe—For many years, the hunter has been killing evil wolves.
Oft singt die Frau mit vielen Kindern dieses Lied—The woman with many children often sings this song.

You should never try to embellish an accusative noun by inventing a preposition to put in front of it.

GENITIVE (des, der)

If a noun is genitive, you will usually want to connect it with the noun next to it, and the noun will usually be in front of it. *Often, you will want to add the preposition "of" to your translation:*

Der Freund des Briefträgers tötet den Wolf—The friend of the mailman kills the wolf.
Oft sieht der Freund der Frau neue Filme—The friend of the woman often sees new films.

Sometimes an adjective with an *-er* ending in front of a noun can indicate that the noun is in the genitive:

Kinder sind der Reichtum arm*er* Leute—Children are the wealth of poor people.
Armut ist die Stiefmutter all*er* Künste—Poverty is the stepmother of all the arts.

DATIVE (dem, der, den)

If a noun or pronoun is in dative case

1. You may want to put a verb in front of it if it is the object of an intransitive verb (if it looks like a direct object in your English translation), and you need not embellish it with a preposition:

Der Frau hilft der Mann—The man *helps* the woman.
Meistens sagt der Vater des Briefträgers der Frau die Wahrheit—Mostly, the father of the mailman *tells* the woman the truth.

2. Otherwise, you might have to supply a preposition in your translation.
The acceptable prepositions to supply are: to, for, *and sometimes* from.
Do not attempt to supply any other prepositions unless there are extreme mitigating circumstances!

Der Frau fällt die Sprache schwer—For the woman, the language is difficult.
Sie bringt dem Mann das Buch—She brings the book to the man.
Er nimmt dem Kind das gefährliche Spielzeug weg—He takes the dangerous toy away from the child.
Oft bringt der Freund der Frau dem Briefträger ein interessantes Buch—The friend of the woman often brings an interesting book to the mailman.

6 (PART I)

Basic Verb Placement

In German, the conjugated verb is placed inflexibly in the sentence or clause in one of three places: (1) it can be the second element in the sentence; (2) it can begin the sentence, or (3) it can appear at the end of the clause.

6.1. The verb usually is the second element in the sentence, with the subject appearing either before or after it. Therefore, one can say either:

Ich sehe den Hund—I see the dog, or

Den Hund sehe ich—The dog, I see. (This sentence is more emphatic, stressing that it is *the dog* that I see.) This inverted word order with the object appearing first is crucial to recognize, as it can change the entire meaning of the sentence. Obviously ***Der Wolf*** tötet Fräulein Meier—*The wolf* kills Fräulein Meier—is very different from ***Den Wolf*** tötet Fräulein Meier—Fräulein Meier kills *the wolf.*

In this respect, ***recognition of correct case endings is particularly important.*** Whenever you see a sentence beginning with *den* or *dem,* the subject will have to be on the "other side" of the verb. The subject will also have to be on the other side of the verb if the first noun is plural and the verb is singular (***Die Bücher liest*** die Frau—The woman reads the books) or if the first noun is singular and the verb is plural (***Die Frau töten*** die Wölfe—The wolves kill the woman).

6.2. Note that pronouns can also be nominative, even though they are not capitalized:

Dem kranken Mann ist ***nichts*** angenehm—*Nothing* is agreeable to the sick man.
Der Frau ist ***alles*** interessant—*Everything* is interesting to the woman.

Also, whenever *man (one)* appears in a sentence it will *always* be the subject.

Im kalten Ofen bäckt *man* kein Brot—In a cold oven *one* bakes no bread.

6.3. Whenever the sentence begins with an adverb or with a prepositional phrase, or even a string of prepositional phrases, the verb will still appear in "second" place and the subject will always appear on the "other" side of the verb:

Überall *sieht* man Kinder—One *sees* children everywhere.
Auf und ab *tanzt* das Glück wie ein Blatt—Fortune *dances* back and forth like a leaf.
Jetzt *ist* dieses Sprichwort klar—Now this proverb *is* clear.
Auf dem Fußpfad *wächst* kein Gras—No grass *grows* on the footpath.
Durch Gebet und Müh' *erhält* man Ochsen und Küh'—Through prayer and effort one *keeps* well oxen and cows.
In der Mitte der schönen kleinen Stadt mit roten Blumen und großen Brunnen *schreibt* die Frau *(nominative)* eine Ansichtskarte—In the middle of the beautiful small city with red flowers and large fountains *the woman writes* a picture postcard.

6.4. The verb will also appear in second place in sentences containing interrogatives. The most common interrogatives are: *wer (who), wann (when), wo (where), warum (why), wie (how),* and *was (what).*

Wer is declined like the masculine definite article *der.* Here are examples:

Wer (nominative) ist der neue Student?—*Who* is the new student?
Wen (accusative) kennt der Briefträger?—*Whom* does the mailman know?
Wem (dative) sendet der Student eine Email?—*To whom* does the student send an e-mail?
Wann kommt der Briefträger?—*When* is the mailman coming?
Wo ist er jetzt?—*Where* is he now?
Warum spricht der Tierarzt mit Fräulein Meier?—*Why* is the veterinarian speaking with Fräulein Meier?
Wie alt ist die Schildkröte?—*How* old is the tortoise?
Was schreibt der Student?—*What* is the student writing?

6.5. Translate these sentences:

1. Dem Arbeiter *hilft Gott.*
2. Arme Leute kennt niemand *(no one).*
3. Wohltaten *(good deeds)* schreibt *man* nicht in den *Kalender.*
4. Die Gebete der Bettler verjagt der *Wind.*
5. Ein vorwitziges *(impertinent)* Schäflein frißt *(eats)* der *Wolf.*
6. Der Tugend *(virtue)* ist kein Ziel *(goal)* zu hoch. (Note: *Tugend* is feminine. Why does this matter?)
7. Dem Angeklagten *(accused)* gehört der *letzte* Satz.
8. Gift *findet* man nicht in den *Küchen* armer Leute.
9. Den Schuldigen *(guilty one)* erschreckt eine *Maus.*
10. Einen fröhlichen Geber hat *Gott* gern.
11. Einem faulen Bauer *(farmer)* ist kein Pflug *(plow) gut* genug.
12. Der *Wolle* wegen schert *(shears)* man die *Schafe.*
13. Auf der *Erde* ist nichts ohne Furcht. (What is the subject? This is tricky.)
14. Wen kennt die alte Frau?
15. Wer *spricht* alle Sprachen und behält *(retains)* immer das *letzte Wort*? Ein *Echo.*
16. Wie heißt das *Weib* von Herkules? Antwort: Fraukules!

Vocabulary (Final reminder: vocabulary with a ** will not reappear in the chapter vocabulary lists)

**all—all
der **Angeklagte** (-n, -n)—accused
* **arm**—poor
der **Arbeiter (-s, -)—worker (cf. Arbeit)
der **Bauer** (-s, -n)—farmer
der **Bettler** (-s, -)—beggar
* die **Erde** (-n)—earth
erschrecken—to frighten
* **faul**—lazy
fröhlich—joyous
* die **Furcht**—fear
der **Geber** (-s, -)—giver
das **Gebet** (-es, -e)—prayer
* **gehören** (i)—to belong to
* **genug**—enough
* **gern haben**—to like
das **Gift** (-es, -e)—poison
* **glauben** (i)—to believe
* **heißen** (i)—to be called
* **hoch**—high
* **immer**—always
der **Kalender** (-s, -)—calendar
* **kennen**—to know
die **Küche** (-n)—kitchen
* **letzt**—last
die **Leute (pl.)—people
****man**—one (*always* a pronoun)
* **nichts**—nothing
* **niemand**—no one
* **ohne**—without
* der **Satz** (-es, ⸚e)—sentence
das **Schäflein** (-s, -)—little sheep, lamb

der **Schuldige** (-n, -n)—guilty one
* die **Sprache** (-n)—language
die **Tugend** (-en)—virtue
verjagen—to chase
* **wann**—when
* **warum**—why
* **was**—what
* **wegen**—because of
** das **Weib** (-es, -er)—wife
* **wer, wen, wem**—who, whom
* **wie**—how
* **wo**—where, what
die **Wolle**—wool
das **Ziel** (-s, -e)—goal
* **zu**—too

6.6. Occasionally, the sentence can begin with the verb. At this point in your reading, a sentence beginning with a verb will be either a question or a command.

I. Questions
For simple questions (which do not begin with an interrogative), the verb will begin the sentence, and the subject will follow it. Examples are:

Kennt der Professor seine Studenten?—*Does* the professor *know* his students?
Ist der Tierhüter beim Zoo?—*Is* the zookeeper at the zoo?
Kommt heute der Briefträger?—*Is* the mailman *coming* today?

II. Commands (the imperative)
Although you will not encounter the informal imperative too often in scholarly German (unless you tend to read Nietzsche, the *Bible,* or German literature in general), you should at least be familiar with it. The familiar singular imperative is the same as the stem of the verb; verb stems ending in *-d* or *-t* and some other consonants add *-e.* Here are examples in comparison with the interrogative:

Gehst du oft?—*Do* you often *go?*
Geh oft!—*Go* often!
Siehst du den Seiltänzer?—*Do* you *see* the tightrope walker?
Sieh den Seiltänzer!—*Watch* the tightrope walker!
Beantwortest du die Frage?—*Are* you *answering* the question?
Beantworte die Frage!—*Answer* the question!

The imperative form *of sein (to be)* is *sei:*

Sei vorsichtig!—*Be* careful!
Sei glücklich!—*Be* happy!

The familiar plural imperative is generally the same as the familiar plural indicative. Here are examples in comparison with the interrogative:

Seht ihr den hellen Stern?—*Do* you *see* the bright star?
Seht den hellen Stern!—*Look at* the bright star!
Seid ihr nicht ungeduldig?—*Are* you not being impatient?
Seid nicht ungeduldig!—*Do* not *be* impatient!

In both the informal forms *(du* and *ihr)*, the pronouns are omitted for the imperative form.

For the formal *(Sie)* imperative, the *Sie* form will be used, and the verb will be in the same form as the infinitive. This form will be identical to the interrogative. However, the interrogative will always be punctuated by a question mark, and the imperative will often be punctuated by an exclamation point. Here are examples:

Gehen Sie heute?—*Are* you *going* today?
Gehen Sie heute!—*Go* today!
Sprechen Sie oft mit Ihrer Mutter?—*Do* you often *talk* to your mother?
Sprechen Sie oft mit Ihrer Mutter!—*Talk* to your mother often!

The imperative formal of *sein* is *seien Sie!* Here are examples:

Seien Sie vorsichtig!—Be careful! *(command)*
Seien Sie nicht ungerecht!—Do not be unfair! *(command)*
Compare: *Sind Sie* nicht ungerecht?—Aren't you being unfair? *(question)*

6.7. Translate these sentences:

1. Pfau *(peacock)*, schau auf deine *(your)* Beine!
2. Stelle keine Fragen, und du *hörst* keine Lügen.
3. Sei eine Schnecke *(snail)* im Raten *(advice)*, ein Vogel in Taten!
4. Glauben Sie an *Liebe* auf den ersten Blick?
5. Nimm' deine *(your)* Sorgen *(worries, cares)* nicht mit *(with you)* in das Bad *(bath)*!
6. Ist ein Lehrer *(teacher)* ohne Leben wie eine Wolke *(cloud)* ohne Regen?
7. Scherze nur mit deinesgleichen *(people like you)!*
8. Sei nicht aller *Welt Freund!*
9. Läßt Fräulein Meier *oft* die *Katze* aus dem Sack?
10. *Lernen* Sie Deutsch!
11. *Lernen* Sie *Russisch*?
12. Hat der Briefträger ein Herz aus *Gold*?
13. Ein Trinklied:

Trink, trink, Brüderlein trink,
Laß doch die Sorgen *(worries)* zu *Haus,*
Trink, trink, Brüderlein trink,
Laß doch die Sorgen zu Haus!
Meide *(avoid)* den Kummer *(sorrow)* und meide den Schmerz *(pain),*
Dann ist das Leben ein Scherz *(joke)*!
Meide den Kummer und meide den Schmerz,
Dann ist das Leben ein Scherz.

Vocabulary

das **Bad** (-es, -er)—bath
das **Bein** (-es, -e)—leg
der **Blick** (-es, -e)—glance
das **Brüderlein** (-s, -)—little brother
* **dann**—then
* **doch**—just, nevertheless
* **dort**—there
* **erst**—first
* die **Frage** (-n)—question
fürchten—to fear
****glauben**—to believe
das **Herz (-ens, -en)—heart
der **Kummer** (-s)—grief, sorrow
* **lassen** (läßt)—to let, leave
das **Leben (-s, -)—life
* der **Lehrer** (-s, -)—teacher
die **Liebe (-n)—love
die **Lüge** (-n)
meiden—to avoid
* **nehmen** (nimmt)—to take
* **nur**—only, just
das **Raten** (-s)—advice
der **Regen** (-s, -)—rain
der **Sack** (-es, ¨-e)—sack, bag
schauen (auf) (i)—to look at
scherzen (i)—to joke
der **Schmerz** (-es, -en)—pain
* **stellen**—to ask, pose
* die **Tat** (-en)—deed
das **Trinklied** (-es, -er)—drinking song
* **wie**—like
die **Wolke** (-n)—cloud
zu Hause—at home

6.8. In dependent clauses, the verb will appear at the end of the clause.
Here are examples:

Kehre erst vor deiner Tür, *ehe* du über andere *redest*—First sweep in front of your door *before* you *talk* about others.
Herren bleiben Herren, *auch wenn* sie bis zum Mittag *schlafen*—Masters are masters, *even if* they *sleep* until noon.
Jedes Gleichnis hinkt, *sobald* es über einen gewissen Grad *hinausgeht*—Every comparison limps *as soon as* it *goes beyond* a certain point.

When the sentence begins with a dependent clause, the main clause usually will begin with a verb as the second element in the sentence. Here are examples:

Was in einer Wurst *ist, wissen* nur Gott und der Schlächter—What *is* in a sausage, only God and the butcher *know.*
Wer Geld *hat, hat* auch Freunde—He who *has* money also *has* friends.

Dependent clauses will always be separated from main clauses by commas. Although you should begin to recognize this construction, I will explain it to you in more detail in Chapters Twenty-three–Twenty-five. Therefore I have not given you any practice sentences for this section.

6.9. Vocabulary aid: memorize and guess the words (in italics) in the following sentences:

1. Um der vollen Wahrheit willen läßt Fräulein Meier die Katze aus dem Sack.
2. Ist die Liebe immer schön?
3. In einem *Sommergarten* pflückt (plucks) ein *romantischer* junger Mann mit einer Neigung (inclination) für *Idealismus* eine *Blume.*
4. Um *fünf* Uhr besucht (visits) ein netter Freund des Briefträgers eine interessante Dame mit vielen Katzen.
5. Um *Mitternacht denkt* ein philosophisch gesinnter (minded) Mann an die Bedeutung (significance) des Daseins (existence; literally: *being there*).
6. In der *Nachbarschaft* der alten Universität mit großen *Bibliotheken* und seltsamen (strange) Professoren schreibt ein *einsichtsvoller* Student ein sehr interessantes Buch.
7. Auf wen wartet der faule Mann?
8. Was ist ohne Furcht?
9. Sei immer freundlich mit guten Menschen.

Reading Selection: ***Meeresstrand*** **(Theodor Storm)**

Ans Haff *(lagoon)* nun fliegt die Möwe *(seagull),*
Und Dämmerung *bricht hinein* *(arrives);*
Über die feuchten Watten *(shoals)*
Spiegelt der Abendschein *(evening glow).*

Graues Geflügel *(fowl)* huschet *(scurries)*
Neben dem Wasser her;
Wie Träume liegen die Inseln
Im Nebel *(fog)* auf dem Meer.

Ich höre des gärenden *(swirling)* Schlammes *(sand)*
Geheimnisvollen *(secret)* Ton,

Einsames Vogelrufen—
So war es immer schon. *(It was always like that)*

Noch einmal schaudert *(shudders)* leise
Und schweiget dann der Wind;
Vernehmlich *(clear)* werden die Stimmen,
Die *(which)* über der Tiefe sind.

Vocabulary

* **dann**—then
die **Dämmerung** (-en)—twilight
einsam—lonely
feucht—wet, damp
fliegen (i)—to fly
grau—grey
her—hither
die **Insel** (-n)—island
leise—quietly
der **Meeresstrand** (-es, ⸚e)—seashore
* **noch einmal**—once again
schweigen (i)—to be silent
spiegeln—to reflect, to mirror
die **Stimme** (-n)—voice
die **Tiefe** (-n)—depth
der **Ton** (-es, ⸚e)—tone
der **Traum** (-es, ⸚e)—dream
das **Vogelrufen** (-s, -rufe)—bird call
* **werden**—to become

7

The Pronouns

7.1. German pronouns are declined in a way similar to articles. Here are the forms:

nominative	accusative	dative
ich *(I)*	mich *(me)*	mir *(me, to me)*
du *(you)*	dich *(you)*	dir *(you, to you)*
er *(he)*	ihn *(him)*	ihm *(him, to him)*
es *(it)*	es *(it)*	ihm *(it, to it)*
sie *(she)*	sie *(her)*	ihr *(her, to her)*
wir *(we)*	uns *(us)*	uns *(us, to us)*
ihr *(you)*	euch *(you)*	euch *(you, to you)*
sie *(they)*	sie *(them)*	ihnen *(them, to them)*
Sie *(you)*	Sie *(you)*	Ihnen *(you, to you)*

At this point, it is very important for you to learn the declensions of *er (he), es (it),* and *sie (she* and *they)* because they are also the pronouns for masculine, neuter, feminine and plural nouns. (Although there are also pronouns that take genitive case, they occur rarely, and you will be able to identify them if you come across them.)

7.2. Notice the similarity between the declensions of these four pronouns and the definite articles. In each case, the pronoun either rhymes with the definite article, or it has the same last letter. Compare:

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	der	das	die	die
	er	es	sie	sie
accusative	den	das	die	die
	ihn	es	sie	sie
dative	dem	dem	der	den
	ihm	ihm	ihr	ihnen

7.3. Here are sentences including these four pronouns in nominative, accusative and dative cases: Note that when an inanimate masculine or feminine noun is used, it is still replaced with a masculine or feminine pronoun in German, even though it is translated into English as *it.*

Nominative

Fräulein Meier bäckt *einen* Kuchen, und *er* riecht gut—Fräulein Meier bakes a cake, and *it* smells good.
Der Briefträger kauft Brot, wenn *es* frisch ist—The mailman buys bread when it is fresh.
Die Lampe ist hell; *sie ist vielleicht zu hell*—The lamp is bright; it is perhaps too bright.
Fräulein Meier hat *neue* Handschuhe, und *sie* sind warm—Fräulein Meier has new gloves, and they are warm.

Accusative

Der Mann kauft *einen* Apfel, dann ißt er *ihn*—The man buys an apple, then he eats it.
Das Kind mag *das* Brot und ißt *es* gern—The child likes the bread and likes to eat it.
Die Frau lernt *die* Melodie und singt *sie* oft—The woman learns the melody and sings *it* often.
Wohlstand schafft Freunde, Not prüft *sie*—Prosperity creates friends; need tests *them.*

Dative

Wenn die kranke Frau mit *einem* Arzt spricht, erklärt sie *ihm* ihre Krankheiten—When the sick woman speaks with a doctor, she explains her illnesses *to him.*
Die Mutter des Kindes hilft *ihm* mit seinen Schularbeiten—The mother of the child helps *him* with his homework.
Der Vater der Tochter hilft *ihr*—The father of the daughter helps *her.*

Wenn der Professor *die* Studenten sieht, ist er freundlich mit *ihnen*—When the professor sees the students he is friendly with *them.*

7.4. Replace all the nouns in the following sentences with pronouns:

1. Der Briefträger findet das Stinktier.
2. Die Frau geht ohne den Mann.
3. Das Kind ist glücklich mit der Katze.
4. Der Professor sieht die alten Frauen mit den Studenten.
5. Außer den Elefanten sind die Tiere nicht hungrig.
6. Die Frau sitzt dem Fußballspieler nicht gegenüber.
7. Der Pfadfinder *(Boy Scout)* hilft der alten Dame.
8. Das Mädchen trinkt die Milch.

7.5. Here are the masculine, neuter, feminine and plural pronouns and their possibilities. Note which pronouns are identical.

er **only** masculine nominative *(he)*
es neuter nominative and accusative *(it)*
sie feminine and plural nominative *(she, they)* and feminine and plural accusative *(her, them)*
ihn **only** masculine accusative *(him)*
ihm masculine dative *(him)* and neuter dative *(it)*
ihr feminine dative *(her);* also informal you plural nominative
ihnen **only** plural dative *(them,* or *to them)* The pronoun with the most letters is always plural.

7.6. Translate the following sentences (vocabulary is on pp. 70–71):

1. Wenn Fräulein Meier den Briefträger mit einer anderen Dame sieht, wird sie böse auf ihm.
2. Er hilft ihnen oft.
3. Wann sprechen sie mit ihr?
4. Ihn kennt sie.
5. Es ist ihm nicht klar.
6. Versprechen sind wie Pastenkruste *(pie crust);* man bricht sie.
7. Ihm helfen sie.
8. Wenn der Briefträger eine Studentin sieht, sagt er ihr: "Guten Tag."
9. Wenn die Tochter ein Lied singt, hört die Mutter es gern.

7.7. The pronouns *du, ihr,* and *Sie*

The informal pronouns *du (singular)* and *ihr (plural)* are seldom encountered in most reading material; therefore you do not need to pay too much attention to them. However, do not confuse *ihr (informal you plural)* with *ihr (feminine dative).* Compare:

Ihr helft den Kindern oft — *You* often help the children; and Der Mann hilft *ihr* — The man helps *her.*

Also note that *Sie (formal you)* and *sie (they)* are declined in the same way. However, *Sie* (the *formal you*) will **always** be capitalized. Compare:

Nominative: Wann gehen *Sie* — When are *you* going?
Wann gehen *sie* — When are *they* going?

Accusative: Wer kennt *Sie* — Who knows *you*?
Wer kennt *sie* — Who knows *them*?

Dative: Wer hilft *Ihnen* — Who is helping *you?*
Wer hilft *ihnen* — Who is helping *them?*

When the sentence begins with *Sie* and the verb is plural, the pronoun will be translated either *you* or *they* depending on context.

Sie gehen jetzt — They (or you) are going now.

7.8. The possessive adjectives

Possessive adjectives in English are the words *my, your, his, her, its, our,* and *their* placed **directly in front of a noun:**

My friend is brilliant.
His cat is obnoxious.
Her mother is a friend of **their father.**

They are not to be confused with **pronouns,** which aren't attached to nouns, even though *her* sometimes appears as a possessive adjective and sometimes as a "simple" pronoun:

He sees *her* often. *Her* in this context is not a possessive adjective, it is **only** a pronoun.

He sees *her friend* often. *Her* in this context *is* a possessive adjective, modifying friend.

This difference is crucial, because possessive adjectives have **two** equally important functions whenever they are used.

1. Like *der* and *ein* words, they are adjectives, which must indicate the gender and case of the noun: Er sieht seine**n** *Freund* oft *(Freund* is masculine, accusative).
2. Like possessive adjectives in English, they indicate possession: *Er* sieht *sein*en Freund oft (*sein* indicates that the friend is related to *er*).

Here are all the possessive adjectives in the masculine nominative case:

mein	*(my)*	unser	*(our)*
dein	*(your)*	euer	*(your)*
sein	*(his, its)*	ihr	*(their)*
ihr	*(her)*		
	Ihr *(your—formal)*		

These possessive adjectives will have exactly the same adjective endings as *ein* words. Here is the complete declension *of mein* in comparison with *ein:*

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	ein Mann	ein Kind	eine Frau	—
	mein Mann	mein Kind	meine Frau	meine Kinder
accusative	einen Mann	ein Kind	eine Frau	—
	meinen Mann	mein Kind	meine Frau	meine Kinder
genitive	eines Mannes	eines Kindes	einer Frau	—
	meines Mannes	meines Kindes	meiner Frau	meiner Kinder
dative	einem Mann	einem Kind	einer Frau	—
	meinem Mann	meinem Kind	meiner Frau	meinen Kindern

7.9. As with all other adjectives, the ending of a possessive adjective is determined by the noun that immediately follows it:

Sein Kind (neut. nom.) ist hier—*His child* is here.
Der Mann liebt *seinen Sohn (mas. acc.)*—The man loves *his son.*
Der Hund *seiner Mutter (fem., gen.)* ist freundlich—The dog *of his mother* is friendly.
Er schreibt seinen Freunden *(pl. dat.)* viele E-mails—He writes his friends many e-mails.

The form of the possessive adjective (whether it is *my, your, his, its, her, our, your,* or *their*) is determined by the noun to which it refers. Here are examples:

Ich liebe mein*e* Katze—*I* love *my* cat. (mein*e* indicates that *Katze* is feminine accusative.)
Liebst du dein*en* Hund?—Do *you* love *your* dog? (dein*en* indicates that *Hund* is masculine accusative.)
Er hilft sein*er* Mutter—He helps *his* mother (sein*er* indicates that *Mutter* is feminine dative.)
Sie liebt ihr*e* Tochter—She loves *her* daughter (ihr*e* indicates that *Tochter* is feminine accusative.)
Es hat sein*e* Schwierigkeiten—It has *its* problems (sein*e* indicates that *Schwierigkeiten* is plural accusative.)
Wir glauben unser*en* Freunden—We believe *our* friends (unser*en* indicates that *Freunden* is plural dative.)
Seht ihr *euer* Kind?—Do *you* see your child? (euer with *no* ending indicates that *Kind* is neuter accusative.)
Kennen sie ihr*en* Briefträger?—Do they know *their* mailman? (ihr*en* indicates that *Briefträger* is masculine accusative.)
Kennen Sie Ihr*e* Nachbarin?—Do you know *your* neighbor? (Ihr*e* indicates *Nachbarin* is feminine accusative.)

7.10. It is particularly important to memorize the possessive adjectives for *his* and *its (sein)* and for *her* and *their (ihr),* because these are the adjectives most often encountered. Note that these possessive adjectives also will be used for inanimate nouns, depending on whether the nouns are masculine, neuter, feminine, or plural. Here are examples:

Jeder Tag *(masculine)* hat *seinen* Abend—Every day has *its* evening.
Jedes Dach *(neuter)* hat *sein* Ungemach—Every roof (or household) has *its* adversity.
Die Schule *(feminine)* hat *ihre* Regeln—The school has *its* rules.
Die Länder *(plural)* haben *ihre* eigenen Sitten—The countries have *their* own customs.

Note that *sein (his, its)* as a possessive adjective has nothing to do with the verb *sein (to be).* If it is a possessive adjective, it will usually appear in front of the noun: *Sein* Freund ist hier—*His* friend is here.

7.11. Translate these sentences:

1. Folget meinen *Worten,* nicht meinen Taten!
2. Die *Freundschaft* hat ihre Grenzen *(limits).*
3. *Lerne Ordnung,* übe *(practice)* sie; Ordnung spart dir Zeit und Müh'*(effort)*!
4. Kleiner Tom in großer Not
   singt abends für sein Abendbrot,
   singt für *Butter* und für *Brot,*
   doch ein Messer hat er nicht,
   und eine Frau, sie kriegt er nicht.
5. Ein *weiser Sohn* macht seinem Vater Freude, ein törichter *(foolish one)* macht seiner *Mutter* Kummer *(trouble).* (Proverbs)
6. Jede *Flut* hat ihre *Ebbe.*
7. Der Horcher *(listener)* an der Wand hört seine eigne *(own)* Schand'. (Note that an ' will always stand for an *e.)* (Moral: don't eavesdrop!)
8. Wenn der Briefträger Fräulein Meier *sieht,* fragt er sie nach ihrem *Kurs* im Korbflechten *(basket-weaving).*
9. Die Reue *(repentance)* ist ein hinkender *(limping)* Bote *(messenger); sie kommt* langsam, aber sicher *(certainly).*
10. Jedes *Haar* hat seinen Schatten *(shadow),* und jede Ameise *(ant)* hat ihren Zorn *(wrath).* (Even the smallest object is of some consequence.)
11. Faulheit *geht* so langsam, daß Armut *(poverty)* sie einholt *(catches up with).*
12. Der Briefträger ist der Lieblingssohn seiner Eltern *(parents).*
13. Die *Schule,* wie *(as)* sie ist, verblödet *(dulls)* die Kinder, da *(since)* sie ihre geistigen Fähigkeiten *(capabilities)* verzerrt *(distorts).*
14. Wahrlich, ich *sage* euch . . .
15. Liebe ist wie Tau (dew), sie *fällt* auf *Rosen* und auf Nesseln (nettles).
16. Jede Wolke hat ihren *Silberstreifen.*
17. Arme *Gäste sendet* uns *Gott.*
18. Dein Hirtenstab *(shepherd's crook)* und Stock *(staff),* sie sind mein Trost *(comfort).*
    Du deckst für mich einen Tisch angesichts *(in the face of)* meiner Gegner.
    (Note: is *Gegner* singular or plural?)
    Du salbst *(anoint)* mein Haupt mit *Öl.*
    Mein Becher *(cup)* ist *übervoll.* (Aus dem 23. Psalm)

Vocabulary

das **Abendbrot**—supper
die **Ameise** (-n)—ant
* **ander**—other
die **Armut**—poverty
* **außer**—except for
der **Becher** (-s, -)—cup

* **böse**—angry, evil
der **Bote** (-n, -n)—messenger
* **da**—since
* **daß**—that
decken—to set, cover
* **dein**—your
****doch**—nevertheless
die **Ebbe** (-n)—ebb
* **eigen**—own
einholen—to catch up with
die **Eltern** (pl.)—parents
die **Fähigkeit** (-en)—ability
die **Faulheit**—laziness
* **folgen** (i)—to follow
die **Flut** (-en)—flood
* **fragen nach**—to ask about
* die **Freude** (-n)—joy
der **Gast** (-es, ¨e)—guest
der **Gegner** (-s, -)—opponent
* **geistig**—spiritual, intellectual
die **Grenze** (-n)—limit
* das **Haupt** (-s, ¨er)—head
der **Hirtenstab** (-es, -e)—shepherd's crook
der **Horcher** (-s, -)—listener
* **ihr**—her, their
* **Ihr**—your
* **kennen**—to know
kriegen—to get
der **Kummer**—trouble
der **Kurs** (-es, -e)—course
langsam—slow, slowly
* **mein**—my
das **Messer** (-s, -)—knife
die **Mühe** (-n)—effort, trouble
* **nicht**—not
die **Not**—need
die **Schule** (-n)—school
* **sein**—his, its
* **sicher**—certain
sparen—to save
* die **Tat** (-en)—deed
das **Tier** (-s, -e)—animal
der **Tisch** (-es, -e)—table
* **tragen**—to wear, carry
übervoll—overflowing
* **unser**—our
das **Versprechen** (-s, -)—promise
wahrlich—verily
die **Wand** (¨e)—wall
* **weise**—wise
* **wenn**—if, when
* **wie**—like
die **Wolke** (-n)—cloud
der **Zorn** (-s)—wrath

7.12. Pronoun practice: use these sentences to help you memorize the pronouns.

1. Sie macht ihn glücklich.
2. Es ist ihr eine Freude.
3. Es gefällt ihnen nicht.
4. Vorsicht *(caution, cf. foresight)* spart dir Zeit.
5. Wo sind sie?
6. Sie erzählt ihrem Freund die Geschichte.
7. Die Faulheit des Kindes ist seinem Vater unerklärlich *(inexplicable)*, und er versteht *(understands)* sie nicht.
8. Das Kind trägt immer seinen blauen Mantel, denn er gefällt ihm.
9. Ihn kennt sie nicht.

10. Ihr helfen sie oft.
11. Ist das Ihnen klar?
12. Sie kauft ihm ein interessantes Buch.
13. Meinen Freund sieht sie oft.
14. Kennt er uns nicht?
15. Wo findet ihr die Antwort?
16. Unsere Freundschaft ist mir sehr wichtig.
17. Ihm glauben sie.
18. Ihre Antwort versteht er nicht. (There are three correct translations for *Ihre Antwort.*)

8

Weak Nouns and Adjectives Used as Nouns

8.1. Weak nouns

There are some masculine and a very few neuter nouns that are called "weak nouns." These nouns will require an *-en* or *-n* ending to every case but the nominative singular. Some of these nouns will end in *-e*—such as der Junge *(boy),* der Kollege *(colleague),* der Soziologe *(sociologist).* Other common masculine weak nouns are: der Mensch, der Student, der Herr *(man, lord),* and der Philosoph. These nouns are problematic because they often look plural because of their *-en* endings; however they will rarely seriously affect your translations. I am discussing them at this point in order to give you still more practice in looking carefully at case endings.

Here are sentences indicating how the noun *Student* appears in all four cases:

Nominative: ***Der Student*** liest die Werke Spinozas—*The student* is reading the works of Spinoza. (In this instance, it does not matter if you recognize this noun as being weak.)

Accusative: Seine Eltern sehen ***den Studenten*** selten—His parents see *the student* seldom.

Genitive: Der Freund ***des Studenten*** liest die Werke Nietzsches—The friend *of the student* is reading the works of Nietzsche.

Dative: Seine Kurse sind ***dem Studenten*** wichtig—His courses are important *to the student.*

Most weak nouns—***der Mensch*** *(person),* ***der Theologe*** *(theologian),* ***der Bär*** *(bear),* ***der Löwe*** *(lion)*—are animate. However, there are also a few inanimate weak nouns—***der Name, der Gedanke*** *(thought),* ***der Friede*** *(peace),* ***das Herz*** *(heart)*—which are declined like animate weak nouns, except that they add *-ens* rather than *-en* to the genitive singular. Here is an example:

Nominative: ***Der Gedanke*** des Philosophen ist interessant—*The thought* of the philosopher is interesting.
Accusative: Die Studenten verstehten ***den klaren Gedanken***—The students understand *the clear thought.*
Genitive: Der Kern ***des Gedankens*** gefällt dem Studenten—The essence *of the thought* pleases the student.
Dative: Man hört sehr viel von ***dem Gedanken*** des Professors—One hears very much about *the thought* of the professor.

8.2. Such nouns will be indicated in your dictionaries by (-en, -en), showing that their genitive ending is -en. I also use this convention in my vocabulary lists.

8.3. Weak nouns always have *-en* plural endings. Consequently, whether such a noun is singular or plural can be determined only by the preceding *der* or *die* articles. Compare the following:

	der Mensch	**der Junge**	**der Name**	**das Herz**
nominative				
singular	*der* Mensch	*der* Junge	*der* Name	*das* Herz
plural	*die* Menschen	*die* Jungen	*die* Namen	*die* Herzen
accusative				
singular*	***den* Menschen**	***den* Jungen**	***den* Namen**	*das* Herz
plural	*die* Menschen	*die* Jungen	*die* Namen	*die* Herzen
genitive				
singular	*des* Menschen	*des* Jungen	*des* Namens	*des* Herzens
plural	*der* Menschen	*der* Jungen	*der* Namen	*der* Herzen
dative				
singular	*dem* Menschen	*dem* Jungen	*dem* Namen	*dem* Herzen
plural*	***den* Menschen**	***den* Jungen**	***den* Namen**	*den* Herzen

*Note that the forms of the dative plural and masculine accusative singular are identical; therefore, only your knowledge of cases will tell you if a masculine weak noun is singular or plural.

Compare: Er spricht *mit dem* Propheten *(dative singular)*—He speaks with the *prophet.*
Er spricht mit *den* Propheten (*dative plural)*—He speaks with the *prophets.*
Er kennt *den* Propheten *(masculine accusative)*—He knows the *prophet.*
Er kennt *die Propheten (plural accusative)*—He knows the *prophets.*

einen Studenten, einen Menschen, einen Elefanten, etc. will of course always be singular because *ein* is a singular article.

8.4. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on pp. 77–78):

1. Das Auge ist des Herzens Zeiger *(indicator).*
2. Man erkennt den Löwen an den *Klauen.*
3. Das Unglück *spricht* gewaltig *(powerfully)* zu dem Herzen.
4. *Feuer* im Herzen bringt Rauch in den Kopf.
5. Der *Wunsch* ist oft der Vater des Gedankens.
6. Des Menschen *Wille* ist sein Himmelreich *(kingdom of heaven).*
7. Manchmal *spricht* die Professorin mit ihren Studenten.
8. *Oft* hat der Briefträger einen Brief *für* den netten Studenten.
9. Warum sind die Fußspüren vom Elefanten *rund*? Damit (so that) seine *Füße* hineinpassen!

8.5. Adjectives used as nouns

German adjectives often can be used as nouns. For example, *faul (lazy)* can be changed into *der Faule (the lazy one); glücklich (happy)* can be changed into *der Glückliche (the happy one);* and *gelehrt (learned)* can be changed into *der Gelehrte (the learned one, or the scholar).* These adjectives are capitalized and function as nouns; however, they still retain adjective endings according to whether they modify an understood masculine or feminine noun, or whether they are plural. Compare:

	masculine	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative			
adjective	der *gute* Mann	die *gute* Frau	die *guten* Leute
adjectival noun	der *Gute*	die *Gute*	die *Guten*
accusative			
adjective	den *guten* Mann	die *gute* Frau	die *guten* Leute
adjectival noun	den *Guten*	die *Gute*	die *Guten*
genitive			
adjective	des *guten* Mannes	der *guten* Frau	der *guten* Leute
adjectival noun	des *Guten*	der *Guten*	der *Guten*
dative			
adjective	*dem guten* Mann	der *guten* Frau	den *guten* Leuten
adjectival noun	dem *Guten*	der *Guten*	den *Guten*

Because the adjectival noun *der Guten* can be either feminine genitive, plural genitive, or feminine dative, you will be able to tell the case only by context. However, when it is genitive, *der Guten* will usually be plural rather than feminine.

Whenever a masculine adjectival noun is preceded by *ein* (which will happen only in the nominative case), its ending will be *-er:* ein Deutsch*er;* ein Gut*er;* ein Glücklich*er.*

8.6. Note that if an adjective refers to a noun that appears in a previous clause, it is not capitalized:

Die alten Propheten sind tot; den *neuen* glaubt man nicht—The old prophets are dead; one does not believe the new ones. If *Neuen* had been capitalized, the final part of the sentence would have been: one does not believe *new people.*

8.7. Although adjectives turned into nouns are officially nouns, their endings are the same as if they were adjectives. Here are all the possible endings for adjectives used as nouns. ***Case ending exercise: what cases are these nouns in?*** (If you are uncertain, consult 4.3)

ein Guter - a good one (only one possibility)
eine Gute - a good woman (two possibilities)
der Gute - the good one (only one possibility)
die Gute - the good woman (two possibilities)

die Gute**n** - the good ones (two possibilities)
den Gute**n** - the good one; the good ones (two possibilities)
der Gute**n** - of the good ones (most common), of the good woman, to the good woman (three possibilities)
dem Gute**n** - to the good one (only one possibility)

8.8. Adjectives also can be turned into neuter nouns, which are generally abstract: *das Schöne*—the beautiful; *das Gute*—the good; *das Wahre*—the true; *das Gewöhnliche*—the usual.

8.9. Translate the following sentences, stating the gender and case of each of the adjectival nouns (although some of these adjectival nouns are technically singular, it will not seriously affect your translation if you translate them as plurals because often these nouns have a plural sense to them, anyway):

1. Das *Neue* ist für aktuelle Leute immer *interessant.*
2. Dem Kranken ist nichts angenehm.
3. Dem Kühnen gehört die *Welt.*
4. Im *Hause* eines Faulen ist es immer Feiertag *(holiday).*
5. Andere *Völker* haben Heilige, [aber] die [antiken] *Griechen* haben Weise [whom they worship]. (Nietzsche)
6. Kleine *Feinde* und kleine *Wunden* verachtet kein Weiser.
7. Des Menschen Leben *hängt* an einem Faden.
8. Die Gesunden und die Kranken haben verschiedene Gedanken.
9. Des Faulen *Werktag* ist morgen; sein Ruhetag ist heute.
10. Neue Heilige werfen die alten ins Gerumpel *(junk pile).* (Why isn't *die alten* capitalized? An explanation is in 8.6.)
11. Dem Reinen ist alles rein.
12. Wer kennt den *Alten*?
13. Fräulein Meier fragt nach den *Alten.*
14. *Hoffnung* ist das *Brot* des Elenden.

Vocabulary

* **abends**—evenings
* **aktuell**—current, modern, up-to-date
* **alles**—everything
angenehm—agreeable
antik—ancient
elend—miserable
* **erkennen**—to recognize
der **Faden** (-s, ¨)—thread
der **Feiertag** (-es, -e)—holiday
* **fleißig**—industrious
****fragen** (nach)—to ask (about)
der **Fußspur** (-s, ¨en)—footprint
der **Gedanke** (-ns, -n)—thought

* **gehören** (i) — to belong to
gesund — healthy
gewaltig — powerfully
der **Grieche** (-n, -n) — Greek
heilig — holy, saintly;
der **Heilige**- saint
* **heute** — today
hineinpassen — fit in
* **immer** — always
die **Klaue** (-n) — claw
* der **Kopf** (-es ¨e) — head
krank — sick
kühn — daring, bold
der **Löwe** (-n, -n) — lion
manchmal — sometimes
der **Mensch (-en, -en) — person
* **morgen** — tomorrow
* **nichts** — nothing
der **Rauch** (-s) — smoke
rein — pure
der **Ruhetag** — day of rest
verachten — to despise
verschieden — different
* **weise** — wise, sage
werfen — to throw
der **Werktag** (-es, -e) — work day
* der **Wille** (-ns, no plural) — will
die **Wunde** (-n) — wound
* der **Wunsch** (-es, ¨e) — wish
der **Zeiger** (-s, -) — indicator

8.10. Guess the following proper names:

Aristoteles
Friedrich der Große
Horaz
Iwan der Große
Markus
Äsop
Richard Löwenherz
Iwan der Schreckliche
Rachmaninow
Sankt Georg
Tschaikowskij
Johannas
Don Quichotte
Katharina die Große
Erich der Rote
Chruschtschow
Kain
Cupido
Salomo
Ödipus
Matthäus
Platon
Dostojewskij
Dr. Schiwago
Lukas
Hiob (aus der Bibel)
Karl der Große

9

The Various Uses of Es

Although *es* is the pronoun for *it*, there are several instances in which it will not be translated literally.

9.1. *Es gibt*

Es gibt (literally: it gives) means either *there is* if the object is singular, or *there are* if the object is plural. Examples are:

Es gibt keinen Rauch ohne Feuer—*There is* no smoke without fire.
Es gibt leider kein Bier mehr—Unfortunately, *there's* no more beer.
Es gibt viele Antworten auf diese komplizierte Frage—*There are* many answers to this complicated question.
In alten Häusern *gibt es* viele Mäuse, in alten Pelzen *gibt es* viele Läuse—In old houses there are many mice; in old furs, there are many lice.

9.2. *Es ist* and *es sind*

Es ist and *es sind* are both used in a similar way. *Es ist* will mean *there is* (and the predicate nominative will be singular), and *es sind* will mean *there are* (and the predicate nominative will be plural). Examples are:

Es ist eine Katze im Haus—*There is* a cat in the house.
Es sind keine Mäuse in der Nähe—*There are* no mice near by.

9.3. The "pay attention" *es*

Occasionally, the subject of a German sentence will appear later in the sentence so that it can receive emphasis; therefore the sentence will begin with *es* merely in order to gain the reader's attention. In these cases, *es* is best left untranslated. You can recognize these sentences because

1. they will always begin with *es;*
2. the "real" subject of the sentence will be in the nominative case; and
3. occasionally the verb will be plural.

Here are examples of the "pay attention" *es:*

Es ist *nicht jede schwarze Katze* eine Hexe—*Not every black cat* is a witch.
Es fällt *kein Baum* beim ersten Streich—*No tree* falls from the first blow.
Es hat *alles* einen Anfang und ein Ende—*Everything* has a beginning and an end.
Es *gehen viele geduldige Schafe* in einen Stall—*Many patient sheep* go into a stable. (Because the sheep are patient, the stable can accommodate all of them.)

9.4. Translate these sentences:

1. Es gibt keine *Regeln* ohne Ausnahmen *(exceptions).*
2. Es *beißt* kein Wolf den anderen (i.e. There is honor among thieves.)
3. Es *hilft* keine *Krone* für das Kopfweh. (No matter how powerful you are, a *Kopfweh* still hurts!)
4. Es führen viele *Wege* nach *Rom.*
5. Es gibt keine Würde *(dignity)* ohne [eine] Bürde.
6. Es sind zu viele *Köche* in der *Küche.*
7. Es *findet* auch ein *Blinder* ein Hufeisen *(horseshoe).* (Even a blind man sometimes has good luck.)
8. Es *fallen* keine *Äpfel weit* vom Baum.
9. Es *hofft* der Mensch, solang *(as long as)* er lebt.
10. Es gibt keine häßlichen Liebchen und keine schönen Gefängnisse.
11. Die Herrscher *(rulers)* wechseln nie; es wechseln nur die *Namen.*
12. Niemand stirbt jetzt an tödlichen Wahrheiten: *es gibt* zu viele Gegengifte. (Nietzsche)
13. Selbst (even) unter *Dieben* gibt es Ehre (*honor*).
14. Es *fällt* kein Gelehrter vom Himmel. (In other words, no one is born well-educated.)

Vocabulary

**ander—other
**auch—also, even
die **Ausnahme** (-n)—exception
der **Baum** (-es, ⁻e)—tree
beißen—to bite
das **Dieb** (-es, -e)—thief
die **Ehre**—honor
* **fallen** (fällt) (i)—to fall
das **Gefängnis** (-ses, -se)—prison
* **gehen** (i)—to go
gelehrt—learned, scholarly
* **es gibt**—there is, there are
das **Gegengift** (-es. -e)—antidote
häßlich—ugly
der **Herrscher** (-s, -)—ruler
* der **Himmel** (-s, -)—heaven, sky
das **Hufeisen** (-s, -)—horseshoe
der **Koch** (-es, ⁻e)—cook
das **Kopfweh** (-s)—headache
die **Krone** (-n)—crown
die **Küche** (-n)—kitchen
das **Liebchen** (-s, -)—little loved one
* **nur**—only
* die **Regel** (-n)—rule
* **solang**—as long as
* **sterben** (i)—to die
tödlich—deathly
* **unter**—among
* **viel**—much, many
wechseln—to change
* **weit**—far
die **Würde**—dignity
* **zu**—too

Reading Selection: *Das Sprichwort*

(Vocabulary for this section can be found in the back of the book, in Appendix K. Or you may wish to use a dictionary in order to increase your speed in looking up words. Note: underlined words indicate that the translation is provided for all of them.)

In jedem Land hört man Sprichwörter. Die folgenden Sprichwörter sind Ihnen wahrscheinlich schon bekannt *(familiar):* "Blut ist dicker als Wasser"; "Ein Vogel auf der Hand ist besser als zwei im Busch", und so weiter.

Die meisten Sprichwörter sind sehr alt—viele erscheinen sogar in der Bibel. Die typischen Gestalten der Sprichwörter sind der Bauer, der König, der Fürst *(prince),* die gehorsame *(obedient)* Frau, der Arzt, der Dieb, der Heilige *(saint),* Gott und der Teufel. Die Sprichwörter beschreiben oft das wünschenswerte Benehmen *(behaviour)* eines anständigen *(decent, respectable)* Menschen. Solch ein Mensch arbeitet viel, er hilft seinen Nachbarn, er fürchtet (und liebt) Gott, und er ist vorsichtig. Er ist auch der Meinung, sein Glück möge *(may)* nicht lange dauern *(last).*

In den Sprichwörtern begegnet man auch vielen Tieren. Typische Tiere sind das Huhn, die Kuh (und ihr Kalb), das Pferd, der Esel, der Hund, die Katze, die Maus,

der Wolf und der Fuchs. Manche Sprichwörter beschreiben das Verhältnis *(relationship)* zwischen dem Menschen und dem Tier. Beispiele sind: "Wenn der Reiter nichts taugt *(amount to)*, gibt er dem Pferd die Schuld"; "Wer zwei Hasen *(rabbits)* auf einmal jagt *(hunts)*, fängt keinen"; "Alte Hühner machen gute Suppen"; "Bellende *(barking)* Hunde beißen nicht".

Man findet oft in den Tiersprichwörtern eine Personifizierung des Tieres. Hier sind einige wiederkehrende *(recurring)* Themen solcher Sprichwörter. (1) Man ist immer, was man ist: "Wenn der Esel eine Löwenhaut *(lionskin)* trägt, ***gucken*** die Ohren ***hervor*** *(peek out from under it)"*, "Ein Pudel, dem man eine Mähne geschoren hat *(that one has sheared so that it has a mane)*, ist noch kein Löwe *(lion)"* *(2)* Ein behindertes *(handicapped)* Geschöpf *(creature)* hat manchmal Glück: "Auch *(even)* eine blinde Sau findet eine Eichel *(acorn)"* (3) Irren ist "menschlich": "Auch der beste Gaul *(nag, horse)* stolpert *(stumbles)* einmal"; "Auch kluge Hühner legen *(Eier)* einmal in Nesseln". (4) Das Prahlen *(bragging)* taugt nichts: "Hühner, die *(who)* viel gackern *(cackle)*, legen keine Eier".

Die kleinen Tiere (zum Beispiel das Schäflein und das Kalb) symbolisieren meistens menschliche Kinder: "Ein vorwitziges *(impertinent)* Schäflein frißt der Wolf; "Eine gute Kuh hat manchmal ein übles Kalb"; "Wer als *(as a)* Kalb in die Fremde *(abroad)* geht, kommt als Kuh heim *(home)"*.

Natürlich findet man noch weitere wiederkehrende Themen in den Sprichwörtern. Die Beobachtungen über Hoffnung, Glück, Armut und Alter sind besonders interessant. Wenn Sie die Sprichwörter jetzt lesen, beachten Sie, wie *(how)* verschiedene Themen behandelt werden *(are treated)*!

10

The Future Tense

10.1. There is less use of the future tense in German than in English. For example, whenever a sentence contains a future adverb in German, the present tense will be used, even though the sentence will be translated into English as a future tense. Examples are:

Morgen kommt der Briefträger— *Tomorrow* the mailman *will come.*
Übermorgen kommt der Bibelverkäufer— *The day after tomorrow* the Bible salesman *will come.*
Fräulein Meier *fliegt nächstes Jahr* nach Berlin—Fräulein Meier *will fly* to Berlin *next year.*
Eines Tages schwimmt sie im kalten See—One day she will swim in the cold lake.

10.2. However, when the time sequence is unclear, the verb *werden* will be used in conjunction with another verb in order to form the future tense. Note that *werden* is conjugated and appears in "second" place in the sentence while the other verb appears in its infinitival form at the end of the clause:

Vielleicht *wird* Fräulein Meier nach Berlin *fliegen*—Perhaps Fräulein Meier *will fly* to Berlin.
Die Studenten *werden* bestimmt viel *lernen*—The students *will* certainly *learn* a lot.

Here is a chart:

ich *werde* hier *sein*	ich *werde* das *singen*
(I will be here)	*(I will sing that)*
du *wirst* hier *sein*	du *wirst* das *singen*
(you will be here)	*(you will sing that)*
er *wird* hier *sein*	sie *wird* das *singen*
(he will be here)	*(she will sing that)*
wir *werden* hier *sein*	wir *werden* das *singen*
(we will be here)	*(we will sing that)*
ihr *werdet* hier *sein*	ihr *werdet* das *singen*
(you will be here)	*(you will sing that)*
sie *werden* hier *sein*	sie *werden* das *singen*
(they will be here)	*(they will sing that)*
Sie *werden* hier *sein*	Sie *werden* das *singen*
(you will be here)	*(you will sing that)*

In dependent clauses, the word order will be as follows:

Sie weiß nicht, wann der Briefträger *kommen wird*—She does not know when the mailman *will come.*
Es ist nicht klar, ob Fräulein Meier viele Zeitungsartikel *schreiben wird*—It is not clear if Fräulein Meier *will write* many newspaper articles.

10.3. From now on be careful when you see the verb *werden!* When it is the **only** verb in the sentence, it will **only** mean *to become, to grow.* When werden is used with any infinitive (which will appear at the end of the clause), it will **always** mean *will.* Compare the following:

Der Mann wird alt—The man *grows* old. **(present)**
Moreover, whenever ***wird*** is followed by ***zu,*** *werden* will often mean *become,* and the *zu* will not be translated:
Es ***wird zu*** Staub—It becomes dust.

Der Mann ***wird*** den Film ***sehen***—The man *will see* the film. **(future)**

Now, whenever you see ***werden,*** be on the lookout for verb infinitives lurking at the end of the clause; if there are any, the sentence will have to be translated in the future tense *(will).*

10.4. Translate these sentences. Be particularly aware of verb tenses!

1. Ein dreitägiger *Gast* wird zu einer Last.
2. Der Briefträger wird mit Fräulein Meier in den Zoo gehen.
3. Morgen früh *(tomorrow morning)* besucht ein Bibelverkäufer *(Bible salesman)* Fräulein Meier.
4. Irgendwann *(at some point)* wird der Student eine Fremdsprache *(foreign language) lernen.*
5. Die *Ersten* werden die *Letzten* und die Letzten werden die Ersten sein. (Note: *sein* is the infinitive for both *werden* auxiliaries)
6. Der *Irrtum* eines Augenblicks wird zur Sorge eines Lebens. (Proverbs)
7. Wird Fräulein Meier die Weltanschauung des Briefträgers je verstehen?
8. Es wird dem Gerechten kein Leid *(sorrow)* geschehen; aber die *Gottlosen* werden voll *(filled with)* Unglücks sein. (Proverbs)
9. Wer wird der Spatzen (sparrows) wegen das Säen (sowing) unterlassen (neglect)?
10. Wenn der Berg nicht zum *Propheten kommt,* so kommt er zu ihm.
11. *Wanderers Nachtlied* (This is a famous and beloved poem; note that the sounds become softer and softer.)

Über allen Gipfeln *(mountain peaks)*
Ist Ruh,
In allen Wipfeln *(tree tops)*
Spürest du
Kaum *(barely)* einen Hauch *(breath):*
Die Vögelein schweigen im *Walde.*
Warte nur, balde
Ruhest du auch.
(Goethe)

Vocabulary

* der **Augenblick** (-es, -e)—moment
* **bald**—soon
der **Berg** (-es, -e)—mountain
besuchen—to visit
dreitägig—three day
* **endlich**—finally
* **erst**—first
fliegen (i)—to fly
die **Fremdsprache** (-n)—foreign language
der **Gast** (-es, ¨e)—guest
gerecht—righteous
* **geschehen** (geschieht) (i)—happen, to occur
der **Hauch** (-es, -e)—breath
irgendwann—at some point
* **je**—ever
kaum—hardly, barely
die **Last** (-en)—burden
das **Leid**—sorrow

**letzt—last
morgen früh—tomorrow morning
das **Nachtlied** (-es, -er)—night song
**nur—only, just
die **Ruhe**—peace
ruhen (i)—to rest, sleep
ruhig—quiet
* **über**—over
schweigen (i)—to be silent
die **Sorge** (-n)—worry
spüren—to feel
das **Unglück** (-s, -e)—misfortune
* **unter**—among
* **verstehen**—to understand
der **Vogel** (-s, ¨)—bird
der **Wald** (-es, ¨er)—woods, forest
* **warten** (i)—to wait
**wegen—because of
die **Weltanschauung (-en)—world-view
* **werden** (wird)—to become; will
* **wissen** (weiß)—to know

10.5. Vocabulary aid: continue to be aware of verb tenses!

1. Ich werde die Dramen Georg Kaisers nie verstehen.
2. Ein Gast wie ein Fisch bleibt nicht lange frisch.
3. Eines Tages wird sie den Armen helfen.
4. Vielleicht werden die Studenten die Philosophie Schopenhauers studieren.
5. Niemand von diesen Studenten wird das ganze Buch lesen.
6. Morgen fliegen sie nach Europa.
7. Wer weiß, was der Abend bringt?
8. Sage mir, mit wem du umgehst *(go around)*, und ich sage dir, wer du bist.

11

Comparison (and Superlative) of Adjectives and Adverbs

Note: this chapter is trickier than it looks. The recognition of comparatives requires a careful observation of adjectival and adverbial endings.

11.1. Comparison of adjectives

There are three basic forms of the adjective, both in German and in English: **regular** (happy), **comparative** (happier), and **superlative** (happiest). Here are examples:

regular	**comparative**	**superlative**
nett *(nice)*	netter *(nicer)*	nettest-* *(nicest)*
warm *(warm)*	wärmer *(warmer)*	wärmst-* *(warmest)*
lang *(long)*	länger *(longer)*	längst-* *(longest)*

*The dash at the end of the superlative adjectives indicates that these adjectives must have adjective endings following the superlative (-st) ending. An example is: "der wärmste Tag"—The warmest day.

Monosyllabic adjectives with stem vowels *a, o,* or *u* generally will take an umlaut.

Here are examples:

alt *(old)*	älter *(older)*	ältest- *(oldest)*
kalt *(cold)*	kälter *(colder)*	kältest- *(coldest)*
dumm *(dumb)*	dümmer *(dumber)*	dümmst- *(dumbest)*

11.2. Like regular adjectives, adjectives with comparative and superlative endings will also take the traditional adjective endings (see 4.1–4.4 for review). The comparative or superlative ending is added to the adjective before the usual ending that indicates the declension. Because adjectives following *der* and most *ein* words will have *-e* or *-en* endings, sometimes the comparative or superlative ending will seem hidden. Here are examples:

der nett**ere** Mann—the nicer man *(masculine nominative comparative)*
der nett**este** Mann—the nicest man *(masculine nominative superlative)*
die nett**eren** Frauen—the nicer women *(plural nominative or accusative comparative)*
die nett**esten** Frauen—the nicest women *(plural nominative or accusative superlative)*
den nett**eren** Mann—the nicer man *(masculine accusative comparative)*
den nett**esten** Mann—the nicest man *(masculine accusative superlative)*

Do not mistake the strong masculine adjective ending for the comparative! "**Ein** netter Mann" is **only** "a *nice* man." The correct form for "a *nicer* man" would be "ein netterer Mann."

Here are other instances in which *-er* endings are not comparative:

Alter Wein ist guter Wein—Old wine is good wine.
Die Suppen armer Leute sind dünn—The soups of poor people are thin.
Die Frau ist bei schlechter Laune—The woman is in a bad mood.

11.3. Note the following regular and comparative adjective endings:

Regular:	der alte Freund—the old friend
	ein alter Freund—an old friend
Regular Predicate Adjective:	der Freund ist alt—the friend is old
Comparative:	der ältere Freund—the older friend
	ein älterer Freund—an older friend
Comparative Predicate Adjective:	der Freund ist älter—the friend is older

When the superlative form of the adjective is a predicate adjective, it will appear in the following way:

Das kleine Kind ist ***am nettesten***—The small child is *the nicest.*
Or: Das kleine Kind ist ***das netteste***—The small child is *the nicest.*
Die ältesten Lieder sind ***am schönsten* (or *die schönsten*)**—The oldest songs are *the most beautiful.*

11.4. Common adjective combinations

The most common adjective combination is *als (than)*

Geben ist *seliger als* Nehmen—Giving is *more blessed than* receiving.

When this construction is used, the comparative adjective is always a predicate adjective and therefore always ends in *-er.*

Here are more examples:

Eine Biene ist *besser als* tausend Fliegen—One bee is *better than* a thousand flies.
Der Arzt ist oft *gefährlicher als* die Krankheit—The doctor is often *more dangerous than* the disease.

Other comparative adjective combinations are: *so . . . wie (as . . . as), je . . . desto (the . . . the),* and *immer* with a comparative adjective.

Here are examples:

Das kaiserliche Wort ist *so* kräftig *wie* ein Eid—The imperial word is *as* strong *as* an oath.
Das Huhn ist nicht *so* klug *wie* der Fuchs—The hen is not *as* clever *as* the fox.
Je höher der Kirchturm, *desto schöner* das Geläute—*The higher* the church tower, *the more beautiful* the chimes.
Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger werden *immer freundlicher*—Fräulein Meier and the mailman are becoming *friendlier and friendlier.*
Wenn die Katze aus dem Haus ist, werden die Mäuse *immer frecher*—When the cat is out of the house, the mice become *bolder and bolder.*

11.5. The following adjectives will have irregular forms:

regular	**comparative**	**superlative**
groß *(large, tall)*	größer *(taller)*	größt- *(tallest)*
gut *(good)*	besser *(better)*	best- *(best)*
hoch *(high)*	höher *(higher)*	höchst- *(highest)*

nah(e) *(near)*	näher *(nearer)*	nächst- *(nearest)*
viel *(many)*	mehr *(more)*	meist- *(most)*

11.6. Comparison of adverbs

The forms of the adverb in the comparative and superlative are the same as the forms of the predicate adjective:

Das Kind läuft *schnell*—The child runs fast. (Regular)
Der Student läuft *schneller*—The student *runs faster.* (Comparative)
Der Wanderer läuft *am schnellsten*—The hiker runs *the fastest.* (Superlative)

The superlative adverb will always have the *am . . . -en* form, regardless of where it appears in the sentence.
Here is an example of a superlative adverb modifying an adjective:

Die *am frühesten* erscheinenden Erdbeeren schmecken am besten—The *earliest* appearing strawberries taste the best.

Note that the *am* has nothing to do with *an + dem*. Because superlative is the best, by definition, regard the *am* as a kind of pedestal to prop up the adverb or predicate adjective to indicate its splendor!

11.7. The adjective formulas also apply to adverbs:
Ein Doktor und ein Bauer wissen *mehr als* ein Doktor allein—A doctor and a farmer know *more than* a doctor alone.
Sie lieben einander *so* zärtlich *wie* Tristan und Isolde—They love one another *as* tenderly *as* Tristan and Isolde.
Je tiefer ich grabe, *desto* mehr Wasser finde ich—*The* deeper I dig, *the* more water I find.
Ich grabe *immer tiefer*—I dig *more and more deeply.*

11.8. The adverbs *bald* (soon) and *gern* (gladly) have irregular forms:

bald *(soon)*	eher *(sooner)*	am ehesten *(soonest)*
gern *(likes to, gladly)*	lieber *(prefers to, preferably)*	am liebsten *(best of all, most preferably)*

Gern and its comparative forms are translated as follows:

Der Briefträger trinkt *gern* Wasser—The mailman *likes* to drink water, aber er trinkt Coca-Cola *lieber*—but he *prefers* to drink Coke, und er trinkt Wein *am*

liebsten—and he *likes* to drink wine *the best.*
Note that *lieber* means *preferably* rather than *lover.*

11.9. Realize, also that **whenever an adverb has an *-er* ending, it will nearly always be comparative!** This is still another reason for you to distinguish between adjectives and adverbs. Here are some more comparative adverbs:

Er läuft schnelle**r**, wenn es kalt ist—He walks **more quickly** when it is cold.
Ein freundlicher Mann hilft seiner Familie **öfter**—A friendly man helps his family more often.
Die Freunde alter Leute laufen langsame**r als** die Freunde junger Leute—The friends of old people walk **more slowly than** the friends of young people.

11.10. Note the important rule of thumb: Whenever an adjective with an *-er* ending is *before a noun*, it will rarely be comparative; if it has an *-er* ending and no noun is near it, it will most likely be comparative!

Heute ist ein lange**r** Tag—Today is a **long** day.
Heute scheint läng**er als** gestern—Today seems **longer** than yesterday.

Although it **is** possible for an adjective preceding a noun to be comparative, the adjective ending right before the noun will usually be *-e* or *-en: der ält**ere** Mann* (the older man); *der nett**eren** Frau* (to or for the nicer woman); *des freundlich**eren** Kindes* (of the friendlier child)

11.11. Translate these sentences:

1. Je magerer der *Hund,* desto fetter die *Flöhe.*
2. Die *süßesten* Trauben *(grapes)* hängen am höchsten.
3. Die Augen sind größer als der Magen *(stomach).*
4. Es ersaufen *(drown)* mehr Leute im Wein als im Rhein.
5. Ein *Dummer findet zehn* Dümmere.
6. Es gibt kein *süßeres* Leiden als *Hoffen.*
7. Die Liebe der Bürger ist des *Landes* stärkste Mauer *(wall).*
8. Die *Kühe* fremder Leute haben größere *Euter.*
9. Der faulsten *Sau* gehört immer der größte Dreck (mud).
10. Erfahrung *(experience)* ist ein *langer Weg.*
11. Schlaf nach dem Mittagstisch ist so gesund wie ein fauler *Fisch.*
12. Dem Schuster *(cobbler)* ist der *Schuh* wichtiger als der *Fuß.*
13. Es gibt mehr alte *Weintrinker* als alte Ärzte.

14. Überzeugungen *(convictions)* sind gefährlichere *Feinde* der Wahrheit als Lügen. (Nietzsche)
15. Die Lüge ist ein *Schneeball;* je *länger* man sie wälzt *(rolls),* desto größer wird sie. (Luther)
16. Wird Fräulein Meier immer schöner mit jedem *Tag*?
17. Liebe ist stärker als Tod. (Paul Tillich)
18. Ein guter Ruf *(reputation)* ist köstlicher als großer Reichtum, und anziehendes *(attractive)* Wesen *(character)* [ist] besser als *Silber* und *Gold.* (Proverbs)

Vocabulary

* **allein**—alone
* **als**—than
* **alt, älter, am ältesten**—old
* das **Beispiel** (-s, -e)—example
** **böse**—bad
der **Bürger** (-s, -)—citizen
dumm, dümmer, am dümmsten—dumb
* **dunkel**—dark
die **Erfahrung** (-en)—experience
ersaufen (ersäuft)—to drown
das **Euter** (-s, -)—udder
der **Floh** (-es, ¨-e)—flea
fremd—strange, other
gefährlich—dangerous
* **gefallen** (i)—to please
* **gehören** (i)—to belong to
* **gelten** (gilt)—to be valid, worth
* **gern, lieber, am liebsten**—likes to, preferably, best
* **gleich**—same, equal
** **groß, größer, am größten**—tall, large, great
hängen (i)—to hang
* **hoch, höher, am höchsten**—high
* **immer**—always
* **immer (& comparative)**—more and more
immer wieder—again and again
* **je . . . desto**—the . . . the
kosten—to cost
köstlich—costly
** die **Kuh** (¨-e)—cow
* das **Land** (-es, ¨-er)—country
das **Leiden** (-s, -)—sorrow
die **Lüge** (-n)—lie
der **Magen** (-s, -)—stomach
mager—thin
die **Mauer** (-n)—wall
der **Mittagstisch**—lunch
* der **Morgen** (-s, -)—morning
* **nach**—after
* das **Pfund** (-es, -e)—pound
* das **Recht** (-es, -e)—justice
der **Reichtum** (-s)—wealth
der **Rhein**—Rhine river
der **Ruf** (-es, -e)—reputation, calling
die **Sau** (¨-e)—sow
der **Schlaf** (-es)—sleep
der **Schuster** (-s, -)—cobbler
* **schwer**—heavy, hard
* **so . . . wie**—as . . . as
der **Spaß** (-es, -e)—fun
* **stark**—strong
die **Traube** (-n)—grape
die **Überzeugung** (-en)—conviction
die **Unze** (-n)—ounce
** **viel, mehr, am meisten**—much, more, most
wälzen (wälzt)—to roll

* der **Weg** (-es, -e)—way
* **wert**—worth
das **Wesen** (-s, -)—being, character
* **wichtig**—important
* **wiederholen**—to repeat

11.12. Vocabulary Aid

1. Alte Freunde und alter Wein sind am besten.
2. Eine Hand voll *(full of)* Gold ist schwerer als ein Sack voll Recht und Wahrheit.
3. Er ist so hungrig wie eine Kirchenmaus.
4. Der Spaß (fun) kostet mehr, als er wert ist.
5. Doktor Maß *(moderation),* Doktor Stille und Doktor Frohmann *(good cheer)* sind die größten Ärzte.
6. Eine Unze guten Beispiels gilt mehr als ein Pfund Worte.
7. Lieber allein als in böser Gemein *(company).*
8. Jedes Pferd (*horse*) findet seinen Packen (*pack*) am schwersten.
9. Die Kette (*chain*) ist nicht stärker als ihr schwächstes Glied (*link*).
10. Je dunkler die Nacht, desto schöner der Morgen.

11.13. Comparative (or superlative) or not exercise:

ein armer Mann, die freundlichere Frau, er ist glücklicher, die Freunde schöner Leute, ein freundlicher Briefträger, er schreibt schneller, die schönste Frau, Tom ist bei schlechter Laune, ein großer Hund, er ist dicker als sie, die schöner singende Frau, teurer Wein, die nettesten Hunde, größere Elefanten, am höchsten, die Eltern kleiner Kinder, die Eltern kleinerer Kinder

12

Da- and Wo-Compounds

Da- and *wo-* compounds are used as placeholders in place of pronouns when inanimate objects are dealt with as objects of prepositions. They are called compounds because they combine with the preposition to become one word.

12.1. *Da*-compounds

As a compound, *da-* generally means *it, this, that,* or *them.* Here are examples:

Er schreibt *mit* dem Bleistift—He writes *with* the pencil.
Er schreibt *damit*—He writes *with it.*
Fräulein Meier denkt manchmal *an ihre Arbeit*—Fräulein Meier sometimes thinks *about her work.*
Denkt sie *daran?*—Does she think *about it?*
Der kleine Hund hat Angst *vor dem Donner*—The small dog is afraid *of the thunder.*
Der kleine Hund hat Angst *davor*—The small dog is afraid *of it.*

However, while *da* will virtually always mean *it* (or sometimes *them),* the same *da-* compound can be translated differently depending on the *verb* in the clause. Here is an example:

Fräulein Meier wartet *auf den Bus*—Fräulein Meier is waiting *for the bus.*
Fräulein Meier wartet *darauf*—Fräulein Meier waits *for it.*

Fräulein Meier sitzt *auf dem Sofa*—Fräulein Meier sits *on the sofa.*
Fräulein Meier sitzt *darauf*—Fräulein Meier sits *on it.*
Fräulein Meier hört nicht *auf die Warnungen*—Fräulein Meier does not listen *to the warnings.*
Fräulein Meier hört nicht *darauf*—Fräulein Meier does not listen *to them.*

Therefore, be careful to understand the entire context of the sentence before you translate the *da*-compound.
In the previous sentences, *darauf* meant *for it, on it,* and *to them.*

If a preposition begins with a vowel, an "r" is added for purposes of pronunciation. Here are examples:
Er denkt an das Buch—He thinks of the book.
Er denkt *daran*—He thinks *of it.*
Sie lacht über ihren Lieblingswitz—She laughs at her favorite joke.
Sie lacht *darüber*—She laughs *at it.*

12.2. Translate the following (memorize the verbs and prepositions if you aren't already familiar with them):

1. Sie fragt danach.
2. Glauben Sie daran?
3. Er *spricht* davon.
4. *Schreiben* sie darüber?
5. Wir *helfen* ihr damit.
6. Haben sie keine *Zeit* dafür?
7. Er *spricht* dagegen.
8. Sie *hofft* darauf.
9. Es gibt kein *Wasser* darin.
10. Sie hat *Angst* davor.

12.3. When prepositions normally follow verbs in German (in set phrases such as *denken an, warten auf,* etc.), **a *da*-compound will be used as a place-holder in an independent clause which will indicate the arrival of a dependent clause:**

Fräulein Meier denkt oft *daran,* daß der Briefträger ihr schöne Gedichte schreibt—Fräulein Meier often thinks *about the fact* that the mailman writes beautiful poems to her.
Der Briefträger wartet *darauf,* daß er eine Antwort bekommt—The mailman waits *so* that he will get an answer.

In these cases, the *da*-compound may be translated, or it may be left out, whichever sounds smoother.

12.4. *Wo* is used as an interrogative, generally meaning "which" or "what":

Worauf wartet er?—*For what* is he waiting?
Worüber lacht sie?—*At what* is she laughing?
Womit schreiben Sie?—*With what* are you writing?

A *wo*-compound can also be used in the middle of a sentence:
Hier ist der Bleistift, *womit* er schreibt—Here is the pencil *with which* he is writing.
Das ist die Antwort, *worauf* sie wartet—That is the answer *for which* she is waiting.

12.6. Translate these sentences:

1. Der Reichtum *(wealth)* gleicht dem *Seewasser;* je mehr man davon trinkt, desto *durstiger* wird man. (Schopenhauer)
2. Die Heirat *(marriage)* gleicht einem *Vogelhaus;* wer darin ist, will *(wants)* hinaus.
3. Die *Henne* legt *(lays)* gern ins Nest, worin Eier *(eggs)* schon sind.
4. Wo Gott eine *Kirche* baut, stellt der Teufel eine *Kapelle* daneben (*nämlich* ein Wirtshaus *[tavern]).*
5. Der Mund sagt es, aber das Herz weiß nichts davon.
6. Wer *(whoever)* nach dem Kranze *(wreath)* strebt, bekommt eine *Blume* daraus (as a consolation prize!).
7. Höre darauf, was andere sagen, und sei vorsichtig, ehe *(before)* du sprichst.
8. Die Furcht des Herrn [Gott] ist ein gesegneter *(blessed)* Garten; die schönsten Blumen wachsen darin.
9. Der junge Arzt weiß nicht immer, wovon er spricht.
10. Worauf wartet Fräulein Meier? Auf wen wartet der Briefträger?

Vocabulary

* **bauen**—to build
die **Blume** (-n)—flower
* **da**—it
durstig—thirsty
* **ehe**—before
das **Ei** (-s, -er)—egg
* die **Furcht**—fear
* **gegen**—against
gesegnet—blessed
* **gleichen** (i)—to resemble
die **Heirat** (-en)—marriage
* **hinaus**—out
* **hoffen auf**—to hope for
* **je . . . desto**—the . . . the
die **Kapelle** (-n)—chapel
die **Kirche** (-n)—church
der **Kranz** (-es, ¨e)—wreath
der **Mund** (-es,-er)—mouth

* **nämlich**—namely
* **schon**—already
* **schreiben** (über)—to write about
das **Seewasser** (-s, -)—sea water
* **stellen**—to place
streben nach—to strive for
das **Vogelhaus** (-es, ¨er)—birdhouse
vorsichtig—careful
****warten auf**—to wait for
* **was**—what
* **wer**—who, whoever
****wissen** (weiß)—to know
* **wo**—which, what, where

Reading Selection: *Der Elefant*
(Eine Umarbeitung einer Kurzgeschichte von Slawomir Mrozek)

Der *Direktor* des Zoos ist kein redlicher Mann. Die Tiere benutzt er lediglich *(merely)* als [die] Mittel *(means)* seiner eigenen *Karriere*. In seinem Zoo hat die *Giraffe* einen kurzen Hals *(neck)*; das Stachelschwein hat keine Stacheln; und der Waschbär *(raccoon)* wäscht sich nicht. Dieser Zustand ist um so bedauerlicher, weil *(because)* oftmals viele *Schulkinder* in diesen Zoo gehen.

Der Zoo liegt in einem kleinen Dorf, und es fehlt ihm an manchen *(some)* der wichtigsten Tiere. Zum Beispiel fehlt es ihm an einem *Elefanten*. (Dreitausend Kaninchen *[rabbits]* sind kein guter Ersatz dafür!) Aber *endlich* bekommt der Zoo das Geld für den Kauf *(purchase)* eines Elefanten. Alle Bewohner *(inhabitants)* des Dorfs erwarten die Ankunft *(arrival)* des Elefanten mit Freude.

Aber der Direktor des Zoos hat einen heimlichen *(secret) Plan*. Elefanten sind allerdings *(to be sure)* sehr teuer. Statt eines lebendigen Tiers wird der Zoo also einen Elefanten aus Gummi *(rubber)* bekommen. Denn jeder weiß, Elefanten sind sehr träge *(sluggish)*; so wird man ein Plakat *(sign)* vor den Gummielefanten stellen, worauf man *schreibt*: "Besonders träge."

So kauft der Direktor des Zoos einen Elefanten aus Gummi. Dann haben zwei Angestellte *(employees)* die Aufgabe *(task)*, <u>ihn aufzublasen</u> *(of inflating it)*. Aber diese Aufgabe ist ihnen unmöglich *(impossible)*, weil das Gummitier einfach zu groß ist. Als die zwei Männer ruhen *(rest)*, bemerken sie ein Gasrohr *(gas pipe)*, und sie kommen auf eine *wunderbare Idee*. Sie werden den Gummielefanten mit dem *Gas* von dem Gasrohr aufblasen. Sie tun das, und der Elefant wird sofort sehr groß. Die Angestellten betrachten *(observe)* das Tier mit Freude. Weil es jetzt sehr spät ist, kehren *(return)* die Angestellten zufrieden *(satisfied)* nach *Hause*.

Am anderen *(next)* Morgen stellt der Direktor des Zoos den Elefanten neben den Affenkäfig *(monkey cage)*. Das Plakat "Besonders träge—läuft überhaupt nicht" steht vor ihm. Nach der Meinung des Direktors ist der Elefant großartig *(splendid)*.

Unter den ersten Besuchern *(visitors)* des Zoos sind viele Schulkinder und ihr Lehrer. Der Lehrer hat eine gute Kenntnis der Tierkunde *(zoology).* Er erzählt viel über die Größe und die Macht des Elefanten.

Aber während der Rede *(lecture)* des Lehrers geschieht etwas. Der *Wind* setzt den Elefanten in Bewegung *(motion),* und so *springt* er immer höher in die Luft *(air).* Eine Weile lang betrachten die Schulkinder die *vier* Kreise *(circles)* der Füße, den herausragenden *(bulging)* Bauch und den Rüssel *(trunk).* Aber dann verschwindet *(vanishes)* das Tier über die Baumkronen. Sogar die *Affen* sind erstaunt *(astonished)* darüber. *Endlich* findet man das Gummitier in dem *benachbarten botanischen Garten.* Es liegt zerschmettert *(smashed to pieces)* auf der *Erde* in der *Nähe* einer *Kaktuspflanze.*

Die Schulkinder des Dorfes machen jetzt keine Schularbeiten mehr. Und sie werden *Rowdys.* Wahrscheinlich *trinken* sie jetzt *Wodka,* und sie zerschmettern Fenster. Und jetzt glauben sie nicht mehr an Elefanten.

Vocabulary

* **als**—when, as
* **also**—thus, so
der **Angestellte** (-n, -n)—employee
aufblasen—to inflate
die **Aufgabe** (-n)—task
der **Bauch** (-es, -e)—belly
die **Baumkrone** (-n)—treetop
bedauerlich—deplorable, regrettable
* zum **Beispiel**—for example
bemerken—to notice
benachbart—neighboring
benutzen—to use
* **besonders**—especially
betrachten—to observe
botanisch—botanical
** **dann**—then
* **denn**—because, for
das **Dorf** (-es, ¨-er)—village
* **eigen**—own
* **einfach**—simple
* **endlich**—finally
** die **Erde** (-n)—earth, ground
der **Ersatz** (-es)—substitute
* **erwarten**—to await, expect
* **erzählen**—to explain, tell
* **etwas**—something
* **fehlen**— to lack;
es fehlt ihm an etwas—he is lacking something
* die **Freude** (-n)—joy
das **Gasrohr** (-s, -e)—gas pipe
* das **Geld** (-es, -er)—money
* **geschehen** (i)—to happen
die **Größe** (-n)—size, magnitude, greatness
** **jeder**—each, every, everyone
* **jetzt**—now
die **Karriere** (-n)—career
der **Kauf** (-es, -e)—purchase
die **Kenntnis** (-sse)—knowledge
* **kurz**—short
die **Kurzgeschichte** (-n)—short story

* **lang** (adv.)—for
laufen (i)—to run; to move
* **liegen** (i) —to lie, be situated
* die **Luft**—air
* die **Macht** (-e)—strength, power
* die **Meinung** (-en)—opinion
das **Mittel** (-s, -)—means
nach **Hause**—home
* die **Nähe**—vicinity
* **nicht mehr**—no longer
oftmals—often
das **Plakat** (-es, -e)—sign, placard
redlich—honest
der **Rowdy** (-s, -s)—scoundrel
die **Schularbeit** (-en)—schoolwork
* **sofort**—immediately
* **sogar**—even
* **spät**—late
der **Stachel** (-s, -n)—quill
das **Stachelschwein** (-s, -e)—porcupine
* **statt**—instead of
* **stellen**—to place
* **teuer**—expensive
das **Tier** (-s, -e)—animal
* **tun**—to do
überhaupt nicht—not at all
* **um so (& comp.)**—all the more
die **Umarbeitung** (-en)—adaptation
* **vier**—four
* **während**—during
* **wahrscheinlich**—probably
waschen (r)—to wash
* **weil**—because
die **Weile**—while
* **wichtig** —important
der **Wodka**—vodka
zerschmettern—to smash
der **Zustand** (-es, ¨-e)—condition, situation

13

Verb Prefixes

In German, it is possible to form new meanings to a verb by adding a prefix to the root. While *steigen* means *to climb, einsteigen* means *to board* (a train or plane), and *umsteigen* means *to change* (trains, etc.); and while *lernen* means *to learn, verlernen* means *to forget what one has learned.* There are both separable and inseparable verb prefixes.

13.1. Separable verb prefixes

The separable verb prefixes are more numerous and more complicated than the inseparable. For, in independent clauses, and in sentences beginning with a verb, the verb root appears in its usual place, while the prefix appears at the end of the clause. Here are examples:

Der Letzte *macht* die Türe *zu*—The last one closes the door.
Heute *sieht* der Briefträger gut *aus*—Today the mailman looks good.
Steht Fräulein Meier früh *auf?*—Does Fräulein Meier get up early?
Hören die Kinder ihrer Mutter *zu?*—Do the children listen to their mother?

In order to find the infinitive in such sentences, you must attach the prefix at the end of the sentence to the conjugated verb, and then look up the prefixed verb. In the sentences used as examples, the infinitives are: *zumachen, aussehen, aufstehen,* and *zuhören.*

13.2. Here is a list of the most common verb prefixes and their most common meanings (the ones with an * often can be translated consistently, while the others can have a variety of meanings):

ab	away, downwards: *abgehen*—to leave; to pass out; to be sent; to be taken off; to branch off; to walk
an	at, on, to: *angehen*—to begin; to tackle; to concern
auf	up, open: *aufgehen*—to rise; break up; open
aus	out, out of, with: *ausgehen*—to go out, to fall out; to start; to end
durch	through: *durchgehen*—to walk, go, pass through, to be tolerated; to pass
ein	into: *eingehen*—to go in; enter; to grasp; to have some influence; to die; to agree
fort	away, continuing: *fortgehen*—to go away, to continue
her *	motion towards a speaker: *hergehen*—to go here, proceed
hin *	motion away from a speaker: *hingehen*—to go there, pass away
mit *	with: *mitgehen*—accompany, go along
nach	away from, imitating, toward: *nachgehen*—follow; investigate; to practice
nieder *	down, low: *niedergehen*—go down; fall
über	over, more: *übergehen*—to turn into; to pass to someone; (inseparable)—to pass over; to ignore
um	around, embracing: *umgehen*—to go around; to circulate; to avoid
unter	under: *untergehen*—to perish; to set
vor	before, forward: *vorgehen*—to act; to proceed; to happen; to advance
weg *	away, gone: *(hin) weggehen*—to go away
weiter *	to continue: *weitergehen*—to continue
zu	to, towards, closed: *zugehen*—go on; shut; happen; to approach
zurück *	back: *zurückgehen*—to go back, fall back
zusammen *	together: *zusammengehen*—to go together, close; diminish

13.3. Whenever you find any of these prefixes isolated at the end of a clause, you should identify them as separable prefixes. Then you ***must*** attach the prefix to the verb root in order to translate the infinitive correctly. Because most of these prefixes are short, they are sometimes easy to overlook; therefore, watch out for them! They will *always* be found with their prefix attached: *darstellen (to portray), zumachen (to close), ausflippen (to freak out).*

Sometimes a verb prefix can change the meaning of a verb radically. For example, while ***bringen*** means *to bring,* ***umbringen*** means *to kill,* while ***hören*** means *to hear,* ***aufhören*** means *to stop;* while ***fangen*** means *to capture,* ***anfangen*** means *to*

begin. Consequently it is crucial to look up a verb with its prefix in order to discover its correct meaning in the sentence you are translating. You will nearly always find the prefixed verb in your dictionaries in alphabetical order according to the prefix: *abnehmen, zustimmen, ausfallen, durchbringen,* etc.

Moreover, sometimes, the same prefixed verb can have radically different meanings. The verb *aufnehmen* can mean *to take; to record; to photograph* and *to admit.* The verb *aufheben* (often used by Hegel) means both *to raise up* and *to abolish. Eingehen* means both *to start* and *to stop.*

13.4. However, at other times, the prefixed verb may not appear in your dictionary. In this case, you should look up both the verb and its prefix and combine them in a logical manner. For example, if you had to translate the sentence, "Die zwei Menschen ***gehören*** nicht ***zusammen,***" and you could not find the verb ***zusammengehören,*** you could still translate the sentence accurately if you realized that ***zusammen*** meant *together* and ***gehören*** meant *to belong to* and if you then translated the verb as *to belong together.* But before you resort to this method, first look in your dictionary for the verb with its prefix. Moreover, this will happen mainly with prefixes that have only one meaning, such as *zusammen,* which always means *together.*

13.5. In clauses when the verb appears at the end, the prefix will no longer be separated from the verb. Here are examples:

Wann wird der langweilige Mann mit seiner langen Rede ***aufhören***—When will the boring man end his long tirade?
Wo Verdacht ***einkehrt,*** nimmt die Ruhe Abschied—When suspicion enters, peace leaves.

13.6. Do not confuse verb and preposition combinations with verb prefixes. Compare "Er *hört auf* diese Frage"—He *listens to* this question (a verb and preposition combination) with "Er *hört* mit dieser Frage *auf*—He *ends* with this question (*auf* is now a verb prefix). A separable verb prefix will nearly always be at the end of the clause, and it will **never** be immediately followed by a noun without at least some intervening punctuation, such as a comma.

13.7. Hin and her are two common directional prefixes. Wo geht er ***hin***? means "Where is he going *to*? and Wo kommt er *her*? means "Where is he coming *from*?" Often they do not need to be translated into English. Hin geht die Zeit, her kommt der Tod.—*There* goes time, *here* comes death (Or: Time goes, death comes.)

Also, they are often used in conjunction with another prefix for emphasis. Examples are: ***hinein*** *(into),* ***heraus*** *(out of),* and ***hindurch*** *(through).*

13.8. Translate these sentences. Underline the whole verb in each sentence (vocabulary is on p. 104–5):

1. Die *Dummen* sterben nie aus.
2. Wer *(he who)* mit *Hunden* zu Bett geht, steht mit Flöhen auf.
3. Ein kleiner Topf *(pot)* kocht bald über.
4. Wo man Liebe aussät *(sows),* dort wächst Freude hervor.
5. Dieses Bild stellt eine Frau mit zwei *Katzen* dar.
6. Wo Elefanten tanzen, bleiben die Ameisen weg.
7. Mache den Mund zu und die *Augen* auf. (How do you want to translate *den Mund* and *die Augen*? Why?)
8. Furcht steckt oft an.
9. Liebe deine *Nachbarn,* aber lege den Zaun *(fence)* nicht nieder.
10. Schlächter *(butchers)* und *Schwein* stimmen nicht überein.
11. Das arme Kind bringt der böse Wolf um.
12. Ein Stein, der *(that)* rollt, setzt kein *Moos* an.
13. Üble Botschaft *kommt* immer *zu* früh.
14. Es *lernt* niemand aus, bis das *Grab* ist unser *Haus.* (Note that the second part of the proverb isn't strictly grammatical; however, it rhymes.)

13.9. Inseparable verb prefixes

There are seven common inseparable verb prefixes—***be-***, ***ent-*** (or ***emp-***), ***er-***, ***ge-***, ***miss*** (or: ***miß-***), ***ver-***, and ***zer-***. Unfortunately, the meanings of these prefixes are not always consistent. However, here are some of the more common meanings of some of them:

be- commonly changes an intransitive verb into a transitive. Examples are: *antworten,* ***beantworten*** (to answer); *achten,* ***beachten*** (to pay attention to); *dienen,* ***bedienen*** (to serve); *gehen,* ***begehen*** (to walk on, commit).

ent- can mean *away from:* ***entdecken*** (to uncover) vs. *decken* (to cover); ***entgehen*** (to go away from, escape) vs. *gehen* (to go); ***entfallen*** (to fall away from)

er- indicates the beginning of an action: ***erbleichen*** (to begin to turn pale) or an achievement of the aim set by the action: ***erkennen*** (to recognize); ***erreichen*** (to reach). And the prefix *er-* attached to the verbs of violence means that the action is fatal: ***erschießen*** (to shoot to death); ***erstechen*** (to stab fatally).

miss or ***miß-*** corresponds to the English *mis-* or *dis-*. Examples are: ***mißbrauchen*** (to misuse) ***mißdeuten*** (to misinterpret); ***mißtrauen*** (to distrust); ***mißfallen*** (to displease).

ver- has a wide range of meanings. It can mean a variety of "negative" things such as waste, or disappearance, or errors in action. Examples are: ***versprechen*** (to misspeak); ***vergehen*** (to disappear, pass, elapse); ***verschlafen*** (to oversleep). On the other hand, it can also mean ***to intensify*** or ***to come together*** when added to a verb. Examples are: ***versprechen*** (to promise); ***verbessern*** (to improve); ***vermischen*** (to mix together).

zer- denotes the destruction resulting from the root verb, and it means ***to pieces, in pieces.*** Examples are: ***zerbrechen*** (to break into pieces); ***zerreißen*** (to rip to shreds); ***zerstören*** (to destroy).

13.10. Translate these sentences:

1. Der Vater des Briefträgers beklagt das Benehmen *(behavior)* seines Sohnes.
2. Gute *Schwimmer* ersaufen zuerst. (Because they venture into the deepest water!)
3. Die *Rosen* verblühen, die *Dornen* bleiben.
4. Wenn die *Sonne* scheint, erbleicht der *Mond.*
5. Den Elefanten erschreckt die Maus.
6. Wann erwartet Fräulein Meier den Briefträger?
7. Die Furcht vergrößert die Gefahr.
8. Fräulein Meier mißtraut der Vater des Briefträgers.
9. Wer wird das häßliche Photo zerschneiden?
10. Der Student zertritt den Kakerlak *(cockroach).*

Vocabulary (In this section, verb prefixes are hyphenated.)

die **Ameise** (-n)—ant
an-setzen—to accumulate, to gather
an-stecken—to contaminate, to be catching
* **auf-machen**—to open
* **auf-stehen** (i)—to get up
aus-lernen—to finish learning
aus-säen—to sow
aus-sterben (i)—to die out
* **bald**—soon
be-klagen—to complain about
das **Benehmen** (-s)—behavior
* **bis**—until
die **Botschaft** (-en)—news
dar-stellen–to portray, depict
der **Dorn** (-es, -en)—thorn
er-bleichen (i)—to pale
er-saufen (i)—to drown
er-schrecken—to frighten

* **er-warten** — to expect
** der **Floh** (-s, ¨-e) — flea
** die **Freude** (-n) — joy
* **früh**—early, soon
die **Gefahr** (-en) — danger
häßlich—ugly
* **her** — whence (from)
hervor-wachsen (i) — to grow forth
* **hin** — whither (to)
* **klein**—small
klug—clever
miß-trauen (i) — to mistrust
der **Mond** (-es, -e) — moon
das **Moos** (-es, -e) — moss
der **Mund** (-es, -er) — mouth
der **Nachbar** (-s, -n)—neighbor
* **nie**— never
nieder-legen—to take down, to give up
* **scheinen** (i) — to shine; to seem
das **Schwein** (-s, -e) — swine
der **Schwimmer** (-s, -) — swimmer
der **Stein** (-es, ¨-e) — stone
* der **Tod** (-es, -e) — death
der **Topf** (-es, ¨-e) — pot
übel — bad, evil
überein-stimmen—to agree
über-kochen (i) — to boil over
um-bringen—to kill
ver-blühen (i) — to wither
ver-größern—to enlarge, increase, magnify
* **wann**—when
weg-bleiben (i) — to stay away
** **wo** — where, when
** die **Zeit** (-en) — time
zer-schneiden—to cut into pieces
zer-treten (zertritt)—to stomp on
zu-erst—first of all
* **zu-machen**—to close

14

Verb Tenses (Part I)

14.1. The four German verb forms

German has only four indicative verb forms—present, past, present perfect, and past perfect. They are:

present: Er ***hört*** den Lärm—He *hears* (or *is hearing)* the noise.
past: Er ***hörte*** den Lärm—He *heard* (or *was hearing)* the noise.
present perfect: Er ***hat*** den Lärm ***gehört***—He *has heard* (or *heard)* the noise.
past perfect: Er ***hatte*** den Lärm ***gehört***—He *had heard* the noise.

The present and past perfects are formed by using an auxiliary (helping verb) with a participle. ***English grammar review:*** **a participle** is a verb that requires a helping verb: has *seen:* have *made;* had *written;* are *rung;* was *done;* were *lost;* has *opened.*

14.2. "Easy" verbs (These are usually called either "weak" or "regular" verbs. I call them "easy" verbs because their infinitives are easy to find, but you should call them whatever makes them seem most familiar to you.)

Easy/weak/ regular verbs are verbs that require no vowel change for their past and perfect forms. Comparable English verbs are: look, looked, has looked; close, closed, has closed; enjoy, enjoyed, has enjoyed. In German, the first and third person past will end in *-te,* and the participle will usually begin with *ge-* and end with *-t.* Here are examples:

present infinitive	**past** (first and third person singular)	**present perfect** (third person singular)
hör**en** *(to hear)*	hör**te** *(heard)*	hat **gehört** *(has heard)*
lach**en** *(to laugh)*	lach**te** *(laughed)*	hat **gelacht** *(has laughed)*
sag**en** *(to say)*	sag**te** *(said)*	hat **gesagt** *(has said)*
leb**en** *(to live)*	leb**te** *(lived)*	hat **gelebt** *(has lived)*

Moreover, most verbs with umlauts in their roots are easy, even though their definitions seem as if they would be hard because they are rarely cognates with English: *ähneln, ähnelte, geähnelt* (to resemble); *lösen, löste, gelöst* (to solve); *üben, übte, geübt* (to exercise, practice); *gönnen, gönnte, gegönnt* (to grant).

14.3. Finding an infinitive of an easy verb

1. In order to find the infinitive when you encounter the past tense of an easy verb, simply eliminate the final *-te* and add *-en:*

past	hör*te*	lach*te*	wohn*te*	sag*te*	schau*te*
infinitive	hör*en*	lach*en*	wohn*en*	sag*en*	schau*en*

Find the infinitives of these easy verbs in past tense:

glaubte, bewegte, löste, lernte, gehörte, setzte, legte, lobte, machte, hütete

2. In order to find the infinitive when you encounter the participle of an easy verb, eliminate the initial *ge-* and the final *-t* and add *-en* to the ending:

participle	ge*lob*t	ge*lach*t	ge*mach*t	ge*sag*t	ge*frag*t
infinitive	*lob*en	*lach*en	*mach*en	*sag*en	*frag*en

Find the infinitives of these easy verbs in the perfect form:

gekauft, geschaut, geantwortet, gesetzt, geleistet, gelobt, geliebt, gehütet

14.3. The German past is used much less frequently than the English past; primarily it is used for narration or story-telling. However, the past also is used with the two most common German verbs, ***sein*** (to be) and ***haben*** (to have), and with the modals (which are discussed in Chapter Nineteen).

Gestern *war* der Student glücklich—Yesterday the student *was* happy.
Gestern *hatte* Fräulein Meier Besuch—Yesterday Fräulein Meier *had* a visitor.

14.4. The present perfect tense (has looked, has opened) is used much more often in German than in English, and it can be translated either as a simple past *(looked, opened),* or as the present perfect *(has looked, has opened)* depending on context. It is more common to translate the present perfect into English as a simple past tense. In English the present perfect is used with something that happened in the past and is still ongoing: Sie haben mit ihren Katzen *oft* gespielt—They *have often played* with their cats [and will continue to do so]. Er *hat* schon viele Briefmarken *gesammelt*—He *has* already *collected* many postage stamps.

14.5. In sentences containing the present or past perfect tenses, the auxiliary verb will be conjugated and will appear in "second" place in the clause while the participle will appear at the end of the clause:

Gestern *hat* der Student *gearbeitet*—Yesterday the student *worked.*
Er *hat* die Frage nicht *gehört*—He *did* not *hear* the question.
Er *hat* mit ihr *getanzt*—He *danced* with her.
Hat sie mit ihren Katzen gespielt? *Did* she play with her cats?

14.6. Here are all the conjugations of the weak/easy verb *leben* (to live):

	present	**past**	**present perfect**	**past perfect**
ich	lebe	lebte	habe gelebt	hatte gelebt
du	lebst	lebtest	hast gelebt	hattest gelebt
er, sie, es	lebt	lebte	hat gelebt	hatte gelebt
wir	leben	lebten	haben gelebt	hatten gelebt
ihr	lebt	lebtet	habt gelebt	hattet gelebt
sie	leben	lebten	haben gelebt	hatten gelebt
Sie	leben	lebten	haben gelebt	hatten gelebt

14.7. If a verb has an inseparable prefix—*be-, emp-, er-, ge-, ver-,* or *zer-* (cf. 13.9), or if the verb ends in *-ieren,* the participle will have no *ge-* prefix. Example are: *verlernen, verlernte, hat verlernt; beantworten, beantwortete, hat beantwortet; studieren, studierte, hat studiert.* Here is the conjugation of *erwarten* (to expect, await);

	present	**past**	**present perfect**	**past perfect**
ich	erwarte	erwartete	habe erwartet	hatte erwartet
du	erwartest	erwartetest	hast erwartet	hattest erwartet
er, sie, es	erwartet	erwartete	hat erwartet	hatte erwartet
wir	erwarten	erwarteten	haben erwartet	hatten erwartet
ihr	erwartet	erwartetet	habt erwartet	hattet erwartet
sie	erwarten	erwarteten	haben erwartet	hatten erwartet
Sie	erwarten	erwarteten	haben erwartet	hatten erwartet

When the verb has an inseparable prefix or ends in *-ieren,* the third person singular present will be the same as the participle. Here is an example:

Sie *studiert* Deutsch—She *is studying* German.
Sie *hat* Deutsch *studiert*—She *studied* German.

However, the participle usually can be recognized as a participle because

1. it will be accompanied by an auxiliary verb, and
2. it will appear at the end of the clause.

14.8. The present and past perfect tenses will always require an auxiliary verb—*haben (to have)* or *sein (to be)*—which will be conjugated, while the participle (as in English) will remain the same. Here is an example, using the infinitive *sagen:*

Ich *habe* das oft *gesagt.*	I *have said* that often.
Du *hast* das oft *gesagt.*	You *have said* that often.
Sie *hat* das oft *gesagt.*	She *has said* that often.
Wir *haben* das oft *gesagt.*	We *have said* that often.
Ihr *habt* das oft *gesagt.*	You *have said* that often.
Sie *haben* das oft *gesagt.*	They *have said* that often.
Sie *haben* das oft *gesagt.*	You *have said* that often.

14.9. While most verbs will take *haben* as an auxiliary, as all verbs do in English, some verbs will take *sein* as an auxiliary. Verbs of motion (which are intransitive) such *as fliegen* (to fly), *kommen* (to come), *steigen* (to climb), and *gehen* (to go) will take *sein* as an auxiliary, as do the verbs *sein, werden* (to become), and *bleiben* (to remain). Your dictionary will note in parentheses if a verb takes *sein* with the symbol (*aux. s.*). Here is a paradigm using the infinitive *folgen* (to follow):

Ich *bin* ihm gefolgt.	I *have followed* him.
Du *bist* ihm gefolgt.	You *have followed* him.
Er *ist* ihm gefolgt.	He *has followed* him.
Wir *sind* ihm gefolgt.	We *have followed* him.
Ihr *seid* ihm gefolgt.	You *have followed* him.
Sie *sind* ihm gefolgt.	They *have followed* him.
Sie *sind* ihm gefolgt.	You *have followed* him.

Whenever *sein* is used as an auxiliary, it must be translated into English as *has* or *have*—it can never be translated as *is* or *are.* Here are more examples:

Ich *bin* oft nach Berlin *gefahren*—I *have* often *gone* to Berlin.
Schon *ist* er nach Hause *gegangen*—Already he *has gone* home.
Selten *ist* sie hier *gewesen*—She *has* seldom *been* here.
Oft *sind* wir zu Hause *geblieben*—We *have* often *stayed* home.
[Note: many verbs that have *sein* as an auxiliary are strong/hard and require a vowel change, which is why the participles end in *-en.* I will explain this ending in 14.13.]

14.10. Note that the past perfect is formed by using the past tense of either *sein* or *haben* with a participle:

Er *hatte* in Berlin schon *gewohnt*—He *had* already *lived* in Berlin.
Sie *war* nach Bern *geflogen*—She *had flown* to Bern.

14.11. Conjugations of ***sein*** and ***haben:***

sein (to be)—***a strong/hard verb***

	present *(he is)*	**past** *(he was)*	**present perfect** *(he has been)*	**past perfect** *(he had been)*
ich	bin	war	bin gewesen	war gewesen
du	bist	warst	bist gewesen	warst gewesen
er, sie, es	ist	war	ist gewesen	war gewesen
wir	sind	waren	sind gewesen	waren gewesen
ihr	seid	wart	seid gewesen	wart gewesen
sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	waren gewesen
Sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	waren gewesen

haben (to have)				
ich	habe	hatte	habe gehabt	hatte gehabt
du	hast	hattest	hast gehabt	hattest gehabt
er, sie	hat	hatte	hat gehabt	hatte gehabt
wir	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hatten gehabt
ihr	habt	hattet	habt gehabt	hattet gehabt
sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hatten gehabt
Sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hatten gehabt

14.12. Translate these sentences:

1. Armut *(poverty)* hat viele Städte gebaut.
2. Der alte *Ochs* ist auch ein *Kalb* gewesen.
3. Wer auf *Hoffnung* traut, hat auf [*dünnes*] *Eis* gebaut.
4. Das Goldene Zeitalter *(age) existierte* damals, als das Gold noch nicht vorhanden war.
5. Der Teufel war schön in seiner Jugend.
6. "*Gut* und Böse sind die Vorurteile *(prejudices)* Gottes", *sagte* die Schlange. (Nietzsche)
7. Fräulein Meier hat die Antwort des Briefträgers nicht erwartet.
8. Nachdem der Student in Deutschland gewohnt hatte, studierte er die Romane Grimmelshausens.
9. *Pussikätzchen,* Pussikätzchen,
   Wo bist du gewesen?
   Ich war in London,
   um die *Königin* anzuschauen (to look at).
   Pussikätzchen, Pussikätzchen,
   Was hast du da gemacht?
   Ich habe eine kleine Maus *erschreckt*
   unter ihrem Stuhl.
10. Wo wohnte Fräulein Meier vor drei *Jahren*?
11. Vorher hat Sie die ganze *Zeit* eine *nette* Frau bedient.
12. (ich) Habe nun, ach!* *Philosophie,*
    Juristerei *(law)* und *Medizin*
    und leider auch *Theologie* durchaus *studiert*
    mit heißem Bemühn *(effort).*
    Da steh'** ich nun, ich armer Tor *(fool)*!
    und bin so klug als wie zuvor *(none the wiser)* . . .
    (Goethe—*Faust)*

* This is just an exclamation—it does not indicate the end of the sentence.
** The apostrophe stands for an "e": *steh'—stehe*

Vocabulary

ach—alas
* **als**—when
* die **Antwort** (-en)—answer
die **Armut**—poverty
* **bauen**—to build
bedienen—to wait on, serve
* **da**—there
* **damals**—then, at that time
dünn—thin
durchaus—thoroughly
** das **Eis** (-es, -)—ice
erschrecken—to frighten
existieren (i)—to exist
** **ganz**—entire
* **gewesen**—been
Grimmelshausen—a Baroque German writer [a proper name]
** **haben, hatte, hat gehabt**—to have
* **heiß**—hot, ardent
herrschen—to rule
die **Jugend**—youth
das **Kalb** (-es, ¨er)—calf
leider—unfortunately
* **nachdem**—after
nett—nice
* **noch nicht**—not yet
* **nun**—now
der **Ochs**—ox
* der **Roman** (-s, -e)—novel
die **Schlange** (-n)—snake
* **sein, war, ist gewesen** (i)—to be
* die **Stadt** (¨e)—city
* **stehen** (i)—to stand
der **Tor** (-en, -en)—fool
trauen (auf)—to trust (in)
* **vor** (with time)—ago
vorhanden—available;
vorhanden sein—to exist
vorher—previously
das **Vorurteil** (-s, -e)—prejudice
* **wer**—who
das **Zeitalter** (-s, -)—age

14.13. Hard (or "strong" or "irregular") verbs

Hard verbs are verbs that require a vowel change for their past and perfect forms (thus making them sometimes hard to find in your dictionaries). Comparable English hard/strong verbs are: *see, saw, has seen; ring, rang, has rung; fight, fought, has fought; cut, cut, has cut.*

present infinitive	past	present perfect
schreiben *(to write)*	schrieb *(wrote)*	geschrieben *(written)*
fliegen *(to fly)*	flog *(flew)*	geflogen *(flown)*
singen *(to sing)*	sang *(sang)*	gesungen *(sung)*
stehlen *(to steal)*	stahl *(stole)*	gestohlen *(stolen)*
lesen *(to read)*	las *(read)*	gelesen *(read)*
tragen *(to carry)*	trug *(carried)*	getragen *(carried)*
fallen *(to fall)*	fiel *(fell)*	gefallen *(fallen)*

There are seven different types of verb changes, which are listed in the appendix E, and eventually these patterns should become familiar to you. But until then, if you look up the past or participle of a hard verb, most dictionaries will give you the infinitive.

14.14. While easy verbs end in -te in the past tense and in -t in the perfect tenses, hard verbs usually will end in a consonant in the past tense, and in -en in the perfect tenses. Compare the following:

	easy/weak (-te, -t)		**hard/strong (consonant, -en)**	
present infinitive	fragen	loben	geben	greifen
past	fragte	lobte	gab	griff
present perfect	gefragt	gelobt	gegeben	gegriffen

Whenever a verb for first or third person singular ends in a consonant other than -t (stahl, ging, schrieb), it will always be past (unless it is a modal or *wissen* or *werden*).

It is extremely important for you to know the difference between an easy verb and a hard verb because past and participial tenses of weak/easy verbs will not be listed in your dictionaries, while the past and participial tenses of strong/hard verbs will be. Knowing whether a verb is easy or hard makes it easier to find it in your dictionary.

14.15. Here are all the conjugations of the strong verb ***singen:***

	present	**past**	**present perfect**	**past perfect**
ich	singe	sang	habe gesungen	hatte gesungen
du	singst	sangst	hast gesungen	hattest gesungen
er, sie, es	singt	sang	hat gesungen	hatte gesungen
wir	singen	sangen	haben gesungen	hatten gesungen
ihr	singt	sangt	habt gesungen	hattet gesungen
sie	singen	sangen	haben gesungen	hatten gesungen
Sie	singen	sangen	haben gesungen	hatten gesungen

14.16. Whether it is easy or hard, if a verb has an inseparable prefix (see 13.9; 14.9) **the participle will have no ge- prefix.** Here are examples:

present indicative	**past**	**present perfect**
vergessen *(to forget)*	vergaß *(forgot)*	hat vergessen *(has forgotten)*
bestehen *(to consist)*	bestand *(consisted)*	hat bestanden *(has consisted)*
erfinden *(to invent)*	erfand *(invented)*	hat erfunden *(has invented)*

When a hard verb has an inseparable prefix, the infinitive and the participle can sometimes be the same. Examples are: ***vergessen, erfahren, verlesen,*** and ***gefallen.***

Wir ***erfahren*** viel—We *experience* a lot.
Wir ***haben*** viel ***erfahren***—We *have experienced* a lot.

However, as with easy verbs, the participle usually can be recognized as a participle because (1) it will be accompanied by an auxiliary verb, and (2) it will appear at the end of the clause.

14.17. Look at the patterns of hard verbs in my book, appendix E:

Sometimes you will be able to guess the definition of the verb because it will be similar to English: *sprach*-spoke; *aß*-ate; *sah*-saw; *kam*-came; *begann*-began; *schwamm*-swam; *saß*-sat; *stand*-stood; *geholfen*-helped; *gestohlen*-stolen; *gebunden*-bound; *gewonnen*-won

Also, the participles of many hard verbs will look like the infinitive with a *ge-* on it: lesen—*ge*lesen; wachsen—*ge*wachsen; fallen—*ge*fallen; sehen—*ge*sehen

Other times, you will be somewhat clueless as to what the vowel change has been. In these cases, if you look up the past or participial form in your dictionaries, they will guide you to the correct infinitival form. If you look up *glich,* the dictionary will tell you the infinitive is *gleichen;* if you look up *gezogen,* your dictionary will tell you the infinitive is *ziehen.* There is also a verb chart in your dictionary that gives the changes for hard verbs. All dictionaries, even small ones, have them, although they sometimes seem hidden; finding them, however, is worth the effort. Usually, they can be found at the beginning or the end of the dictionary. *Put a paper clip or some marker in your dictionary so you can find them easily.* Or copy the verb list in Appendix E of *German Quickly* and paste it into your dictionary, as it gives definitions of the verbs as well, and also includes some easy verbs that can occasionally be difficult to find, such as those with *ge-* prefixes.

14.18. Here are some suggestions for finding the infinitive of a hard verb. (If this section seems confusing, you may wish to return to it later, when you are more familiar with verb tenses; you can use the alphabetical verb chart until you become more familiar with the patterns.)

PAST:
Note: there will *always* be a vowel change in the past of hard verbs

1. if the past is *ie,* either "flip" the vowels (*ei*) or try an *a:*
   bl*ie*b-bl*ei*ben; sch*ie*n-sch*ei*nen; st*ie*g-st*ei*gen
   f*ie*l-f*a*llen; r*ie*t-r*a*ten
2. if the past is *a,* either try *e* or *i.* Most of the verbs with *e* in their stem will have *i* in third person singular:
   g*a*b-g*e*ben (g*i*bt); h*a*lf-h*e*lfen (h*i*lft); n*a*hm-n*e*hmen (n*i*mmt);
   spr*a*ch-spr*e*chen (spr*i*cht); *a*ß-*e*ssen (*i*ßt)
   s*a*ng-s*i*ngen; f*a*nd-f*i*nden; b*a*nd-b*i*nden
3. if the past is a *u,* try *a*
   tr*u*g-tr*a*gen; w*u*chs-w*a*chsen; f*u*hr-f*a*hren

PARTICIPLE:

If the participle is *ie,* "flip" the vowels:
gebl*ie*ben-bl*ei*ben; gest*ie*gen-st*ei*gen; gesch*ie*nen-sch*ei*nen
If the participle is *o,* the infinitive might be *e* or *ie:*
gespr*o*chen-spr*e*chen; geh*o*lfen-h*e*lfen; gen*o*mmen-n*e*hmen
gefl*o*gen-fl*ie*gen; gefl*o*hen-fl*ie*hen

14.19. Guess the infinitives of the following verbs. State whether they are easy or hard. (Review: verbs ending in *-te* or *-t* (with the auxiliary *haben or sein*) will be easy, while verbs ending in any other consonant or -en (with the auxiliary *haben or sein*) will be hard. VERBS WITH AN UMLAUT IN THEIR PAST AND PARTICIPIAL FORMS WILL USUALLY BE EASY: hütete, gelöst, geläutet, läuten, hüten.

glaubte; schrieb; sang; half; legte; ist gefallen; hat gemerkt; hat gemalt; zähmte; fand; hat geholfen; sah

14.20. Moreover, the following steps are needed for finding an infinitive in your dictionary when you encounter a hard verb with an inseparable prefix:

If the verb is in past tense,

1. eliminate the prefix temporarily,
2. look up the past tense to find the verb stem,
3. reattach the prefix to the stem

Here are examples:

bestand-stand-stehen-**be**stehen
versprach-sprach-sprechen-**ver**sprechen

If the verb is a participle,

1. eliminate the prefix temporarily,
2. add *ge-* to the rest of the verb,
3. look up the participle to find the verb stem,
4. reattach the prefix to the stem.

Here are examples:

Participle: **er**stochen. Look up **ge**stochen to discover the stem infinitive *stechen,* then look up **er**stechen. (Or try to remember that participles with an *o* in them have either an *e* or an *ie* in their roots)
Participle: **ent**nommen. Look up **ge**nommen to discover the infinitive *nehmen,* then look up **ent**nehmen.
Participle: **be**schrieben. Look up **ge**schrieben to discover the stem infinitive *schreiben,* then look up **be**schreiben.

Always reattach the prefix to the infinitive!

14.21. State the infinitives of the following hard verbs:
blieb, geflogen, las, gestohlen, versprochen, nahm, erfunden, getrunken, trug, beschrieben, fiel, erschien, flog, aß, gekommen, mißverstanden.

15

Verb Tenses (Part II)

15.1 Irregular weak ("curve ball") verbs
There are also some "irregular weak" verbs that have both vowel changes and the standard weak endings. The most important of these verbs are:

definition	**present infinitive**	**past**	**present perfect**
to be acquainted with	kennen	kannte	hat gekannt
to bring	bringen	brachte	hat gebracht
to think	denken	dachte	hat gedacht
to know	wissen	wußte	hat gewußt

I consider these verbs to be "curve ball" verbs because they cause you to worry that other verbs ending in *-te* or *-t* will also have a vowel change. This is NOT the case. These are the main such verbs that will cause you trouble.

15.2. There are also some verbs with a *ge*-prefix that can be confused with verbs with the same stem and no prefix. Compare:

gebrauchen	*(to use)*	vs.	brauchen	*(to need)*
gefallen	*(to please)*	vs.	fallen *	*(to fall)*
gehorchen	*(to obey)*	vs.	horchen	*(to hear)*
gehören *	*(to belong to)*	vs.	hören	*(to hear)*

geraten *	*(to land, succeed)*	vs.	raten	*(to advise)*
gestehen	*(to confess)*	vs.	stehen	*(to stand)*

Because verbs with a *ge*-prefix look the same in the participial form as their non-*ge*-stems, meanings can be ambiguous and determined *only* by context. For example, "Fräulein Meier hat dem Briefträger gehorcht" can mean either that Fräulein Meier has listened to the mailman, or that she has obeyed him. * In these instances, telling the difference is not so difficult, however, as *fallen* and *geraten* take *sein* as an auxiliary, while *gefallen* and *raten* take *haben*. While *hören* is transitive, *gehören* takes a dative object.

15.3. Here is the conjugation of a separable verb, *ansehen (to look at):*

	present	**past**	**present perfect**	**past perfect**
ich	sehe an	sah an	habe angesehen	hatte angesehen
du	siehst an	sahst an	hast angesehen	hattest angesehen
er, sie, es	sieht an	sah an	hat angesehen	hatte angesehen
wir	sehen an	sahen an	haben angesehen	hatten angesehen
ihr	seht an	saht an	habt angesehen	hattet angesehen
sie	sehen an	sahen an	haben angesehen	hatten angesehen
Sie	sehen an	sahen an	haben angesehen	hatten angesehen

Here are sentences containing each of the four tenses:

Das Kind *sieht* die Katze *an*—The child *looks at* the cat.
Das Kind *sah* die Katze *an*—The child *looked at* the cat.
Das Kind *hat* die Katze oft *angesehen*—The child *has* often *looked at* the cat.
Das Kind *hatte* die Katze oft *angesehen*—The child *had looked at* the cat often.

15.4. The participle of a separable verb can be recognized because the *ge*-prefix will always separate the prefix *(an)* from the stem *(sehen).*

To find the infinitive of an easy separable verb, eliminate the *ge-* in the middle and replace the final *-t* with *-en*. Examples are:

Participle	an*ge*hör*t*	aus*ge*frag*t*	nieder*ge*leg*t*	auf*ge*bau*t*
Infinitive	an-hör*en*	aus-frag*en*	nieder-leg*en*	auf-bau*en*

To find the infinitive of a hard separable verb,

1. eliminate the prefix temporarily,
2. look up the participle in your dictionary to find the verb stem,
3. re-attach the prefix to the stem.

Here are examples:

Participle: *angegriffen.* Look up *gegriffen* to discover the stem infinitive *greifen,* then look up the infinitive *angreifen.*
Participle: *ausgezogen.* Look up *gezogen* to discover the stem infinitive *ziehen,* then look up the infinitive *ausziehen.*
Participle: *aufgenommen.* Look up *genommen* to discover the stem infinitive *nehmen,* then look up the infinitive *aufnehmen.*

15.5. Give the infinitive of the following separable verbs; state whether the verbs are easy, hard, or "curve ball" verbs: (Hint: participles ending in *-en* are **always** hard!)

ausgeholt, aufgestanden, abgestiegen, zugemacht, aufgebaut, niedergeschrieben, eingebrochen, umgedeutet, umgebracht, mitgegangen, vorgewiesen, ausgeflippt, ausgedeutscht (a word I invented, which means *to feel saturated after having studied too much German*).

Note: not all of the above verbs can be found in a small dictionary.

15.6. Translate these sentences:

1. Die *Hoffnung* ist in den Brunnen *(well) gefallen.* (In other words, *Hoffnung* is irretrievably lost!)
2. Dankbarkeit ist in den Himmel gestiegen und hat die *Leiter (ladder)* mitgenommen. *(Dankbarkeit* is as hard to retrieve as Hoffnung!)
3. Als der Tag anbrach, noch ehe *(before)* die Sonne aufgegangen war, *schrieb* der Briefträger ein langes, *romantisches* Gedicht.
4. Ein Wolf im Schlaf fing nie ein *Schaf.*
5. Heute erfährt man, was man gestern nicht gewußt hat.
6. Ein *süßer Gesang* hat manch einen *(many a)* Vogel betrogen.
7. Es sind *mehr* Leute aus Überfluß (abundance) als aus Armut gestorben.
8. Das *Lernen* hat kein Narr erfunden. (What is the subject of this sentence? How do you know?)

9. Als er böse wurde, bot der Vater des Briefträgers ein Bild starken Zorns, und er *erschreckte* Fräulein Meier.
10. Der arme Jack Horner *saß* in einer Ecke und *aß* seinen Plumpudding.
11. Es war spätabends, als der Fremde ankam. Das Dorf *lag* in *tiefem Schnee.*
12. Am Anfang schuf Gott Himmel und *Erde.*

15.7. Note that as is the case with English a participle can be used as an adjective or an adverb. Here are examples:

Gestohlene Äpfel schmecken am besten—*Stolen* apples taste best.
Wer eine Frau nur des Geldes wegen nimmt, bekommt *ungeratene* Kinder—Whoever takes (marries) a wife only because of her money ends up with *spoiled* children.
Der Dieb läuft *erregt* auf und ab—The thief walks back and forth *excitedly.*

Although these participles are to be translated as adjectives, their infinitival forms still must sometimes be found before they can be translated accurately.

15.8. Note: verbs can be found only:

1. at the beginning of the clause (for questions or commands);
2. in "second" place (for indicative clauses, and for conjugated verbs);
3. at the end of the clause (for infinitives, participles, or dependent clauses; cf. chapters 23–25).

A word found in any other place can *not* be a verb!

15.9. Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of participles used as adjectives:

1. Gelehrte Narren sind die *besten.*
2. Eine gezähmte *Zunge* ist ein seltsamer Vogel.
3. Gemalte Fenster machen die Stube *(room)* nicht hell. (In other words, superficial measures aren't very effective.)
4. Ungeladene *Gäste* gehören nicht zum *Feste.*
5. Mit jeder *neu gelernten* Sprache erwirbst *(gain)* du eine neue Seele. (Is the first *neu* an adjective or an adverb?)

Vocabulary

an-brechen, brach an, ist angebrochen—to begin, to break
* der **Anfang** (-s ¨-e)—beginning
ankommen, kam an, ist angekommen—to arrive
die **Armut**—poverty
auf-gehen, ging auf, ist aufgegangen—to rise
betrügen, betrog, hat betrogen—to deceive
bieten, bot, hat geboten—to present
* das **Bild** (-es, -er)—picture, image
* **bringen, brachte, hat gebracht**—to bring
der **Brunnen** (-s, -)—well
die **Dankbarkeit**—thankfulness
daraus—from it
das **Dorf** (-es, ¨-er)—village
einst—once
entgehen, entging, ist entgangen—to escape
* **erfahren, erfuhr, hat erfahren**—to learn, to discover
erfinden, erfand, hat erfunden—to invent
erschrecken—to frighten
** **erwarten**—to expect
* **fallen, fiel, ist gefallen** (i)—to fall
fangen, fing, hat gefangen—to catch
fremd—foreign, strange
der Gast (-es, ¨-e)—guest
das **Gedicht** (-es, -e)—poem
die **Gefahr**—danger
* **gehören** (i)—to belong to
der **Gesang**—song
* **gestern**—yesterday
hell—bright
** **heute**—today
* der **Himmel**—sky, heaven
* **kennen, kannte, hat gekannt**—to know
laden, lud, hat geladen—to invite
* **lehren**—to teach
* **legen, lag, gelegen**—to lie, to be situated
* **lernen**—to learn
malen—to paint
mit-nehmen, nahm mit, mitgenommen—to take with one
der **Narr** (-en, -en)—fool
* **nie**—never
* **noch**—still
schaffen, schuf, geschaffen—to create
die **Seele** (-n)—soul
seltsam—strange, rare
* die **Sprache** (-n)—language
* **stark**—strong
steigen, stieg, ist gestiegen—to climb
* **wissen, wußte, hat gewußt**—to know
zähmen—to tame
der **Zorn** (-s)—wrath
die **Zunge** (-n)—tongue

15.10. Verb Practice

1. Er folgt dem Mann
2. Er folgte dem Mann.

3. Er ist dem Mann gefolgt.
4. Er war dem Mann gefolgt.
5. Sie sagt die Wahrheit.
6. Sie sagte die Wahrheit.
7. Sie hat die Wahrheit gesagt.
8. Sie hatte die Wahrheit gesagt.
9. Hat sie die Wahrheit gesagt?
10. Sie hat die Wahrheit nicht gesagt.
11. Sie singt das Lied.
12. Sie sang das Lied.
13. Sie sangen das Lied.
14. Sie hat das Lied gesungen.
15. Hat sie das Lied gesungen?
16. Warum ist sie nicht dahin gegangen?
17. Oft sind sie hier.
18. War er hier?
19. Er ist oft hier gewesen.
20. Er wird hier sein.
21. Er brauchte seinen Laptop.
22. Er brach die Vase.
23. Sie brachte ihm ein Glas Wasser.
24. Sie hat die Antwort nicht verstanden.
25. Das Gedicht gefiel ihr.

Reading Selection: Abraham und Isaak

[Gott versuchte] Abraham und sprach zu ihm: Abraham! Und er antwortete: Hier bin ich

Und er sprach: Nimm Isaak, deinen einzigen Sohn, den *(whom)* du liebst, und geh hin in das Land Morija und opfere *(sacrifice)* ihn dort zum Brandopfer *(burnt offering)* auf einem Berge, den *(which)* ich dir sagen werde.

Da stand Abraham früh am Morgen auf und gürtete *(saddled)* seinen Esel und nahm mit sich *(him)* zwei Knechte *(servants)* und seinen Sohn Isaak und spaltete *(split)* Holz zum Brandopfer, machte sich auf *(set out)* und ging an den Ort, von dem (*of which—see chapter 25)* Gott ihm gesagt hatte.

Am dritten Tag hob Abraham seine Augen auf und sah die Stätte von ferne *(afar)* und sprach zu seinen Knechten: Bleibt hier mit dem Esel. Ich und der Knabe wer-

den dorthin gehen, und wenn wir gebetet haben *(have prayed)* werden wir wieder zu euch kommen

Und Abraham nahm das Holz zum Brandopfer und legte es auf seinen Sohn Isaak. Er aber nahm das Feuer und das Messer *(knife)* in seine Hand; und die beiden gingen miteinander.

Dann sprach Isaak zu seinem Vater Abraham: Mein Vater! Abraham antwortete: Hier bin ich, mein Sohn. Und er sprach: Siehe, hier ist Feuer und Holz; wo ist aber das Schaf zum Brandopfer?

Abraham antwortete: Mein Sohn, Gott wird sich ersehen *(select)* ein Schaf zum Brandopfer. Und die beiden gingen miteinander.

Und als *(when)* sie an die Stätte kamen, die *(which)* ihm Gott gesagt hatte, baute Abraham dort einen Altar und legte das Holz darauf und band seinen Sohn Isaak, legte ihn auf den Altar oben auf das Holz.

Und er streckte seine Hand aus und faßte das Messer, so daß er seinen Sohn schlachten konnte *(would be able to slay).*

Dann rief ihn der Engel des Herrn vom Himmel und sprach: Abraham, Abraham! Er antwortete: Hier bin ich!

Er sprach: Lege deine Hand nicht an den Knaben und tu ihm nichts; denn nun weiß ich, daß du Gott fürchtest und hast deines einzigen Sohnes nicht verschont *(spared)* um meinetwillen *(for my sake).*

Dann hob Abraham seine Augen auf und sah einen Widder *(ram)* hinter sich *(him)* in der Hecke *(hedge)* mit seinen Hörnern hängen und ging hin und opferte ihn an seines Sohnes statt.

Vocabulary

auf-heben, hob auf, hat aufgehoben—to raise

* **auf-stehen, stand auf, ist aufgestanden**—to get up

aus-strecken—to reach out, to stretch

* **beide**—both; *die beiden*—they, the two of them

der **Berg** (-es, -e)—mountain

beten, betete, hat gebetet—to pray

binden, band, hat gebunden—to bind

das **Brandopfer** (-s, -)—burnt offering
* **denn**—for, because
* **dort**—there
einzig—only
fassen—to seize
* **fern**—far
** das **Feuer** (-s, -)—fire
* **früh**—early
* **fürchten**—fear
* **gehen, ging, ist gegangen**—to go
hängen—stuck
das **Holz** (-es)—wood
der **Knabe** (-n, -n)—boy
* **legen**—to lay, place
das **Messer** (-s, -)—knife
miteinander—with each other
* **nehmen, nahm, hat genommen**—to take
* **nun**—now
* **oben**—above
opfern—to sacrifice
der **Ort** (-es, -e)—place
* **rufen, rief, gerufen**—to call
das **Schaf** (-es, -e)—sheep
schlachten—to slay
** **sprechen, sprach, hat gesprochen**—to speak
die **Statt** (-)—place, stead
die **Stätte** (-n)—place
um meinetwillen—for my sake
* **versuchen**—to try

16

The Plurals

16.1. I gave you a list of how plurals are formed in section 1.5; you may wish to review this. Here are some reminders:

16.2. ALWAYS:

das, des, dem are always singular!!! All nouns not ending in -l -e -r -n, or occasionally -s are also always singular. Examples are: b, d, f, g, h, k, m, p, t

16.3. OMINOUS:

1. *die* or an adjective that is *not* preceded by an article and that ends in *-e* can be singular or plural. Here is a checklist:

   1. *die* + noun ending in something other than *-l -e -r -n*—*has* to be singular (b, d, f, g, h, k, m, p, t, v, w, z): *die Markt, die Kuh, die Schönheit* If there is an adjective ending in *-e,* the noun will be singular: *die gute Regel*—the good rule; *die schwarze Spinne*—the black spider; *die nette Schwester*—the nice sister
   2. *die* + noun ending in *-l, -e, -r* could be either, although *die* + a noun ending in *-er* is most likely plural: *die Dichter*—the poets. (Nouns ending in *-er* are usually masculine; exceptions are: *Mutter, Schwester, Tochter* and *Butter.*)
   3. *die* + noun ending in *-en* is *always* plural: *die Mädchen*—the girls
   4. *die* + an adjective ending in *-en* is *always* be plural: *die langen Titel*—the long

titles; *die guten Freunde*—the good friends; *die langen Bücher*—the long books; *die alten Dicher*—the old poets

5. If there is *only* an adjective ending in an *-e,* and the noun ends in *-l-e-r or -n,* chances are excellent that the noun will be plural: *neue Titel*—new titles, *gute Freunde*—good friends, *alte Bücher*—old books, *dumme Examen*—stupid exams

Singular or plural exercise: die Freundlichkeit, die lange Liste, die freundlichen Dichter, die Katzen, gute Kinder, die neue Lampe

2. *der* can be singular or plural. Here is a checklist:

    1. *der* + an "obvious" masculine noun (*der Mann, der Freund*) or *der* + an adjective with *-e* will *always* be singular: *der Wolf; der fette Hahn; der neue Titel* *der* + a noun following a preposition will be singular 98% of the time: *mit der Liste*—with the list; *zu der bösen Schlange*—to the evil snake *der* + a feminine noun can be either genitive or dative: *mit der Liebe*—with the love; *die Liebe der Frau*—the love of the woman
    2. *der,* unfortunately, can also be genitive plural. In these instances, if there is an adjective following it, it will always be *-en;* it will also always be in genitive place: der Freund der guten Briefträger—the friend of the good mailmen; *die Eltern der jungen Kinder*—the parents of the young children.
    3. Moreover, if there is only an adjective ending in an *-er,* and the noun ends in *-l-e-r* or *-n,* chances are that the noun will be plural: *die Antworten* ***guter*** *Studenten*-the answers of good students
    4. Compare: *der alte Dichter*—the old poet (mas. nom) with *der* ***alten*** *Dichter*—the old poets (pl. gen.)

Singular or plural exercise: der Film; der gute Historiker; der alten Historiker; vor der jungen Katze; die guten Lieder alter Musiker

3. *den* can be either masculine accuastive or dative plural. Here is a checklist:

    1. Meanly enough, *den* can be masculine accusative, and if the noun ends in any consonant other than *-n,* usually it will be: *für diesen Film; ohne den guten Freund; um den Tisch, für den Artikel.*
    2. The major problem involves adjectives used as nouns or weak nouns, although many of these nouns have a plural sense to them, even if they are technically singular: Den Schuldigen erschreckt eine Maus—A mouse frightens the guilty one. (However, if you were to translate this as "the guilty," you probably would not misunderstand the meaning of the sentence.)

3. However, if you see *den* followed by nouns and adjectives with *-en* endings, especially after prepositions, chances are that they will be plural: den guten Titeln; mit den Frauen; vor acht Jahren—8 years ago; nach diesen Jahren—after these years

Singular or plural exercise: mit den Ideen; für den Mann; mit den Studenten; ohne den Freund; den Kindern; den Häusern; in den Park

16.4. Note that sometimes an *-e* will be added to a noun in dative case, and this noun will always be singular; you will know because the noun will nearly always be preceded by a *dem* or a contraction of *dem: dem* Walde; *dem* Briefe; nach Hause; *zum* Feste; *dem* Kinde. However, the *dem* or the dative preposition *(aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu)* is the clue that the noun has to be singular.

16.5. Final exercise: Are these nouns singluar or plural? freundliche Katzen, im Walde, das Kind des alten Dichters, die guten Kinder der alten Dichter, der alte Dichter, die guten Dichter, die guten Dichterinnen

16.6. Translate these sentences:

1. Advokaten und *Soldaten* sind des Teufels Spielkameraden.
2. Ein böses Gewissen hat die Zähne eines Wolfs.
3. Die *dümmsten* Bauern ernten die *dicksten* Kartoffein. (There's no justice!)
4. *Hunde,* Bauern und Edelleute machen keine Türen zu.
5. Eine fleißige Mutter hat faule Töchter.
6. Anderer Fehler sind gute Lehrer.
7. Die Augen *suchen,* was dem Herzen gefällt.
8. Viele Streiche *fällen* die große Eiche.
9. Die schönsten *Äpfel* sieht der *Wurm* zuerst.
10. Gute Lehrer haben gute Schüler.
11. Die Beobachtungen der alten *Historiker* haben Fräulein Meier überrascht.
12. Schöne Vögel haben schöne *Federn.*
13. Die Schlange lauert im *Grase.*
14. Sogar in den Pelz *(fur)* eines Herrenhundes *kommen Flöhe.*

Vocabulary

der **Advokat** (-en, -en)—lawyer
der **Bauer** (-s, -n)—farmer
die **Beobachtung** (-en)—observation
die **Edelleute**—noblemen
die **Eiche** (-n)—oak
die **Feder** (-n)—feather

der **Fehler** (-s, -)—error
der **Herrenhund** (-es, -e)—aristocrat's dog
das **Gewissen**—conscience
der **Kartoffel** (-s, -n)—potato
der **Lehrer** (-s, -)—teacher
der **Pelz** (-es, -e)—fur
die **Schlange** (-n)—snake
der **Schüler** (-s, -)—student, pupil
schweigen—to be silent
* **sogar**—even
der **Streich** (-s, -e)—stroke
* **suchen**—to seek
** der **Teufel** (-s, -)—devil
überraschen—to surprise
der **Zahn** (-s ¨-e)—tooth
zuerst—first of all
* **zumachen**—to close

17

How to Use a German Dictionary

17.1. It is extremely important for you to learn to use a German dictionary correctly. If you are unable to find a word, or if you choose an improper definition, your translation will be wrong even if you have correctly understood all the grammatical constructions. Therefore, read this section carefully, and refer to it whenever you have trouble finding words. (If you are feeling saturated with information after having learned about verb tenses, skim this chapter, then use it as a future reference.)

First I will explain what to look for when you are looking up different parts of speech (and I have listed the parts of speech and other dictionary features in alphabetical order). Note: the advantages and disadvantages of various German-English dictionaries are described in Appendix I. There is an answer key to all the sentences in this chapter in Appendix J.

17.2. Abbreviations

Abbreviations are found in a separate section of some dictionaries, while in more current dictionaries they are found in the body of the text. The most common abbreviations, which are worth memorizing, are:

d.h.—das heißt *(i.e.—that is)*
u.a.—unter anderem *(among other things)*

usw.—und so weiter *(etc.—and so forth)*
vgl.—vergleiche *(cf.—compare)*
z.B.—zum Beispiel *(for example)*

Note also that the abbreviations ***jdn*** and ***jdm*** often appear in your dictionaries along with definitions in your dictionaries. These stand for *jemanden* (someone—accusative) and *jemandem* (someone—dative). ***s.*** stands for *siehe,* which means you need to look at another entry to find the correct definition.

17.3. Adjectives and adverbs

Adjectives will be indicated by the abbreviation *adj.* and **adverbs** will be indicated by the abbreviation *adv.* Although this seems straightforward, problems arise because some German words can be used both as adjectives and as adverbs. If an adjective has essentially the same meaning when used as an adverb, it will only be listed as an adjective, although it can also be used adverbially. For example, *glücklich* sometimes is listed as an adjective even though it can mean both *happy* and *happily.*

Sometimes the same word will have a radically different meaning depending on whether it is used as an adjective or as an adverb. For example, *lauter* as an adjective means *pure,* but as an adverb it means *nothing but.* **The adjectival meaning will always be listed first.** Therefore, if you are looking up an adverb, make sure you have the correct adverbial definition.

Some adjectives will have different meanings depending on the word that they modify. For example, *faul* means *rotten* when it refers to fruit, but it means *lazy* when it refers to people.

17.4. Translate these sentences:

1. Der Student war eben hier.
2. Ein halber Laib ist besser als gar kein Brot.
3. Fräulein Meier sieht den Briefträger doch glücklich an.
4. Die linden Brisen sind ihr angenehm. (Is angenehm a participle or not? How do you know?)

17.5. Nouns

1. Nouns will be followed by the symbols *m. (masculine), f. (feminine)* or n. *(neuter).* The inflectional forms (genitive singular / nominative plural) will follow in parentheses immediately after the indication of the gender.

Because feminine nouns have no form for genitive singular, the first notation in parentheses will be a dash; the second notation will be the plural. (In some dictionaries, only the plural will be indicated.) Here are examples of two feminine nouns:

Nadel f. (-; -n) Therefore, the plural of *Nadel* is *Nadeln.*
Braut f. (-; ¨-e) Therefore, the plural of *Braut* is *Bräute.*

Here are examples of neuter nouns, which have genitive singular forms:

Grab n. (-[e]s, ¨-er) The genitive singular of *Grab* is either *Grabes* or *Grabs,* and the plural is *Gräber.*
Modell n. (-s, -e) The genitive singular of *Modell* is *Modells,* and the plural is *Modelle.*
Mädchen n. (-s, -) The genitive of *Mädchen* is *Mädchens,* and there is no plural ending.

2. Some masculine and neuter nouns are known as *weak nouns* (cf. 8.1). These nouns can be identified because their genitive form will be listed as *-en* (for animate masculine nouns) or *-ens* (for inanimate masculine and neuter nouns). Here are examples of three such nouns and their singular declensions:

Mensch, m. (-en, -en)	(plural is: Menschen);
Name, m. (-ens, -n)	(plural is: Namen);
Herz, n. (-ens, -en)	(plural is: Herzen)

Nominative	der Mensch	der Name	das Herz
Accusative	den Mensch**en**	den Name**n**	das Herz
Genitive	des Mensch**en**	des Name**ns**	des Herz**ens**
Dative	dem Mensch**en**	dem Name**n**	dem Herz**en**

3. Some nouns will be spelled the same, but their meanings will vary according to their gender and according to their plurals. Here are examples:

Band n. (-[e]s, ¨-er)	ribbon, tape, conveyor belt
Band n. (-[e]s, -e)	bond, fetter, tie
Band m. (-es, ¨-e)	volume
Tor m. (-en, -en)	fool, simpleton
Tor n. (- [e] s, -e)	gate
Leiter m. (-s, -)	leader
Leiter f. (-n)	ladder

A noun sometimes can have radically different meanings according to context. For example, *Einsatz* means *stake* when it refers to a game, and it means *lace insert* when it refers to a dress, and its military definition is *mission.* In an essay, *That Awful German Language,* Mark Twain jokes that *Zug* means virtually anything, from *feature,* to *train,* to *apoplexy.*

4. Moreover, be wary of expressions that include parts of the body (eye, nose, head, heart, etc.), but which do not make sense initially. Such phrases usually will be idiomatic. Examples are: *ein flammendes Herz* (literally: *a flaming* heart)—a bleeding heart; *auf freiem Fuß* (literally: *on a free foot)*—at liberty; *unter vier Augen* (literally: *under four eyes)*—face-to-face. Whenever an idiomatic meaning seems likely, check the definitions of the body part in question.

17.6. Translate these sentences:

1. Fräulein Meier hat Schwierigkeiten mit ihren Jalousien.
2. Aus einem kleinen Reis wird ein großer Baum.
3. Das Buch besteht aus drei Bänden.
4. Auf keinen Fall wird Fräulein Meier ihre Katzen aufgeben.
5. Müßiggang ist der Anfang aller Laster.
6. Morgenstund (e) hat Gold im Mund (e). (possibly the most popular proverb in German)

17.7. Compound nouns (This is extremely important!)

Compound nouns often are not listed as separate entries; instead, ***Meisterstück*** will be found somewhere after ***Meister***, ***Gegensatz*** may be found somewhere after *gegen,* and the like. Moreover, compound nouns won't always be listed in your dictionary, and often it is buried within the main entry. Whenever you encounter such a compound, divide it into its separate parts (watch for s's, as they may be used as connectives). For a rough, literal definition, translate each word within the compound, then hyphenate your English translation. Examples are: ***Karten/spiel*** (Karten-Spiel)—card game; ***Kinder/freundlichkeit*** (Kinder-Freundlichkeit)—child-orientation; ***Herz/entzündung*** (Herz-Entzündung)—heart-inflammation. Once you have understood the concept, you may wish to add an "of or a "for" to make the translation smoother. Examples are: ***Freiheit/s/begriff*** (Freiheits-Begriff)—the concept *of* freedom; ***Gerechtigkeit/s/lehre*** (Gerechtigkeits-Lehre)—the doctrine *of* justice; ***Unfallversicherung/s/gesellschaft*** (Unfall-Versicherungs-Gesellschaft)—the society *for* accident insurance. The following word appeared in an old edition of Ripley's *Believe It or Not:*

*Hinter*ladung*vetterli*gewehr*patronen*hülsen*fabrik*arbeiter*verein*—society of workers in the factory of bullet cartridges for backloading of Vetterli rifles

17.8. Translate these compounds:

die Unabhängigkeitserklärung; die Erdentstehungslehre; die Seinserfahrung; die Formveränderung; die Wasserversorgungsgesellschaft; der Lebenserhaltungstrieb; das Lieblingstier; der Lieblingsstier; die Einwanderungspolitik; der Ausdruckstanz; die Automobilseile; die Sättigungspunktsbestimmung

17.9. Proper nouns

German proper nouns (including names of countries) will be listed in the back of the large Langenscheidts (after the English-German section), but they will be listed in the text in most other dictionaries. Unlike English, a proper noun used as an adjective will not be capitalized. Here is an example:

die *deutsche* Sprache—the *German* language

Sometimes people's names will coincidentally also have a common noun meaning, which should be ignored. Examples are:

Spengler (plumber)—a German philosopher
Fichte (pine tree)—a German philosopher
Walther von der Vogelweide (bird pasture)—a German poet

For a list of proper German names, see Appendix L.

17.10. Prepositions

Prepositions will be indicated by the abbreviation *prep.* Since prepositions take either accusative, dative, genitive, or dative or accusative cases, the case they take will be indicated in parentheses. When a preposition takes either dative or accusative, your dictionary will list definitions associated with the dative case first. Because preposition entries generally are long, they can be a nuisance, as it is hard to find the meaning sought. If a preposition seems to be joined with a specific verb, the correct idiom generally can be found more quickly if the verb is looked up instead. Examples of verb-preposition combinations are: *bestehen aus (to consist of), fragen nach (to ask about), erinnern an (to remind of),* and *warten auf (to wait for).*

For the most common meanings of prepositions, consult my preposition list (Chapter Five, section IV of the Appendix D) or my Humanities Vocabulary, Appendix K.

17.11. Translate these sentences:

1. Während des Tauziehens sind drei Kinder ums Leben gekommen.
2. Der Briefträger besteht auf der Wahrheit.
3. Kant hatte einen wichtigen Einfluß auf Kleist.
4. Nicholas brachte Recha Tee in einem Aluminumbecher und blickte auf ihr Haar, während sie trank.

17.12. Verbs

1. Verbs will be followed by the abbreviation *v. t.* (or *v.a.* or *tr. v.)* which will indicate that the verb is transitive (it can have a direct object), or it will be followed by the abbreviation *v.i.* (or *v.n.* or *itr. v.)* which will indicate that the verb is intransitive (it cannot have a direct object). If a verb has no other symbols following it, you can assume that it is conjugated regularly, and that it takes *haben* as its auxiliary verb.

Therefore, if you look up *lachen,* it will be conjugated as follows: *lachen, lachte, hat gelacht.*

If you look up a verb such *as folgen,* you will see the following symbols: *v.i. (aux. sein* or *mit sein).* The notation *aux. sein* indicates that *folgen* is to be conjugated as follows: *folgen, folgte,* and *ist gefolgt.* A large dictionary will also note that while *folgen* (aux. sein) means *to follow, folgen* (aux, *haben*: *to obey*). A large dictionary will also have (dat.) in parentheses to indicate that the *verb folgen* only takes a dative object. (Er folgt *mir*—He follows *me.)*

2. Hard verbs will be listed as *irr. v.* or as *unr.* And a list of hard/strong verbs is included in most dictionaries. A hard verb that has *sein* as its auxiliary will be listed as follows: *irr. v. i. (aux. sein).* Verbs that take *sein* as an auxiliary will be intransitive in German.

3. A verb that is reflexive will be listed as follows: *v.r.* or *refl. v.* The reflexive meaning of a verb will usually be listed second, except when the reflexive meaning is more common than the non-reflexive meaning. While the non-reflexive definition of erinnern is "to remind," the reflexive definition is "to remember." (Reflexive verbs will be explained in Chapter Twenty-six.)

4. Some verbs will even have different definitions depending on whether they are used transitively or intransitively. For example, *heißen* as a transitive verb means

to command, while as an intransitive verb, it means *to be called.* When verbs have both transitive and intransitive definitions, the transitive meaning will usually be given first, unless the intransitive definition is more common.

5. When a verb combined with a preposition has a radically different meaning, it will be listed in italics or bold face type. For example, *bestehen auf* means *to insist on* while *bestehen aus* means *to consist of.* **Note especially: *es geht um*—to be a matter of,** as this is very hard to find in a large dictionary, yet it appears often in scholarly German. Die Verhandlungen ***gehen um*** Leben und Tod—The negotiations ***are a matter of*** life and death.

Some verbs also have different definitions depending on whether they are separable or inseparable. While *übersetzen* (separable) means *to set over, übersetzen* (inseparable) means *to translate.* While *wiederholen* (separable) means *to fetch back, wiederholen* (inseparable) means *to repeat.*

Be cautious of verbs (often with prefixes) that have both literal and figurative meanings. The literal meaning is usually given first, while the more "figurative" meanings—which are generally used in scholarly writings—are listed later, as a third or fourth definition. For example, among other things, *einfallen* means both *to collapse* and *to occur to someone; zugehen* means both *to close* and *to happen.*

17.13. Translate these sentences:

1. Gestern abend hielt der Professor eine Rede über die Entstehung von Pazifismus.
2. Plötzlich fiel es dem Soldaten ein, daß er kein Geld hatte.
3. Es ging um die Ehre des berühmten Professors.
4. Selig sind die Friedfertigen; denn sie werden Gottes Kinder heißen. (Matthäus 5.9)

17.14. Added cautions, false cognates

Be careful when looking up all words. Small carelessnesses such as mistaking ***kein*** for ***klein, Lied*** for ***Leid,* or *Freude*** for ***Freunde*** can seriously affect your translation, regardless of how well you understand German grammar. Whenever a sentence seems unusually awkward or incomprehensible, you should probably double check the definitions of the words in it!

Also, beware of the following false cognates:

absolvieren—to complete
adäquat—suitable
Akademiker/in—someone who has an academic degree
aktuell—modern, current
also—therefore
die **Antike**—antiquity
die **Art**—manner, way
bekommen—to receive
brav—honest, good
breit—wide, broad
der **Christ**—Christian
denn—because, for
die **Diktatur**—dictatorship
eventuell—possible
Fraktion—party
das **Geld**—money
das **Gymansium**—grammar school, high school
hell—bright
die **Hochschule**—university, college
human—humane
die **Instanz**—authority
* die **Kombination**—surmise, inference
* die **Konfession**—religious denomination
* die **Konjunktur**—economy
* **konkurrieren**—to compete
* **konsequent**—consistent
* der **Konvent**—meeting, convention
* das **Konzept**—draft, notes
die **Lektüre**—reading
pathetisch—lofty, elevated, expressive
plump—clumsy, awkward
die **Prägnanz**—precision
punktuell—selective
der **Rapport**—report
restlos—complete, total
schmall—narrow
sensibel—sensitive
seriös—respectable
der **Sinn**—sense, meaning
sparen—to save
spenden—to donate
splendid—generous, handsome
die **Technik**—technology

* In general, be wary of *k* cognates if they do not seem to make sense in the context of your reading. Although *komisch* can be relied upon to mean *comic, konkurrieren* means *to compete.*

17.15. A final note: If you have trouble memorizing words, you might find it helpful to mark common words and definitions in your dictionary so you can find them more easily whenever you need to look them up. Or make a list of them as a reference.

18

Common Suffixes

18.1. Common Suffixes (Note: a list of prefixes can be found in Chapter 13)

-bar generally means *ible*. It is added to verbs to turn them into adjectives. Examples are: *denkbar (thinkable), eßbar (edible), trennbar (separable).*

-chen and *-lein* are diminutives that are added to nouns. Examples are: *Vögelchen (little bird), Häuslein (little house), Fräulein (literally: little woman), Rotkäppchen (Little Red Riding Hood).*

-d changes a verb into a present participle which will always be an adjective or adverb. Examples are: *singend (singing), lachend (laughing), spielend (playing); die Studierenden (the ones who are studying).* This will be important in Chapter Twenty-seven.

-e added to an adjective (adding an umlaut to the stem vowel) will change it into a noun. Examples are *Güte (goodness)* from *gut; Kälte (coldness)* from *kalt; Treue (loyalty)* from *treu; Schwäche (weakness) from schwach.*

-fach means fold, times. Examples are: *dreifach (three times), vielfach (many times).*

-haft means having the quality of the word expressed in the stem. Do not confuse this with *Haft*, which means *imprisonment.* Examples are: *lehrhaft (didactic;* cf. *Lehre—teaching), rätselhaft (puzzling;* cf. *Rätsel—puzzle), zweifelhaft (doubtful;* cf. *Zweifel—doubt).*

-heit, -keit -igkeit are added to adjectives to form abstract nouns corresponding to English nouns ending in *-ity* or *-ness.* Examples are: *Ewigkeit (eternity;* cf. *ewig—eternal), Krankheit (sickness;* cf. *krank—sick), Genauigkeit (exactness;* cf. *genau—exact).*

-ig is like the English *y.* Examples are *hungrig (hungry), durstig (thirsty), völlig (fully).*

-isch is added to nouns to turn them into adjectives. Examples are: *neidisch (envious;* cf. *Neid—envy), launisch (moody,* cf. *Laune—mood), kindisch (childish;* cf. *Kind—child).*

-ismus is added to adjectives to make them nouns: Examples are: *Realismus (realism;* cf. *realistisch—realistic); Naturalismus—Naturalism; Humanismus—Humanism*
-ist is added to adjectives to make them people: *Humanist—humanist; Pessimist—pessimist*

-lich is added to verbs and nouns to turn them into adjectives. When it is added to verbs, *-lich* means *-able,* and when it is added to nouns, it means *-ly.* Examples are: *nützlich (useful;* cf. *nützen), glaublich (believable;* cf. *glauben), freundlich (friendly;* cf. *Freund), monatlich (monthly;* cf. *Monat).*

-los means *without, less.* Examples are: *hilflos (helpless), farblos (colorless), herzlos (heartless).*

-mal means *time, times.* Examples are: *manchmal (sometimes), einmal (once), zehnmal (ten times).*

-schaft is added to concrete nouns to make them abstract: *Nachbarschaft—neighborhood; Freundschaft—friendship; Gesellschaft—society; Wissenschaft—science*

-ung is added to a verb, and it corresponds to nouns ending in *-ing, -tion,* and *-ment.* Examples are: *Übung (practice;* cf. *üben), Trennung (separation;* cf. *trennen), Vertreibung (banishment;* cf. *vertreiben).*

18.2. Translate these sentences:

1. *Alles* ist flüchtig, nur das Ewige [ist] wichtig.
2. Das Geld geht hinkend ein und geht *tanzend* fort.
3. Baue dem *fliehenden Feind* eine *goldene* Brücke.
4. Ein *lebendiger Hund* ist besser als ein toter Löwe. (Ecclesiastes)

5. Im Spiel gibt es keine *Freundschaft*.
6. Wenn man die Gerechtigkeit biegt *(bends)*, so bricht sie. (In the second clause, is *sie* nominative or accusative? How do you know?)
7. Das große unzerstörbare Wunder ist der Menschenglaube an Wunder. (Jean Paul)
8. Bei Gott ist kein *Ding* unmöglich.
9. Eine linde *Zunge* ist ein Baum des Lebens; aber eine lügenhafte bringt Herzeleid. (Proverbs)
10. Die Dichter sind gegen ihre Erlebnisse *schamlos;* sie beuten sie aus. (Nietzsche) (How do you know that *schamlos* does *not* modify *Erlebnisse*?)

Vocabulary

** **alles**—everything
aus-beuten—to exploit
aus-gehen (i)—to exit
* **bauen**—to build
** **brechen**—to break
die **Brücke** (-n)—bridge
* der **Dichter** (-s, -)—writer, poet
ein-gehen (i)—to enter
das **Erlebnis** (-sses, -sse)—experience
ewig—eternal
fliehen—to flee
flüchtig—fleeting
fort-gehen (i)—to go away
** **gegen**—against, with regard to
die **Gerechtigkeit**—justice
das **Herzeleid**—suffering
hinken (i)—to limp
lind—gentle
lügenhaft—lying
schamlos—shameless
das **Spiel** (-s, -e)—game
* **unmöglich**—impossible
unzerstörbar—indestructible
** **wichtig**—important
der **Wunder** (-s, -)—miracle

18. 3. Guess these words:

komisch; hörbar, freundlos, zweimal, Sneewittchen, gehend, bringend, die Arbeitslosigkeit, der Optimismus, der Realist, wochentlich, sonnig, die Verbesserung, göttlich, kindlos, völlig, westlich, danklos, kosmetisch, mächtig, die Wärme, die Kleinigkeit

19

The Modal Auxiliaries

19.1. In German, there are six modals, known superficially as "helping verbs." Since modals usually express an attitude towards the action expressed by an infinitive rather than a specific action themselves, they seldom appear alone in a sentence. For example, in the English sentence, "I *must* work," the modal *must* causes the infinitive *work* to be perceived as a necessity. In the sentence, "I *can* work," the modal *can* indicates that the work is capable of being done, but is no longer a necessity. And in the sentence, "I *want* to work," the modal *want* indicates that the work is in fact desirable.

The modals are:

dürfen	—	to be permitted to, may
können	—	can, to be able to
mögen	—	to like to, may
müssen	—	to have to, must
sollen	—	to be supposed to, is to
wollen	—	to want to, to intend to

19.2. Here are the present tense forms for all six modals. Note that the singular form is significantly different from the infinitive for the modals *dürfen, können, mögen,* and *wollen.* Also note that the first and third person singular are identical for all modals:

	dürfen	*können*	*mögen*	*müssen*	*sollen*	*wollen*
ich	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
du	darfst	kannst	magst	mußt	sollst	willst
er	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
wir	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr	dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
Sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

19.3. In a simple indicative sentence with a modal, the modal will be in "second" place, and the infinitive will be at the end of the clause. Here are sentences with each of the six modals:

Wenn sie eine Karte hat, *darf* sie in die Bibliothek *gehen*—If she has a card, she *is permitted* to go to the library.
Der Briefträger *kann* die lesbare Schrift leicht *lesen*—The mailman *can* easily read the legible handwriting. (Note: *kann* should not be translated as *to know*!)
Fräulein Meier *mag* das nicht *tun*—Fräulein Meier does not *like* to do that.
Jeden Tag *muß* der Student viel *studieren*—The student *has to* study a lot each day.
Was *soll* sie *tun*?—What *should* she do?
Der Student *will* ins Theater *gehen*—The student *wants to* go to the theater.

19.4. Common idioms involving modals (memorize the asterisked sentences—they are used as often as the more standard meanings):

Er *kann* Deutsch—He speaks German.

* Das *mag* sein—That *may* be.
Die Behauptung des Briefträgers über Fräulein Meier *mag* wahr *sein*—The assertion of the mailman about Fräulein Meier *may be* true.

Er *soll* gelehrt *sein*—He *is reputed to be* educated.
* Morgen früh *soll* der mutige Widerstandskämpfer sterben—Tomorrow morning, the courageous resistence fighter *is to* die. (This *will* happen, even though it *should* not happen.)
Das Gebäude *soll* ein Museum werden—The building *is to* become a museum.
Soll das wahr sein?—*Can* that be true?

Mögen often appears in its subjunctive form—*möchte,* which is best translated *would like to:* Fräulein Meier *möchte* Zoologie studieren—Fräulein Meier *would like to* study zoology.

19.5. Sometimes the modals can be dificult to translate because they look so much like English cognates. For example *muß* sometimes is better translated as *have to* rather than *must,* especially in clauses with multiple verbs, *können* sometimes should be translated *to be able to* and *sollen* sometimes is better translated *is to* rather than *should.*

Here are examples:

Sie wird dahin gehen *müssen*—She will *have to* go there.
Er will seinem Freund helfen *können*—He wants *to be able to* help his friend.
Das arme Kind der Witwe *soll* seinen Vater nie kennenlernen—The poor child of the widow *is* never *to* meet his father (or *will* never meet . . .)

19.6. The past and present perfect tenses of modals

The pasts of the modals are formed in the following ways:

Modal	**Past**
dürfen—to be permitted	*durfte*—was permitted
können—to be able to, can	*konnte*—was able to, could
mögen—to like to, may	*mochte*—liked to, might
müssen—to have to, must	*mußte*—had to
sollen—is to, should	*sollte*—was to, was supposed to
wollen—to want to	*wollte*—wanted to

The past tense of *müssen* is always translated as *had to:* Sie *mußte* Finnisch studieren—She *had to* study Finnish.

The modals almost never appear in their participial forms. Instead, the following construction is much more common:

Er *hat* nicht gehen *dürfen*—He was not permitted to go.
Er *hat* viel dazu sagen *können*—He was able to say a lot about that.
Sie *hat* ihrem Freund helfen *müssen*—She had to help her friend.
Es *hat* eben nicht sein *sollen*—That just should not have been (that way).
Sie *haben* essen *wollen*—They wanted to eat.

19.7. Modals in combination with other verbs

Modals can be used in combination with (1) the future (2) the past, and (3) other modals. When you are confronted with any of these combinations, you should translate the modal first, the verb at the end of the clause second, and the penultimate verb last. Here is an example:

Sie *konnte* das *getan haben*—She could have done that.
1 3 2

1. The future combination with a modal is formed as follows:

Sie *wird* das *tun können*—She will be able to do that.
1 3 2

Wir *werden* alles *wissen wollen*—We will want to know everything.
1 3 2

Er *wird* viele Briefe *schreiben müssen*—He will have to write several letters.
1 3 2

2. Here are modals in combination with the past infinitive:

Ein Dilettant *kann* das Buch nicht *geschrieben haben*—An amateur can not have
1 3 2
written the book.

Ehe du Gott suchst, *muß* dich Gott schon *gefunden haben*—Before you look for
1 3 2
God, he already must have found you.

3. Here are examples of modals in combination with other modals:

Der Alte *soll* nicht immer zu Hause *bleiben wollen*—The old person should not
1 3 2
always want to stay at home.

Das Kind *muß* endlich *schlafen wollen*—The child must finally want to sleep.
1 3 2

19.8. Sometimes when a modal is used with a verb of action, that verb will be omitted, and only the modal will be used:

Wenn wir nicht [tun] *können,* was wir [tun] *wollen,* so *müssen* wir [tun], was wir [tun] *können*—If we *can* not *do* what we *want to do,* then we *have to do* what we *can (do).* Although the *tun* is omitted in German, *do* is added in English. Here are further examples:

Darf ich ins Kino?—*May* I *go* to the movies?
Curt konnte von entwaffnendem Charme sein, wenn er *wollte,* und meistens *wollte* er—Curt could be of a disarming charm if he wanted to, and mostly, he wanted to.
Wo *wollen* Sie hin—Where do you *want to go*?

19.9. Additional verbs, which occasionally function as modals

(1) The verb *lassen* also can function as a type of modal when it means
  (a) to let, to permit, to allow, or
  (b) to have something done, to cause, to make. Here are examples:

Der Briefträger *läßt* Fräulein Meier viele interessante Geschichten *erzählen*—The mailman *lets* Fräulein Meier *tell* a lot of interesting stories.
Ach du großer Gott! Was für kleine Kartoffeln *läßt* du *wachsen*?—Alas, great God! What kind of small potatoes do you *let grow*? (In other words, why do you make so many stupid little things when you are capable of magnificent creations?)

(2) Other verbs that occasionally function as modals are: *heißen (to order, to bid), hören (to hear), lehren (to teach), lernen (to learn), machen (to make),* and *sehen (to see).*

Here are examples:

Der Professor *heißt* den Studenten *hereinkommen*—The professor *asks* the student *to come in.*
Die Mutter *hörte* ihr Kind *singen*—The mother *heard* her child *sing.*
Im Zoo *sahen* die Leute den Bären *tanzen*—At the zoo, the people *saw* the bear *dance.*
Wer will *schwimmen lernen*—Who wants to *learn to swim*?

19.10. Translate these sentences:

1. Den *Alten* muß man glauben.
2. Liebe und Husten *(coughing)* kann man nicht verbergen *(conceal).*

3. Das *Werk* zeigt an, was der Mann kann.
4. In den *Monaten* ohne "r" (*Mai, Juni, Juli, August*) soll man wenig *küssen* und viel *trinken*. (. . . because it is so hot then.)
5. Um eines faulen Astes *(branch)* willen soll man den Baum nicht umhauen *(cut down)*. (Do not confuse *um . . . willen* with *wollen*!)
6. Ein Mann, der *(who)* will, kann mehr als *zehn*, die *(who)* müssen.
7. Fräulein Meier wollte sich *(herself) bessern;* also belegte sie einen Fernkurs *(correspondence course)*, und sie studierte Erdkunde *(geography)*.
8. Not lehrt den *Affen* geigen *(to fiddle)*. (When he is desperate, an ape or person can do anything. Is *Affen* singular or plural? If you are unsure, review chapter 8.)
9. Die Hexen haben *rote Augen* und können nicht weit sehen, aber sie haben eine *feine* Witterung (sense of smell) wie die Tiere und merken es, wenn Menschen herankommen (aus *Hänsel und Gretel*) [Note that the *es* is a placeholder for the next clause, and need not be translated.]
10. Wer das Wasser des Lebens *sucht*, muß lange *dürsten* können.
11. Spucke *(spit)* nicht in den Brunnen *(well)*, wenn du noch daraus trinken mußt.
12. Ein *Kritiker* machte Hegel darauf aufmerksam, daß die *historischen* Tatsachen nicht mit seiner Philosophie übereinstimmten. Hegel soll geantwortet haben: "Um so schlimmer für die Tatsachen."
13. Der Briefträger hat Fräulein Meier bei ihren Schularbeiten *(homework)* helfen müssen.
14. Von *allen* Bäumen des *Gartens* darfst du essen, nur vom Baum der Erkenntnis von Gut und Böse darfst du nicht essen; denn am Tage, an dem du davon ißt, mußt du sterben.
15. Willst du immer weiter schweifen *(roam)?*
    Sieh, das *Gute liegt so* nah. (Do you remember the imperative? If not, check 6.6)
    Lerne nur, das Glück ergreifen *(grasp)*,
    Denn das Glück ist immer da.

(Goethe)

Vocabulary

der **Affe** (-n, -n)—ape
* **also**—therefore
an-zeigen—to indicate
der **Ast** (-es, ⸚e)—branch
aufmerksam machen auf—to draw one's attention to
belegen—to take; to enroll in
bessern—to improve
der **Brunnen** (-s, -)—well
* **da**—there; then
* **denn**—for, because
* **dürfen (darf)**—to be permitted to
die **Erdkunde**—geography
ergreifen—to grasp
die **Erkenntnis**—knowledge
* **erzählen**—to tell
faul—rotten
das **Gedicht** (-es, -e)—poem

herankommen (i)—to approach
* **heute abend**—this evening
die **Hexe** (-n)—witch
das **Husten** (-s, -)—coughing
* **können (kann)**—can, to be able to
* **lassen (läßt)**—to let
* **lehren**—to teach
* **liegen** (i)—to lie
* **manchmal**—sometimes
* **merken**—to notice
* **mögen (mag)**—like to, may
* **müssen (muß)**—to have to
* **nah**—near
** **nehmen**—to take
die **Not** (-e)—need
schlimm—bad
die **Schularbeit** (-en)—school work
* **sollen (soll)**—should; is to; is said to
spucken—to spit
* **sterben** (i)—to die
die **Tatsache** (-n)—fact
das **Tier** (-s, -e)—animal
übereinstimmen—to agree
* **um . . . willen**—for the sake of
verbergen—to conceal
* **weit**—far
* **weiter**—further
* **wenig**—little
* **wollen (will)**— want to
* **zehn**—ten

19.11. Ein Kindervers:

"Soll ich oder soll ich nicht?"
fragt der Knabe das Mädchen.
"Was willst du oder willst du nicht?"
fragt das Mädchen den Knaben.
"Jetzt aber Schluß (stop)"
sagt der Knabe zum Mädchen.
"Jetzt kriegst du doch den Kuß."

Reading Selection: *November* (Peter Bichsel)

Er fürchtete sich *(was afraid)* und wenn er zu jemandem sagte: "Es ist kälter geworden", erwartete er Trost *(comfort)*.

"Ja, November", sagte der andere.

"Bald ist es Weihnachten", sagte er.

Er hatte Heizöl eingekauft, er besaß einen Wintermantel, er war versorgt *(prepared)* für den Winter, aber er fürchtete sich. Im Winter ist man verloren. Im Winter ist alles Schreckliche möglich, Krieg zum Beispiel. Im Winter kann die Stelle gekündigt werden *(one can lose one's job)*, im Winter erkältet man sich *(catches cold)*. Man kann sich *(himself)* schützen gegen die Kälte, Halstuch *(scarf)*, Mantelkragen *(coat collar)*, Handschuhe. Aber es könnte *(could)* noch kälter werden.

Es nützt nichts, jetzt "Frühling" zu sagen. (You will learn this construction in Chapter 20.)

Die Schaufenster sind beleuchtet *(lit up),* sie täuschen Wärme vor. Aber die Kirchenglocken klirren *(clank).* In den Wirtschaften *(taverns)* ist es heiß, zu Hause öffnen die Kinder die Fenster und lassen die Wohnungstür offen, im Geschäft *(office)* vergißt man seinen Hut.

Man bemerkt nicht, wie die Bäume die Blätter fallen lassen. Plötzlich haben sie keine mehr. Im April haben sie wieder Blätter, im März vielleicht schon. Man wird sehen, wie sie Blätter bekommen.

Bevor er das Haus verläßt, zählt er sein Geld nach.

Schnee wird es keinen geben, Schnee gibt es nicht mehr.

Frierende Frauen sind schön, Frauen sind schön.

"Man muß sich an die Kälte gewöhnen *(accustom oneself)",* sagte er, "man muß tiefer atmen *(breathe)* und schneller gehen."—"Was soll ich den Kindern zu Weihnachten kaufen?" fragte er.

"Man wird sich an die Kälte gewöhnen", sagte er zum anderen. "Ja, es ist kälter geworden, November", sagte der andere.

Vocabulary

alles Schreckliche—everything (that is) terrible
** **bald**—soon
bemerken—to notice
besitzen—to own
das **Blatt** (-es, ¨er)—leaf, page
ein-kaufen—to buy
frierend—freezing
der **Frühling** (-s)—spring
gewöhnen (sich)—to accustom oneself
heiß—hot
das **Heizöl**—heating oil
der **Hut** (-es, ¨e)—hat
* **ja**—yes, indeed
* **jemand**—someone
** **jetzt**—now
die **Kirchenglocke** (-n)—church bell
der **Krieg** (-es, -e)—war
* **lassen**—to let
März—March
* **möglich**—possible
nach-zählen—to count again
(es) **nützt nichts**—it is not worth it
* **plötzlich**—suddenly
das **Schaufenster** (-s, -)—show window
* **schnell**—fast, quick
* **schon**—already
schützen—to protect
* **tief**—deep
* **vergessen**—to forget
verlassen—to leave
* **verlieren**—to lose
** **vielleicht**—perhaps
vor-täuschen—to feign
die **Weihnachten**—Christmas
* **wieder**—again
die **Wohnungstür** (-en)—apartment door
** **zum Beispiel**—for example

20

The Zu Construction

20.1. The *zu* construction is used to take care of a clause fragment; a verb is seen in its infinitival form with a *zu* in front of it if it is found in a sentence with another verb which is not a modal. **It will always appear at the end of the clause, and the trick is to find it and to place it before the object in the clause fragment:**

Here are examples:

Es *macht* Spaß, ins Kino *zu gehen*—It is fun to go to the movies.
Er *hat* Angst davor, das *zu tun*—He is afraid to do that.
Er *denkt* daran, auf seine Freundin *zu warten*—He thinks about waiting for his girlfriend.
Es ist schwer, einem alten Hund Kunststücke *zu lehren*—It is difficult to teach an old dog new tricks.
Fräulein Meier *hält* es für gut, ihren Katzen Thunfisch *zu füttern*—Fräulein Meier thinks it good to feed her cats tuna.

Such clauses are traditionally split off from the main clause by a comma; however the spelling reform of 1996 did away with this tradition, so post-1996, you may not see this comma. In this construction, the infinitival form of the verb will appear at the end of the clause.

If the infinitive is an inseparable verb, the *zu* construction will appear as follows: *zu gehen, zu wissen, zu verstehen, zu beschreiben.*

If the verb is separable, however, the *zu* will appear between the prefix and the verb root—*aufzumachen, fortzuwerfen, anzusehen* are examples. And here is a sample sentence:

Manchmal ist es schwer, früh *aufzustehen*—Sometimes it is difficult to get up early. Therefore, in order to find the infinitive, simply eliminate the *zu* in the middle.

20.2. When the noun appearing in the infinitival clause is nominative, the *zu* and the infinitive usually will remain at the end of the clause in your English translation. Here are examples:

Der Fuchs (nominative) ist schwer zu fangen—*The fox* is hard to capture.
Die Theologie Schleiermachers (nominative) ist interessant zu lesen—*The theology of Schliermacher* is interesting to read.

But if the noun in the infinitival clause happens to be accusative or dative, the *zu* and the infinitive should be placed in front of that noun in your English translation. Here are examples:

Er ist nicht imstande, *den Dieb (accusative)* zu beschreiben—He is unable to describe *the thief.*
Es ist nicht der Mühe wert, *dem Dilettanten (dative)* zuzuhören—It is not worth the effort to listen *to the amateur.*

The *zu* construction can be especially tricky if the sentence contains multiple uses of it, or if there are additional verbs with the construction:
Die Katze versucht *die Maus (accusative)* zu fangen und *sie (accusative)* zu töten—The cat tries to capture *the mouse* and to kill *it.*
Tatsächlich ist es ohne das Sehen für ein Kind enorm schwierig, *die Hände (accusative)* als feine Sinnesorgane zu benutzen—Actually, without sight, it is enormously difficult for a child to to use *his hands* as delicate organs of perception.

20.3. Sometimes the phrase before the fragment will contain a *da-* compound, which you should ignore in your translation:

Das Publikum wartet ungeduldig *darauf,* die berühmte Schauspielerin zu sehen—The public is impatiently waiting to see the famous actress.

20. 4. This construction can also appear in present perfect, or with a modal:

Miss Vintner war zwei Jahre älter als Mrs. Harfield und betrachtete es als einen persönlichen Triumph, ihre Freundin *überlebt zu haben*—Miss Vintner was two years older than Mrs. Harfield and considered it a personal triumph *to have survived* her friend. (Agatha Christie)
Es ist elend genug, einmal glücklich *gewesen zu sein*—It is miserable enough *to have been* happy once.
Die Frau hatte die Gabe, mit alten Damen, Hunden und kleinen Jungen wunderbar *umgehen* (consort) *zu können*—The woman had the gift of being able to consort wonderfully with old women, dogs, and young boys.

20.5. Sometimes verbs such as *scheinen* and *versuchen* call for a *zu* construction:

Das Mädchen *schien* sehr glücklich *zu sein*—The girl seemed to be very happy.
Fräulein Meier *versucht* dem Briefträger *zu gefallen*—Fräulein Meier tries to please the mailman.

20.6. Three common phrases using *zu: um . . . zu, ohne . . . zu,* and *anstatt . . . zu*

The most common of these constructions is *um . . . zu,* which will always mean *in order to.* Here are examples:

Er will hier sein, *um* den Professor kennen*zu*lernen—He wants to be here *in order to* meet the professor.
Fräulein Meier belegt einen Briefwechselkursus, *um* etwas *zu* lernen—Fräulein Meier takes a correspondence course *in order to* learn something.
Er gibt einen Taler aus, *um* einen Pfennig *zu* sparen—He spends a dollar *in order to* save a penny.

The other two phrases are *anstatt . . . zu* which means *instead of,* and *ohne . . . zu* which means *without.* Here are examples:

Anstatt das Schauspiel *Sappho* von Grillparzer *zu lesen,* ging der Student ins Kino—*Instead of reading* Grillparzer's play, *Sappho,* the student went to the movies.
Sie tat das, *ohne* ihren Freund *zu fragen*—She did that *without asking* her friend about it.

20.7. The negation of *müssen* (to have to) is *nicht brauchen zu* (not to have to). Here are examples:

Wenn du Königin bist, so *brauchst* du *nicht* mehr zu Fuß zu gehen—When you are queen, you will no longer need to walk.
Wer die Sonne hat, *braucht nicht* nach den Sternen *zu* fragen—Whoever has the sun (i.e. good things) need not ask about the stars.

20.8. Note also that it is even possible to have the *zu* construction function as a subject:

Gute Bücher lesen zu können ist eine Freude des Lebens—*To be able to read good books* is a joy of life.
Öl ins Feuer zu gießen, ist nicht der Weg, es zu löschen—*To pour oil onto the fire* is not the way to extinguish it.
Weise zu sein fällt leicht nach dem Geschehnis—*It is easy to be wise* after the event.

20.9. *Zu* in combination with *sein. Note that this construction is confusing and non-intuitive, and you will often have trouble translating it because the infinitive is obviously not a participle, even though it is translated as if it were.* Note that *zu* used with an infinitive following all forms of the verb *sein* will be translated into English with a passive meaning. Here are examples:

Von einem Rind *ist* nicht mehr als Rindfleisch *zu erwarten*—From a cow, nothing other than beef *is to be expected.*
Im Zoo *war* nur ein Flußpferd *zu sehen*—In the zoo, only one hippo *was to be seen.*

When used with a negation, this construction can be used to indicate something that cannot be done, and therefore should be translated passively with *cannot.* Here are examples:

Die Antwort *ist nicht zu verstehen*—The answer *cannot be understood.*
Der Tanzbär *war nicht zu finden*—The dancing bear *could not be found.*

However, whenever an adjective (rather than an adverb or a noun) follows any form of the verb *sein,* the clause will not be translated passively, but rather like a normal *zu* construction: Es *ist klug,* schlafende Hunde liegen *zu lassen*—It is wise to let sleeping dogs lie.

20.10. Translate these sentences:

1. Im Haus eines *Diebes* ist es schwer zu *stehlen.*
2. Es *kann* kein Wahrsager *(prophet)* den anderen ansehen, ohne zu *lachen.*
3. Der Briefträger *geht* manchmal zehn *Schritte,* um einen zu sparen.
4. Der Wolf drückte auf die Klinke, die Tür ging auf, und er *ging,* ohne ein Wort zu *sprechen,* gerade zum Bett der Großmutter und verschluckte sie. (In the clause, *die Tür ging auf,* is *die Tür* nominative or accusative? How do you know?)
5. Gott schließt keine Tür, ohne eine andere *aufzumachen.*
6. Geschehene Dinge *(things that have happened)* sind nicht zu ändern.
7. Man muß zeitig *(on time)* aufbrechen *(leave);* dann braucht man nicht zu rennen *(run).*
8. Drei *Dinge* sind nicht aufzuhalten: *Wasser, Feuer,* die Menschenmenge.
9. Die Entstehung der *Musik* ist nicht von der Entstehung der Menschheit zu trennen. (Schönberg)
10. Auch im *Paradies ist* es nicht *gut, allein* zu sein.
11. Der Journalist liebte es, die Schwächen anderer boshaft und treffend zu *karikieren.*
12. Fräulein Meier war in einem Zustand (condition) hochgradiger Erregung, und erregte Frauen pflegen (tend) immer etwas *mehr* zu *sagen* als notwendig.
13. Gute Freunde zu haben ist eine Freude.
14. Curt zertrat seine Zigarette, und Nikolaus nützte den Augenblick, um vor ihm einzusteigen (to get on [a bus]) und Recha die Hand zu reichen und ohne aufdringliche (urgent) *Hast* den Platz neben ihr zu nehmen. (Brigitte Reimann)
15. Nicht wenn es gefährlich ist, die Wahrheit zu sagen, findet sie am seltensten Vertreter, sondern wenn es langweilig ist. (Nietzsche) (This sentence is especially difficult, as it requires some smoothing out. What part of speech is *am seltesten*? How do you know?)
16. Alles hat seine Stunde, und es gibt eine *Zeit* für jegliche *(every)* Sache *unter* der *Sonne.* Eine Zeit für die *Geburt* und eine Zeit für das Sterben, eine Zeit zu *pflanzen* und eine Zeit, das Gepflanzte auszureißen, eine Zeit zu töten und eine Zeit zu heilen, eine Zeit einzureißen *(rend)* und eine Zeit aufzubauen, eine Zeit zu *weinen* und eine Zeit zu *lachen,* eine Zeit zu klagen *(mourn)* und eine Zeit zu *tanzen,* eine Zeit, Steine wegzuwerfen, und eine Zeit, Steine zu sammeln, eine Zeit zu *umarmen* und eine Zeit, sich der Umarmung zu enthalten *(to refrain from),* eine Zeit zu *suchen* und eine Zeit zu verlieren, eine Zeit aufzubewahren *(protect)* und eine Zeit fortzuwerfen, eine Zeit zu zerreißen und eine Zeit zu nähen (sew), eine Zeit zu schweigen und eine Zeit zu reden, eine Zeit zu lieben und eine Zeit zu *hassen,* eine Zeit des Krieges und eine Zeit des Friedens. **(Ecclesiastes** 3)

Vocabulary

* **ändern**—to change
* **an-sehen**—to look at
* **anstatt . . . zu**—instead of
auf-bauen—to build up
auf-bewahren—to protect
auf-brechen (i)—to leave
auf-gehen—to open
auf-halten—to stop
* **auf-machen**—to open
aus-reißen—to rip up
boshaft—malicious
* **brauchen nicht**—need not
der **Dieb** (-es, -e)—thief
drücken—to press
ein-reißen—to take down, rend
enthalten (r)—to refrain from
die **Entstehung** (-en)—origin
die **Erregung**—excitement
fort-werfen—to cast away
* der **Friede** (-ns)—peace
die **Gabe**—gift, talent
gar kein—not at all
* die **Geburt** (-en)—birth
gefährlich—dangerous
gerade—straight
* **geschehen** (i)—to happen
* **hassen**—to hate
die **Hast**—haste
heilen—to heal
hochgradig—great
karikieren—to caricature
klagen—to mourn
die **Klinke** (-n)—latch
* der **Krieg** (-es, -e)—war
langweilig—boring
* **manchmal**—sometimes
die **Menschenmenge** (-n)—crowd
notwendig—necessary
nützen—to use
ohne . . . zu—without
der **Platz** (-es, ¨-e)—place, seat
* **reden**—to speak
reichen—to reach
die **Sache** (-n)—matter
sammeln—to collect
* **schließen**—to close
der **Schritt** (-es,-e)—step
die **Schwäche** (-n)—weakness
schweigen (i)—to be silent
** **schwer**—difficult
* **selten**—seldom
* **sondern**—but rather, on the contrary
sparen—to save
stehlen (stiehlt)—to steal
* die **Stunde** (-n)—hour
* **suchen**—to seek
töten—to kill
treffend—accurate
trennen—to separate
* **um . . . zu**—in order to
umarmen—to embrace
die **Umarmung** (-en)—embrace
* **verlieren**—to lose
verschlucken—to swallow
der **Vertreter** (-s, -)—representative, adherent
der **Wahrsager** (-s, -)—prophet
weg-werfen (wirft weg)—to throw away
weinen (i)—to cry
zeitig—on time, early
zerreißen—to rip up
zertreten (zertritt)—to step on, crush, put out

Vocabulary Aid

1. Der alte Mann steht auf, um etwas zu sagen.
2. Heute abend scheint der Briefträger viele E-Mails schreiben zu wollen.
3. Anstatt zu arbeiten, will Fräulein Meier ein Liebesgedicht schreiben.
4. Fräulein Meier braucht nicht zu viel zu studieren.
5. Fräulein Meier macht die Tür auf, um den Briefträger zu grüßen *(greet).*
6. Der Friede ist nicht zu verlieren.

21

Co-ordinating Conjunctions

21.1. Co-ordinating conjunctions connect words, phrases, or clauses of the same value. They do not have any effect on word order. The co-ordinating conjunctions are:

aber—however
denn—for, because
oder—or
sondern—but rather
und—and

Here are two word combinations that also function as conjunctions:

entweder . . . oder	either . . . or
weder . . . noch	neither . . . nor

21.2. The conjunctions ***must be memorized,*** as they are all very important. As you have already learned, German sentences can seem interminable, as several clauses can be connected with one another. Co-ordinating conjunctions often provide useful clues as to how to break a sentence up into manageable clauses:

Der Briefträger kauft eine rote Rose *und* gibt sie Fräulein Meier, *denn* solche Rosen gefallen ihr—The mailman buys a red rose *and* gives it to Fräulein Meier, *because* such roses please her.

21.3. Often, if there is no comma before a co-ordinating conjunction, part of the first clause will continue into the second clause:

Man kann nicht die Kuh verkaufen und doch die Milch schlürfen—One cannot sell the cow *and* nevertheless drink the milk.
Er will Deutsch studieren und ein Examen bestehen—He wants to study German *and* pass an exam.
Der böse Wolf machte die Tür zum Hause der Großmutter auf *und* sprang in ihr Bett—The evil wolf opened the door to the grandmother's house *and* leapt into her bed.
Mache den Mund *zu und* die Augen *auf*—Close *(zumachen)* your mouth and open *(aufmachen)* your eyes.
Im Augenblick der großen Erderschütterung *versank der größte Teil der Stadt* mit einem Gekrache *und begrub* alles unter seinen Trümmern—At the moment of the great earthquake, the greatest part of the city *sank* with a crash and *buried* everything under its ruins.

21.4. If there is a comma before a co-ordinating conjunction, it usually means that the sentence consists of two separate yet equal clauses:

Der böse Wolf war im Haus ihrer Großmutter, *aber* Rotkäppchen sah ihn nicht sofort—The evil wolf was in her grandmother's house, *but* Little Red Riding Hood didn't see him immediately.
Der Briefträger hat einen Preis erhalten, *und* Fräulein Meier war erfreut darüber—The mailman received a prize, *and* Fräulein Meier was pleased by this.
Ein Narr wirft einen Stein in den Brunnen, *und* zehn Vernünftige können ihn nicht herausholen—A fool throws a stone into the well, *and* ten wise people cannot get it out.

21.5. If other co-ordinating conjunctions are used, however, a comma may appear between clauses, even if the subject of the first clause is carried over into the second clause:

Man lernt nicht für die Schule, *sondern* für das Leben—One does not learn (only) for school, but for life.

21.6. Translate these sentences:

1. *Osten* oder *Westen,* zu Hause ist es am besten.
2. Entweder bekennen *(confess)* oder *brennen*!

3. Hör und sei nicht taub *(deaf)*, aber langsam glaub. (Do you remember the imperative? If not, review 6.6.)
4. Nach seiner Entlassung (release from prison) hatte der Student 45 *Pfund* und einige *politische Illusionen* eingebüßt.
5. Armut ist weder Schande noch Unehre *(dishonor)*.
6. *Such* eine Frau nicht auf dem Ball, sondern im Stall *(stable)*. (Unfortunately, most proverbs regarding women seem to have been created by male chauvinists!)
7. Ein alter Gott muß nützen und schaden können. (Nietzsche)
8. Sie hat das gesagt und getan.
9. Die Lebensgeschichte Immanuel Kants ist schwer zu beschreiben. Denn er hatte weder Leben noch Geschichte. (Heinrich Heine)
10. Die Psychologie hatte unbekannte Tiefen und Abgründe der Seele entdeckt, aber auch das feste zielsichere *(unerring)* Selbstbewußtsein aufgelöst. (Fritz Martini)
11. . . . ohne nach rechts oder links zu blicken, überschritt er die Straße und stieg die Stufen der *Kathedrale* hinan.
12. Das Kind ist bis zum *fünften Jahr* der Mutter Herr, bis zum *zehnten* Jahr ihr Knecht *(servant)*, bis zum *fünfzehnten* Jahr ihr Geheimrat *(confidant)*, und dann ist es entweder ihr *Freund* oder ihr *Feind*. (Be careful with numbers!)
13. Das *goldene Haar* der *Großmutter* war vielleicht nicht immer so golden gewesen, aber die *blauen* Augen waren sicher echt.
14. Der *König* von *Frankreich* ist ein König der Esel; denn seine Untertanen *(subjects)* müssen tun, was er ihnen auferlegt *(imposes)*; der König in England ist ein König der Leute; denn sie genehmigen *(consent to)* das, was er ihnen auferlegt; aber der Kaiser ist ein König der Fürsten; denn sie tun, was ihnen gefällt. (Luther)

Vocabulary

* **aber**—but, however
der **Abgrund** (-s, ¨-e)—abyss
auf-erlegen—to impose
auf-lösen—to dissolve
bekennen—to confess
* **beschreiben**– to describe
* **bis zu**—until
* **blicken** (i)—to look, glance
brennen—to burn
* **dann**—then
** **denn**—for, because
echt—genuine
einbüssen—to lose, forfeit
entdecken—to discover
* **entweder . . . oder**—either . . . or
der **Esel** (-s, -)—donkey
* der **Feind** (-es, -e)—enemy
fest—firm
* das **Frankreich** (-s)—France
fünfzehn—fifteen
der **Fürst** (-en, -en)—prince
* **gefallen** (i)—to please
der **Geheimrat** (-s, -e)—confidant
hinan-steigen (i)—to climb
* **langsam**—slow
** die **Leute** (pl.)—people

* **links**—left
der **Magen** (-s, -)—stomach
nützen—to help
* **oder**—or
rechts—right
schaden—to harm
die **Schande**—scandal
das **Selbstbewußtsein** (-s)—self-confidence, self-awareness
* **sicher**—certain, certainly
* **sondern**—but, on the contrary
der **Stall** (-es, ¨e)—stable
die **Straße** (-n)—street
die **Stufe** (-n)—step
* **suchen**—to seek
die **Tiefe** (-n)—depth
überschreiten—to cross over
unbekannt—unknown, unfamiliar
* **weder—noch**—neither . . . nor

22

Basic Verb Placement (Part II)

22.1. In an earlier chapter on "Basic Verb Placement," you were told that in indicative sentences, the conjugated verb appears in "second" place (cf. Chapter 6):

Oft *geht* der Student ins Theater—The student often goes to the theater.

Since then, you have encountered more complex verbs, and you have discovered that part of the verb can also appear at the end of the clause in the following cases:

1. Whenever there is a separable verb prefix (cf. 13.1–13.7):

Er *steht* morgens früh *auf*—He gets up early in the morning.
Sie *macht* die Tür *zu*—She closes the door.

2. Whenever there is a future tense (cf. 10.1–10.3):

Sie *wird* nicht hier *bleiben*—She will not stay here.
Vielleicht *werden* wir das *tun*—Perhaps we will do that.

3. Whenever the verb is in the present or past perfect tense (cf. Chapters 14–15):

Er *hat* das nicht *gewußt*—He did not know that.
Sie *ist* nach Berlin *geflogen*—She has flown to Berlin.
Er *hatte* das oft *getan*—He had often done that.
Sie *war* früher *angekommen*—She had arrived earlier.

4. Usually whenever a modal appears in a clause (cf. Chapter 19):

Das Kind *darf* das nicht *sagen*—The child is not permitted to say that.
Sie *kann* gut *schreiben*—She can write well.
Er *mag* nicht hier *sein*—He may not be here.
Er *muß* viel *studieren*—He has to study a lot.
Du *sollst* nicht *töten*—Thou shalt not kill.
Der Student *will* den neuen Film *sehen*—The student wants to see the new film.

22.2. Translation of complex verbs

Therefore, whenever you see most verbs, check the end of the clause for any prefixes, then, if there are any, attach them to the verb root, and look up the complete verb.

Whenever you see *werden,* check the end of the clause for a verb infinitive. If there is one, then *werden* must be translated as *will.*

Er *wird* nicht dorthin *gehen*—He *will* not go there.

Whenever you see any form of *sein* or *haben,* check the end of the clause for participles. **Be particularly suspicious of forms of *sein,* as they sometimes must be translated as a form of *to have.***

Sie *ist* oft *geflogen*—She *has often flown.*
Leider *waren* wir niemals dort *gewesen*—Unfortunately we *had* never *been* there.

Whenever you see any form of *dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen* or *wollen,* check the end of the clause for infinitives and translate accordingly:

Er *will* Kafkas Romane *lesen*—He *wants to read* Kafka's novels.

22.3. Whenever three verbs occur in a clause, the conjugated verb is always translated first, the final verb is translated second, and the penultimate verb is translated last (cf. 19.7). Here are examples:

Er *wird* das *getan haben*—He will have done that.
1 3 2

Er *wird* das *wissen wollen*—He will want to know that.
1 3 2

Sie *werden* das *abschreiben müssen*—They will have to copy that.
1 3 2

Sie *hat* den Aufsatz *schreiben müssen*—She had to write the essay.
1 3 2

Man *hatte* das Unglück nicht *sehen wollen,* weil es so schrecklich war—One had
1 3 2
not wanted to see the accident because it was so horrible.

22.4. Whenever the *zu* construction is accompanied by auxiliaries, the auxiliary will always appear after the *zu,* and it will be translated first, while the verb appearing before the *zu* will be translated second. Here are examples:

Es ist unangenehm, nicht *schlafen* zu *können*—It is unpleasant not to be able to sleep.
Das Kind weckt die Katze, anstatt sie *liegen* zu *lassen*—The child awakens the cat, instead of letting it lie (sleep).
Lange Zeit hatte Siddhartha das Leben der Welt gelebt, ohne ihm *anzugehören*—For a long time, Siddhartha had lived the life of the world without belonging to it.

22.5. Translate these sentences:

1. Aber es gehört *mehr* Mut *(courage)* dazu, ein *Ende* zu *machen,* als einen neuen *Vers:* das wissen alle Ärzte und Dichter. (Nietzsche)
2. *Lerne* Schweigen! Leben und Tod hängen davon ab.
3. Lob *(praise)* ist leichter zu erlangen *(attain)* als zu erhalten.
4. Vorschläge gehen mit der Sonne auf und nieder.
5. Wir kamen sofort und *brachen* die Tür *auf.* Der *Mann lag* tot auf dem Fußboden. Er hatte eine Schuß*wunde* im Kopf und eine *Pistole* in der Hand. Es schien ein *klarer* Fall von *Selbstmord.*
6. Vor vielen Jahren hatte Fräulein Meier Schauspielerin werden wollen, aber ihre Mutter war dagegen.
7. Wie kein anderer Künstler seiner *Epoche* hat Paul Klee mit einer herben (harsh) *Intimität* das Wesentliche unserer Innen- und Außenwelt erfaßt. (Note that there is a dash after *Innen* because it also goes with *Welt: Innenwelt)*

8. Nur Gott sieht die geheimsten Gedanken. Aber warum sollen diese so wichtig sein? Manche sind wichtig, nicht alle. Und müssen alle Menschen sie für wichtig halten? (Wittgenstein)
9. (An optional, challenger sentence)
   In diesem Sinn hat der dionysische *(Dionysian)* Mensch Ähnlichkeit mit Hamlet: *beide* haben einmal einen wahren Blick in das Wesen *(essence)* der *Dinge* getan *(taken),* sie haben erkannt, und es ekelt *(disgusts)* sie zu handeln; denn ihre Handlung kann nichts am ewigen Wesen der Dinge ändern, sie empfinden *(perceive)* es lächerlich oder schmachvoll *(humiliating),* daß ihnen zugemutet wird *(is expected),* die *Welt,* die aus den Fugen ist *(that is out of joint),* wieder einzurichten *(to fix, to set right).* Die Erkenntnis tötet das Handeln, zum Handeln gehört das Umschleiertsein *(veil—literally: being veiled)* durch die Illusion—das ist die Hamletlehre. (Nietzsche—*Die Geburt der Tragödie*)

Vocabulary

ab-hängen von—to depend on
die **Ähnlichkeit** (-en)—resemblance
* **ändern**—to change
auf-brechen—to break open
auf-gehen (i)—to rise
die **Außenwelt**—external world
der **Blick** (-es, -e)—look, glance
dazu-gehören—to take
depremiert—depressed
* der **Dichter** (-s, -)—writer, poet
* **einmal**—once
ein-richten—to adjust, to fix
ekeln—to disgust
empfinden—to perceive
erfassen—to seize, grasp
erhalten—to keep, to preserve
* **erkennen**—to recognize
die **Erkenntnis** (-sse)—recognition
erlangen—to attain
ewig—eternal
* der **Fall**—case, instance
der **Fußboden**—floor
* der **Gedanke** (-ns, -n)—thought
geheim—secret
* **halten für**—to consider
* **handeln** (i)—to act
die **Handlung**—action
lächerlich—laughable
* **die Lehre** (-n)—doctrine, teaching
das **Lob** (-es)—praise
* **manche**—some
nieder-gehen (i)—to set
der **Schauspieler** (-s, -)—actor
schmachvoll—disgraceful, humiliating
* **scheinen**—to seem
die **Schußwunde**—shot wound
schweigen (i)—to be quiet
der **Sinn** (-es, -e)—meaning, sense
der **Vers** (-es, -e)—verse
* **warum**—why
das **Wesen** (-s, -)—essence
wesentlich—essential
* **wieder**—again

22.6. Verb Placement Practice (all of these sentences begin with a prepositional phrase so you must put the verb elsewhere in your sentences; the vocabulary is deliberately repetitive and easy):

1. In einem Park hörte ein Freund der Frau mit vielen Katzen die schönen Lieder der Vögel.
2. In einem Park hörte ein Mann die schönen Lieder der Frau mit vielen Katzen.
3. In einem Park gab ein Freund der Frau einem Kind einen Apfel.
4. In einem Park gab ein Freund einer Frau einen Bonbon.
5. In einem Park gab ein Vater seinen Kindern einige Bonbons.
6. In einen Park wollte ein Vater mit vielen Kindern gehen.
7. In einen Park ist ein Mann mit seinen Kindern gegangen.
8. In einem Park gab eine Frau einem Kind einen ihrer Bonbons.
9. In einem Park gab eine Frau einem ihrer Freunde einen Bonbon.
10. In einem Park konnte eine Frau mit vielen Kindern die Lieder der Vögel hören.
11. In einem Park hat eine Frau jeden Tag mit ihren Kindern gespielt.
12. In einem Park wird eine Frau ihren Freunden eine Geschichte erzählen.
13. In einem Park sind nur zwei Frauen zu sehen.
14. In einem Park singt die Frau mit vielen Kindern ein Lied.
15. Vor einem Jahr ging der Freund der Frau oft in den Park.
16. Drei Jahre lang wohnte ein Student mit vielen Büchern in einer großen Stadt.

Reading Selection: *Die zehn Jungfrauen* (Matthäus 25.1–13) If you don't wish to use a dictionary, vocabulary for this section is given in Appendix K.

Das Himmelreich wird gleich zehn Jungfrauen sein, die *(who)* ihre *Lampen* nahmen und ausgingen, dem *Bräutigam* zu begegnen *(to meet the bridegroom).*

Aber fünf unter ihnen waren töricht *(foolish),* und fünf waren klug.

Die Törichten nahmen ihre Lampen, aber sie nahmen kein *Öl* mit *(with them).*

Die Klugen aber nahmen Öl in ihren Gefäßen *(vessels)* samt *(together with)* ihren Lampen.

Weil sich der Bräutigam verspätete *(was delayed),* wurden alle schläfrig, und sie schliefen ein.

Zur Mitternacht aber hörte man ein Geschrei: Seht, der Bräutigam kommt; geht, ihm entgegen!

Dann standen die Jungfrauen alle auf und schmückten *(trimmed)* ihre Lampen.

Die Törichten aber sprachen zu den Klugen: Gebt uns von eurem Öl, denn unsre Lampen verlöschen *(are going out).*

Da antworteten die Klugen und sprachen: Nein, das Öl reicht nicht für uns

und für euch; geht aber hin zu den Krämern *(merchants)* und kauft für euch selbst.

Und als sie hingingen, zu kaufen, kam der Bräutigam; und sie, die *(who)* bereit waren, gingen mit ihm hinein zur Hochzeit *(wedding);* und die Tür wurde *(was)* verschlossen.

Zuletzt kamen auch die anderen Jungfrauen und sprachen: Herr, Herr, tue uns auf!

Er antwortete aber und sprach: Wahrlich, ich sage euch, ich kenne euch nicht.

Darum wachet; denn ihr wißt weder Tag noch Stunde, in welcher des Menschen Sohn kommen wird.

23

Dependent Clauses (Part I)

A dependent clause is one that cannot function alone as a complete sentence. It can begin with a common **subordinating conjunction** (*because, although, that, if, when, after, while, since*), with an **interrogative** functioning as a subordinating conjunction (*whoever, what, how, where, why*), or with a **relative pronoun** functioning as a subordinating conjunction (*who, whom, that, which*). You should memorize these conjunctions, as they provide useful clues concerning where to break your sentences up.

23.1. Verb placement in dependent clauses

In German sentences that contain only an independent clause, the verb always appears in "second" place. Examples are:

Große Fluten *sind* Gottes Ruten—Large floods *are* God's rods.
Ein hungriger Magen *ist* ein schlechter Ratgeber—A hungry stomach *is* a poor advisor.

In all dependent clauses, in contrast, the verb appears at the ***end*** of the German clause:

Es mag wahr sein, *daß* große Fluten Gottes Ruten *sind*—It may be true *that* large floods *are* God's rods.

23.2. *Whenever you have a dependent clause in German, the verb and any auxiliaries will appear at the end of the clause; the dependent clause will always be separated from*

the main clause by a comma, even when this does not occur in English. You might also wish to look at Chapter 35, in which the use of commas is explained.

23. 3. Here are some examples of subordinating conjunctions:

Wenn du vor dem Frühstück **singst,** wirst du vor der Nacht weinen—**If** you **sing** before breakfast, you will cry before nightfall.
Als Zarathustra dreißig Jahre alt **war,** verließ er seine Heimat und ging in das Gebirge—**When** Zarathustra **was** thirty years old, he left his home and went to the mountains.

Note that if there are auxiliaries in the dependent clause, they will appear at the end of the clause, *after* the infinitive or participle:

Überquere die Brücke nicht, **bevor** du sie **erreicht hast**—Don't cross the bridge **before** you **have reached** it.
Ich weiß nicht, **wie** ich den Kindern **entkommen kann**—I don't know **how** I **can escape** from the children.

However, if the perfect tense of a modal is used, the auxiliary appears before the other verbs at the end of the clause:
Was ich von der Geschichte des armen Werthers nur ***habe*** **auffinden können,** habe ich mit Fleiß gesammelt . . .—What I have only been able to discover of the story of poor Werther, I have gathered with diligence (Goethe)

23.4. The key to translating a dependent clause

1. First identify the dependent clause:
   (a) commas will always separate it from the main clause,
   (b) it will always begin with a subordinating conjunction,
   (c) and the verb will always be at the end of the clause.

2. Place the verb at the end of the clause along with any adverbs which modify it after the **complete** subject (which may have prepositional phrases) and before any existing object. **This is crucial for correct translation.** Once you develop the habit of doing this, dependent clauses will seem quite manageable. But make sure you know exactly what the subject is before you move the verb. And remember to shift only the verb and any adverbs modifying it. **Then the rest of the clause will remain intact.**

Here are some examples:

Wenn ***der April*** /wie ein Löwe ***kommt,*** so geht er wie ein Lamm—If *April comes*
S V
like a lion, it leaves like a lamb.

Ich habe oft über das Pech nachdenken müssen, daß ***der interessanteste deutsche***
S
Bühnenfigur /der Teufel ***ist*** (Friedrich Dürrenmatt)—I have often had to think
V
about our bad luck that *the most interesting German stage figure is* the devil [Mephistophiles in *Faust*].

Wenn ***der Teufel*** /Heilige ***fangen will,*** so steckt er Heilige an die Angel—If *the devil*
S V
wants to capture saints, then he uses saints as bait. (Literally: . . . then he puts saints on the fishhook)

3. If the the first word of the clause is a subordinating conjunction (*wenn—when, als— when, daß— that, da—since, weil—because*), the verb will be at the end of the clause. In these cases, you often will need **to retrieve the verb** and place it earlier in the clause. As usual, correct identification of case endings is crucial for deciding where the subject ends and the object begins. (Note: N is for nominative, A is for accusative, G is for genitive)

Wir wollten erfahren, wie **wir (N)** religiöse (A) Zusammenkünfte in den Hinterzimmern billiger (G) Restaurants *halten könnten*—We wanted to find out how we *could hold* religious meetings in the back rooms of cheap restaurants.

Es gibt Parallelfälle, wo **Odysseus (N) in anderen Situationen innerer (G) Erregung** /seine (A) Listen für einen Augenblick *vergißt*—There are parallel cases in which Odysseus in other situations of inner excitement *forgets* his intrigues for a moment.

If the entire sentence begins with a dependent clause, the verb will be the first word of the following clause; this verb must be tossed up, and placed ***after*** *the subject in its respective clause:*

Als der Dichter /in der Stadt Bern *war, sah* er / den Bärengraben—When the poet *was* in the city of Bern, he *saw* the bear pits.

Als große Teuerung /ins Land *kam, konnte* er [der Vater von Hänsel und Gretel] / auch das tägliche Brot *nicht mehr schaffen*—When great famine *came* to the land, he *could no longer procure* even the daily bread.

23.5. Here are common subordinating conjunctions:

The first group is a list that can function **only** as conjunctions. They are:

bevor	before
daß	that
ob	if, whether
weil	because
wenn	when, if

Wenn will mean *when* or *whenever* whenever it refers to a temporal action:

Wenn der Briefträger ihr ein Gedicht schreibt, wird Fräulein Meier sehr glücklich— *Whenever* the mailman writes her a poem, Fräulein Meier becomes quite happy.

Wenn will mean ***if*** if the verb is subjunctive (which will be examined in Chapter 31) or if the first phrase of the next clause is ***so*** or ***dann:***

Wenn die Armut zur Tür eingeht, ***so*** fliegt die Liebe zum Fenster hinaus—*If* poverty comes in the door, *then* love flies out the window.
Wenn einer, was er tut, nicht muß, ***dann*** tut er es mit Hochgenuß—*If* one does not have to do what he is doing, *then* he does it with pleasure.

Otherwise, there are no other ways to determine whether ***wenn*** means *if* or *when,* as long as ***wenn*** refers to the future. For example, "Wenn sie bei ihrem Freund ist, ist die Studentin glücklich" can be translated as "*When* she is with her friend, the student is happy," or "If she is with her friend, the student is happy."

23.6. The following subordinating conjunctions also have other definitions when used as a different part of speech. Therefore, be particularly careful when you encounter them. The following can be recognized as subordinating conjunctions when:

1. they begin the clause, **and**
2. the verb appears at the end of the clause.

These conjunctions are:

als—when* (after a comparative, it means *than)*
bis—until (as a preposition, it also means *until)*
da—since* (as an adverb, it means *there, then)*
damit—so that (as a *da*-compound, it means *with it)*
nachdem—after* (as an adverb, it means *afterwards)*
während—while (as a preposition, it means *during)*

* See also Troublesome Words, Chapter 36.

Here are examples of each of these conjunctions:

Note that ***als*** as a subordinating conjunction when the verb is in the past should be translated as *when* and **not** as *as.*

Als der Briefträger Fräulein Meier besuchte, photographierte er ihre Katzen—*When* the mailman visited Fräulein Meier, he photographed her cats.
Manchmal schreibt der Professor Gedichte, *bis* er einschläft—Sometimes the professor writes poetry *until* he falls asleep.
Da Fräulein Meier nicht zu Hause war, suchte der Briefträger sie in der Bibliothek—*Since* Fräulein Meier was not at home, the mailman looked for her at the library.
Der Student studiert Finnisch jeden Abend, *damit* er finnische Philosophie lesen kann—The student studies Finnish every evening *so that* he will be able to read Finnish philosophy.
Nachdem er seinen Schicksalsschlägen glücklich entronnen war, starb er—*After* he had luckily escaped his blows of fate, he died.
Während die zwei um ein Ei zanken, steckt es der dritte ein—*While* the two quarrel over an egg, the third one is pocketing it.

23.7. Other subordinating conjunctions are:

auch wenn—even if
ehe—before
obschon and ***obwohl***—although
sobald—as soon as
solange—as long as

23.8. Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of verb placement:

1. Was nützt es, wenn die *Kuh* viel *Milch* gibt, wenn sie nachher den Milchkrug *(milk jug)* umwirft *(knocks over)*?
2. Der *Affe* bleibt ein Affe, obwohl er eine goldene Kette *(chain) anhat.* (In other words, "once an ape, always an ape.")
3. Man muß *Heu* machen, während die *Sonne scheint.*
4. Wenn Gewalt *(force)* kommt, so geht das Recht auf Krücken *(crutches).*
5. Wirf die alten *Schuhe* nicht weg, ehe du *neue* hast.
6. Nachdem der Vater des Briefträgers Fräulein Meier ein ganzes Jahr gekannt hatte, mußte er gestehen, sie sei *(was)* wenigstens *amüsant* und gutherzig.
7. Solange ein Narr schweigt, hält man ihn für klug.
8. Manche Leute rennen dem Glücke nach und wissen nicht, daß sie es zu Hause haben.
9. Wenn zwei auf einem Pferd *reiten,* muß einer *hinten* sitzen.
10. Denn das war Rilkes schmerzliche Erfahrung, daß in dieser gegenwärtigen Wirklichkeit die Kräfte des Herzens nicht mehr die *Dinge* beleben, daß *Welt* und Leben immer geringer werden. (Fritz Martini)
11. Wittgenstein gebrauchte den Ausdruck, "Das ist scheußlich", wenn er in höchster Auffregung war, seine *Fingernägel* in die Stirnhaut (forhead) grub oder auf sein Taschentuch (handkerchief) *biß.* (A former pupil of Wittgenstein describes what it was like to have him as a school teacher.) (What case is *Fingernägel* in? How do you know?)
12. Wenn ein *Schaf* über den Graben setzt (leaps), werden die übrigen *folgen.*

(Note that the following three sentences are a mini-drama.)

13. Sobald wir an die *Moral* glauben, verurteilen *(condemn)* wir das Dasein. (Nietzsche)
14. Als er das *hörte,* wurde der Briefträger wütend *(furious).*
15. Da der Briefträger wütend war, wollte Fräulein Meier nicht mit ihm in den Zoo gehen.

Vocabulary

** **als**—when
an-haben—to have on
* **auch wenn**—even if
die **Aufregung**—excitement
der **Ausdruck**—expression
beleben—to animate
** **da**—since, because
* **damit**—so that
* das **Dasein** (-s)—existence
* **daß**—that
* **ehe**—before
die **Erfahrung** (-en)—experience
gebrauchen—to use
gegenwärtig—present
gering—negligible
gestehen—to confess

die **Gewalt** (-en) — power
der **Graben**—ditch
graben, grub, gegraben—to dig
gutherzig—good-natured
** **halten für**—to consider
heilen—to heal
das **Heu** (-s, -) — hay
hinten — behind
* **kennen**—to know
* die **Kraft** (¨e) — power, force, strength
die **Krücke** (-n) — crutch
** **manche**—some
die **Moral** (-) — morality
* **nachdem**—after
* **nachher**—afterwards
nach-rennen (i) — to pursue
der **Narr** (-en, -en)—fool
* **nicht mehr**—no longer
nützen—to be of use
* **ob** — if, whether
* **obwohl**—although
das **Pferd** (-es, -e) — horse
* das **Recht** — justice
reiten — to ride
* **scheinen** (i) — to seem, to shine
scheußlich — dreadful
schmerzlich—painful
sobald—as soon as
* **solange**—as long as
übrig — remaining
um-werfen—to knock over
verurteilen—to condemn
* **während**—while
weg-werfen—to throw away
* **weil**—because
wenigstens—at least
** **wenn**—if, when
* die **Wirklichkeit** (-en) — reality
wütend—furious

24

Dependent Clauses (Part II)—Subordinating Conjunctions: *Wer, Was, Wie, Wo, Warum*

The interrogatives ***wer, was, wie, wo,*** and ***warum*** also can be used as subordinating conjunctions. Dependent clauses beginning with any of these interrogatives are translated like any other subordinating conjunction, with the dependent verb being placed at the end of the clause.

24.1. Wer

Wer can be translated either as *he who* or as *whoever.* Examples are:

Wer nichts im Glaubenssäcklein *hat,* bekommt eine dreckige Himmelfahrt—*He who* has nothing in his little sack of faith will have a filthy ascension.
Wer nicht *arbeiten will,* soll auch nichts essen—*Whoever* does not want to work should also eat nothing.

Because *wer* is always nominative, the verb will immediately follow it in your English translation.

In the few cases when *wem* or *wen* is used, the verb will be placed after any noun functioning as the subject. Here is an example:

Wem *das Schaf* gehört, dem gehört auch die Wolle—To whom the sheep belongs, to him the wool belongs, too. (Or: The wool belongs to whomever the sheep belongs.)

24.2. Was

Was will usually (but not always) be the subject of the clause when it functions as a subordinating conjunction.

Was will be translated as *what* or *whatever* when it does not have any specific antecedent. Here are examples:

Was nicht ist, kann noch werden—*Whatever* does not exist can still come into being.
Was den Käfern entflieht, fressen die Raupen—The caterpillars eat *whatever* escapes the beetles.

Was should be translated as *which* or *that which* when it refers to the thought of a previous clause. Here are examples:

Heute war das Kind pünktlich, *was* seiner Mutter gefiel—Today the child was punctual, *which* pleased his mother.
Was man gern tut, kommt einem nicht schwer an—*That which* one likes to do is not difficult for one to do.

Moreover, there are three pronouns that take the pronoun *was,* and in this context, *was* should be translated as *that.* The pronouns are: *alles (everything), etwas (something),* and *nichts (nothing).* Here are examples of each:

Fast *alles, was* wir lernen, ist doch nützlich—Almost *everything that* we learn is nevertheless useful.
Die Studentin erklärte dem Professor *etwas, was* er nicht wußte—The (female) student explained *something* to the professor *that* he did not know.
Das Kind nimmt *nichts, was* ihm nicht gehört—The child takes *nothing that* does not belong to him. (Or: does not take *anything that*. . .)

24.3. Wie

Wie as a subordinating conjunction generally will be translated as *as,* but it also sometimes will be translated as *how.* Generally, the context will indicate how it should be translated. Examples are:

Wie du mir, so ich dir!—As you are to me, so I am to you!
Jeder Bär tanzt, *wie* er es versteht—Every bear dances *as* he understands it (the music).
Wer Unglück gekostet hat, weiß, *wie* es anderen schmeckt—Whoever has sampled misfortune, knows *how* it tastes to others.

24.4. Wo

Wo can be translated either as *where* (when referring to a place) or as *when* (when referring to a time). Here are examples:

Wo der Zaun am niedrigsten ist, dort springt der Teufel hinüber— *Where* the fence is the lowest, the devil springs over it.
Wo es an Liebe mangelt, erkennt man alle Fehler— *When* love is missing, one notices all mistakes.

24.5. Warum

Warum can be translated as *why:* Fräulein Meier weiß nicht, *warum* ihre Katzen keinen Thunfisch fressen wollen—Fräulein Meier doesn't know *why* her cats don't want to eat tuna.

24.6. Translate these sentences:

1. Wer viel redet, muß viel wissen, oder *lügen.*
2. Wer in *Hoffnung* lebt, *tanzt* ohne Musik.
3. Wenn der Teufel krank ist, will er *Mönch* werden; wenn er gesund ist, bleibt er, wie er ist.
4. Der Gesunde weiß nicht, wie *reich* er ist.
5. Was aus Armut geschieht, soll man leicht *vergeben.*
6. Was der Himmel schickt, ist der Erde ein Segen *(blessing)*—auch Blitz und Donner.
7. Man *muß* die Leute nehmen, wie sie sind.
8. Alles, was gegen das Gewissen ist, hat *harte* Stacheln.
9. *Am längsten* behält man das, was man in der Jugend gelernt hat.
10. Wer Fräulein Meier liebt, liebt auch ihre Katzen.
11. Wer nichts an die Angel *(fishhook) steckt,* fängt nichts.
12. Was dir lieb ist, ist mir nicht zuwider *(distasteful).*
13. Wer mit dem Teufel essen will, muß einen *langen* Löffel *(spoon)* haben.
14. Als sie erfuhr, daß *Sneewittchen* noch lebte, ging die *Stiefmutter* in eine ganz verborgene (hidden) einsame Kammer (room) und *machte* da einen giftigen

(poisonous), giftigen *Apfel.* Äußerlich sah er schön aus . . .; aber wer ein Stückchen (little piece) davon aß, mußte sterben.

15. Weisheit ist besser als *Perlen,* und alles, was man *wünschen* mag, kann ihr nicht gleichen. (Proverbs)
16. Wer anderen eine *Grube* gräbt, *fällt* selbst *hinein.* (What is the case of *anderen*? Is it singular or plural?)
17. Wer mit Ungeheuern kämpft, mag zusehen, daß er dabei nicht zum Ungeheuer wird. Und wenn du lange in einen Abgrund *blickst,* blickt der Abgrund auch in dich hinein. (Nietzsche)
18. Vielleicht weiß ich am *besten,* warum der Mensch *allein* lacht; er allein leidet so *tief,* daß er das Lachen erfinden mußte. (Nietzsche) (How do you know that *allein* modifies *Mensch* rather than *lacht*?)

Vocabulary

der **Abgrund** (-s, ¨-e)—abyss
** **allein**—alone, only
* **alles**—everything
die **Armut**—poverty
* **aussehen**—to look, appear
äußerlich—outwardly
behalten—to retain
* **blicken** (i)—to look
der **Blitz**—lightning
der **Donner** (-s, -)—thunder
einsam—lonely
* **erfahren**—to discover
erfinden—to invent
* **etwas**—something
fangen—to capture
fassen—to receive
** **geschehen** (i)—to happen, to occur
giftig—poisonous
* **gleichen** (i)—to compare with
graben—to dig
hinein-blicken (i)—to look into
hinein-fallen (i)—to fall into
die **Jugend**—youth
kämpfen (i)—to fight, struggle
krank—sick
lieb—dear
* **lügen** (i)—to lie, fib
* **nichts**—nothing
die **Perle** (-n)—pearl
* **reden**—to speak
schicken—to send
* **selbst**—himself
der **Stachel** (-s, -n)—thorn
stecken—to stick
** **sterben**—to die
das **Ungeheuer** (-s, -)—monster
vergeben—to forgive
** **warum**—why
** **was**—what, whatever, which, that
* die **Weisheit**—wisdom
** **wer**—who, whoever, he who
** **wie**—as, how
** **wo**—where, when
* **wünschen**—to wish
zu-sehen—watch, see to it
zuwider—distasteful

25

Dependent Clauses (Part III) —Relative Clauses

One of the most common forms of subordinate clauses is introduced by relative pronouns. A relative pronoun is one that refers to some noun which goes before it, and it also connects two clauses which together form a sentence. Here are all the possibilities.

25.1. Nominative relative pronouns

Der Wolf, *der (masculine)* den Jäger tötete, war hungrig—The wolf *who* killed the hunter was hungry.
Heute ist ein junges Mädchen gekommen, *das (neuter)* mit mir sprechen wollte—Today a young woman came, *who* wanted to speak with me.
Die Alte war eine Hexe, *die (feminine)* den Kindern auflauerte—The old woman was a witch *who* lay in wait for the children.
Die Jungfrauen, *die (plural)* bereit waren, gingen mit dem Bräutigam zur Hochzeit—The virgins *who* were prepared, went with the bridegroom to the wedding.

25.2. Accusative relative pronouns

Morgen fliegt der Professor, *den (masculine)* ich kenne, nach Genf—Tomorrow the professor *whom* I know will fly to Geneva.

Das Kind, *das (neuter)* der Wolf fraß, war Rotkäppchen—The girl *whom* the wolf ate was Little Red Riding Hood.
Die Frau, *die (feminine)* der Mann kennenlernen wollte, war eine bekannte Bürgermeisterin—The woman *whom* the man wanted to meet was a famous mayor.
Die Jungfrauen, *die (plural)* der Bräutigam nahm, waren klug—The virgins *whom* the bridegroom took, were clever.

25.3. Dative relative pronouns

Der Mann, *dem (masculine)* die Frau einen Apfelkuchen backte, war der Briefträger—The man *for whom* the woman baked an apple cake was the mailman.
Das Kind, *dem (neuter)* die Stiefmutter einen giftigen, giftigen Apfel gab, war Sneewittchen—The child *to whom* the stepmother gave a poisonous, poisonous apple was Snow White.
Die Frau, *der (feminine)* das Schulkind einen Apfel gab, ist Lehrerin—The woman *to whom* the school child gave an apple is a teacher.
Es gibt doch viele Menschen, *denen (plural)* der Name Fritz Martini unbekannt ist—There are nevertheless many people for whom the name Fritz Martini is unfamiliar.

25.4. Genitive relative pronouns

Note that these pronouns attach themselves to nouns that are in nominative, accusative, or dative case, and you can determine the case of the noun to which they are attached ***only*** by process of elimination:

Hier ist der Student, *dessen (masculine nominative)* Ideen mir wichtig scheinen—Here is the student *whose* ideas seem important to me.
Wo ist das Kind, *dessen (neuter accusative)* Spielzeug ich gefunden habe?—Where is the child *whose* toy I have found?
Die Frau, *deren (feminine dative)* Freundin der Briefträger ein Gedicht schrieb, ist klug—The woman to whose friend the mailman wrote a poem is clever.
Die Professoren, *deren (plural nominative)* Vorlesungen interessant sind, lehren gern—The professors *whose* lectures are interesting like to teach.

25.5. Note that the gender of the relative pronoun is determined by the noun to which it relates, and the case of the relative pronoun is determined by its place in the subordinate clause. The relative pronoun does not have to be in the same case as the noun to which it relates:

Der Mann *(nominative), den (accusative)* die Frau liebte, war Dichter—The man *whom* the woman loved was a poet.

25.6. Relative pronouns can also sometimes appear after a preposition:

Keine andere soll meine Gemahlin werden als die, an *deren* Fuß dieser goldene Schuh paßt—No one else should be my wife than the one on whose foot this golden shoe fits. *(Aschenputtel—Cinderella)*
Geld ist eine Braut, um *die* man tanzt—Money is a bride around *which* one dances.
Abraham ging an den Ort, von *dem* Gott ihm gesagt hat—Abraham went to the place of *which* God had told him.

25.7. Here is a chart

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	der	das	die	die
accusative	den	das	die	die
genitive	***dessen**	***dessen**	***deren**	***deren**
dative	dem	dem	der	***denen**

*The declensions of the nominative, accusative and dative (with the exception of the dative plural) relative pronouns are the same as the declensions of the definite article. Therefore the only new pronouns you need to learn are the genitive pronouns **dessen** (masculine and neuter) and **deren** (feminine and plural) and the plural dative pronoun **denen**.

25.8. Tips for translating relative clauses

In any sentence, a relative clause can be identified because:

1. it will be set apart from the main clause by commas,
2. the clause will begin with a relative pronoun,
3. the last word at the end of a clause will be a verb.

In order to translate the relative clause correctly, first translate the relative pronoun, making certain you know which noun in the main clause it relates to, and which case it is in.

25.9. If the relative pronoun is the subject of the clause (it must be *der, das,* or *die*):

1. use it as the first word of your translation,
2. translate the verb at the end of the clause (as well as any adverbs modifying it), and place it next to the subject pronoun,
3. finally translate the rest of the clause word for word.

Here are examples:

Fräulein Meiers Lieblingstier ist ein Elefant, *der* immer sehr träge **ist**—Fräulein Meier's favorite animal is an elephant *that* **is** always very sluggish.
Der Mann, *der* die Freunde vorgestellt **hatte,** war gleich gegangen—The man *who* **had introduced** the friends had left immediately.

Before you pick up the verb in the dependent clause, also make sure you are aware of any prepositional phrases which might go with the subject, and place the verb after them and before the object. (I have placed a / to indicate where the subject ends and the object begins.)

Faust war ein Drama, *das* durch alle Schuld des Lebens / zur transzendierenden Befreiung **führte**—*Faust* was a drama *that* through all guilt of life **led** to a transcendent liberation. (Fritz Martini, abridged)

25.10. If the relative pronoun is not the subject of the clause *(den, dem, denen):*

1. still use it as the first word of your translation,
2. then translate the subject (which generally will follow the relative pronoun),
3. translate the verb at the end of the clause and place it next to the subject,
4. finally translate the rest of the clause word for word.

Here are examples:

Wer ist der Mann, *den* Fräulein Meier / vor vielen Jahren **liebte**?—Who is the man, *whom* Fräulein Meier loved many years ago?
Schliemann war ein ziemlich nüchterner Mensch, *dem* Dichtung als solche / unverständlich **war**—Schliemann was a rather sober person *for whom* poetry as such was incomprehensible. (C.R. Goedsche)
Die Kinder, *denen* die Hexe / ein Haus baute, waren Hänsel und Gretel—The children *for whom* the witch built a house were Hänsel and Gretel.

25.11. Note that the pronouns *das* and *die* can be either nominative or accusative, and you need to determine from other clues which case they are in:

Die Frau, *die* / **den** Mann liebte, war glücklich—The woman *who* loved the man was happy.
Die Frau, *die* **der** Mann / liebte, war glücklich—The woman *whom* the man loved was happy.
Das Mädchen, *das* / **den** Briefträger grüßte, war die Patentochter Fräulein Meiers—The girl who greeted the mailman was the goddaughter of Fräulein Meier.
Das Mädchen, *das* **der** Briefträger/ grüßte, war die Patentochter Fräulein Meiers—The girl whom the mailman greeted was the goddaughter of Fräulein Meier.

25.12. Although *der* will usually be masculine nominative, it can occasionally be feminine dative:

Der Zug, *der* / pünktlich ankam, fuhr nach Berlin- The train that arrived promptly went to Berlin.
Die Frau, *der* der Briefträger / einen Roman von Margaret Drabble schenkte, war Fräulein Meier—The woman to whom the mailman gave a novel by Margaret Drabble was Fräulein Meier.

25.13. Genitive relative pronouns will be attached to nouns which can be in nominative, accusative, or dative case. If they are attached to nominative nouns, they are to be translated like the sentences in 25.9:

Mit Neid denkt [der Dichter] an den Maler, *dessen* Sprache—die Farben *(nominative)*—/vom Nordpol bis nach Afrika gleich verständlich zu allen Menschen spricht (Hermann Hesse)—The poet thinks with envy of the painter **whose language**—colors—speaks to all people, from the North Pole to Africa in a way immediately comprehensible.

If the genitive relative pronouns are attached to dative or accusative nouns, they are to be translated like the sentences in 25.10.
Kafka, *dessen* Romane *(accusative)* der Student *(nominative)* / gern liest, hat einen eigentumlichen Sinn für Humor—Kafka, whose novels the student likes to read, has a unique sense of humor.
Die Studentin, *deren* Freund *(dative)* wir *(nominative)* / eine E-mail *(accusative)* schickten, studiert Erdkunde—The student, to whose friend we sent an e-mail. studies geography.

25.14. Each relative clause is a unit unto itself as if it were set off in parentheses and having its own subject and its own verb. Therefore, you may wish to isolate it from the rest of the sentence by placing brackets around it so that it will not distract you from locating the subject and the verb of the main clause. Note how commas function as breaks. Here is a sentence that contains two relative clauses: In Übereinstimmung mit den großen Werken der expressionistischen Malerei, *deren* Schöpfern ich/ in jener Zeit [the 1920's] in Dresden *begegnete*, war es der Tanz, *der* /mein Verständnis von Religion *tief beeinflußte* (Paul Tillich)—In agreement with the great works of expressionistic painting *whose creators I met* at that time in Dresden, it was dance, *which deeply influenced* my understanding of religion.

25.15. Translate, noting the gender and case of each relative pronoun:

1. Die *Kühe*, die am *meisten* brüllen, *geben* die wenigste *Milch*.
2. Sie waren *Freunde*, denen *man* die Wahrheit *sprechen konnte*.
3. Das *Feuer*, das mich nicht *verbrennt*, lösche ich nicht.
4. Zeit ist der *Stoff*, aus dem das Leben gemacht ist.
5. Ehre *folgt* dem Menschen, der sie *flieht*, und flieht den [Menschen], der sie jagt.
6. Es gibt keine ärgeren Tauben als die, die nicht *hören* wollen.
7. Das *elektrische* Licht beschien das Gesicht einer Frau, deren breite Züge von einer *dicken* Schicht *(layer)* billiger Schminke (make-up) *bedeckt* waren.
8. Die *erste Hälfte* des 19. Jahrhunderts steht stark *unter* dem Eindruck der Enttäuschung der *politischen* Freiheitsbewegung seit 1815, die die mißlungenen *Revolutionen* von 1830 und 1848 noch verschärften. (Fritz Martini)
9. Der *größte Schritt* ist der aus der Tür.
10. Weh dem *Land*, dessen *König* ein Kind ist.
11. Wir alle tragen Masken, und es kommt der Zeitpunkt, an *dem* wir sie nicht mehr abnehmen können, ohne dabei Stücke unserer Haut mit abzutrennen. (Andre Berthiaume)
12. E. T. A. Hoffmann war ein Artist des Unheimlichen, der bewußt seine Traumbilder auskostete und sie zugleich *ironisch* spiegelte *(portrayed, mirrored)*. (Fritz Martini)
13. Es gibt gewiß keine Sprache auf der *Welt*, die so *systemlos* ist, so schlüpfrig, um sie zu fassen. (Mark Twain about German)
14. Nicholas erlebte zum erstenmal die *Reaktion* eines *jungen* Künstlers, der seine Arbeit einer *kritischen* Öffentlichkeit übergibt, und vielleicht war es schwieriger für ihn, weil diese Öffentlichkeit aus *drei jungen* Arbeitern bestand, die noch nie durch eine Gemäldegallerie *(art gallery)* gegangen waren.
15. (A challenging sentence, to say the least!) Herzog Wilhelm von Breisach, der seit seiner heimlichen Verbindung *(alliance)* mit einer Gräfin *(countess) namens*

Katharina von Heersbruck aus dem *Hause* Alt-Hüningen, die *unter* seinem Rang *(rank)* zu sein schien, mit seinem *Halbbruder,* dem Grafen Jakob dem *Rotbart,* in Feindschaft lebte, *kam* gegen *Ende* des 14. *Jahrhunderts,* als die *Nacht* des heiligen Remigius zu dämmern *begann,* von einer Zusammenkunft zurück. (Kleist)

Vocabulary

abnehmen—to take off
abtrennen—to separate
arg—wicked
aus-kosten—to enjoy to the fullest
bedecken—to cover
bestehen (aus)—to consist of
bewußt—consciously
billig—cheap
breit—broad
brüllen (i)—to bellow, moo
dämmern (i)—to grow dark
* **dabei**—in so doing, thereby
* **ehe**—before
die **Ehre** (-n)—honor
der **Eindruck** (-es, ¨e)—impression
die **Enttäuschung** (-en)—disappointment
erleben—to experience
ewig—eternal
fassen—to grasp
die **Feindschaft**—animosity
fliehen—to flee
** **folgen** (i)—to follow
die **Freiheitsbewegung** (-en)—independence movement
* das **Gesicht** (-es, -er)—face
* **gewiß**—certainly
der **Graf** (-en, -en)—count
der **Halbbruder** (-s, ¨)—half-brother
die **Haut**—skin
heilig—holy, saint
heimlich—secret
der **Herzog** (-s, -e)—duke
jagen—to hunt
löschen—to extinguish
mißlungen—unsuccessful
* **namens**—by name of
* **noch nie**—never before
die **Öffentlichkeit**—public
* **ohne . . . zu**—without . . . -ing
** **scheinen** (i)—to seem
die **Schicht** (-en)—layer
schlüpfrig—slippery
der **Schritt** (-s, -e)—step
der **Stoff** (-es, -e)—material
* **seit**—since
spiegeln—to reflect
* **stark**—strong
* **stehen** (i)—to stand, to be
das **Stück** (-es, -e)—piece
taub—deaf
das Traumbild (-es, -er)—vision, illusion
unheimlich—uncanny, unearthly
verbrennen—to burn
verschärfen—to heighten, to intensify
weh—woe to
** **wenig**—little, few
der **Zug** (-es, ¨e)—feature, characteristic
zugleich—at the same time
zurück-kommen (i)—to return
die **Zusammenkunft** (¨e)—meeting

25.16. More verb placement practice

1. Wenn die Katze, die jetzt schläft, hungrig wird, wird sie vielleicht in die Küche laufen.
2. In einem Park, der viele Bäume hatte, hörte ein Mann die schönen Lieder der Vögel.
3. In einem Park gab ein Briefträger, der eine Geliebte hatte, einem Vogel ein Stückchen Brot.
4. In einem Park gab ein Mann, der Schockolade hatte, seiner Geliebten einen seiner Bonbons.
5. In einem Park, in dem viele Kinder spielten, gab es schöne Blumen und Bäume.
6. Oft wollte ein Vater, der zwei Kinder hatte, in einen Park gehen.
7. Vielleicht ist die Mutter, die drei Kinder hatte, mit ihren Kindern in einen Park gegangen.
8. In einem Park sah eine Frau mit drei Kindern, die miteinander spielen wollten, schöne Blumen.
9. In einem Zimmer (room) ist eine Katze, die glücklich auf einem Sofa schläft, zu sehen.
10. In einem Park wird Fräulein Meier mit ihrem Freund, der sehr fleißig ist, ein Lied singen.
11. Vor einem Jahr ging ein Freund einer fleißigen Frau oft in einen Park, der schöne Bäume hatte.
12. Drei Jahre lang wohnte der Student, der viele Sprachen lernen wollte, in einer großen Stadt.

Reading Selection: Aus dem Erdbeben in Chili (Heinrich von Kleist)

(Vocabulary can be found in the humanities vocabulary in Appendix K)

(The following selections are particularly difficult. However, if you work through each sentence carefully, you may find to your surprise and delight that you can actually understand them. Good luck!)

I. Es war am Fronleichnamsfest *(Corpus Christi Festival),* und die feierliche *Prozession* der *Nonnen, welchen* die *Novizen folgten,* nahm eben *(just)* ihren Anfang, als die unglückliche Josephe *(a woman's name)* bei dem Anklang *(ringing)* der Glocken in Mutterwehen *(birth-pangs)* auf den *Stufen* der *Kathedrale* niedersank *(collapsed).*

II. In St. Jago, der Hauptstadt des Königreichs Chili, *stand* gerade *(just)* in dem Augenblick der großen Erderschütterung *(earthquake)* vom *Jahre* 1647, bei

welcher viele *tausend* Menschen ihren Untergang *(demise) fanden,* ein *junger* ... *Spanier namens* Jeronimo Rugera [the father of the child who had just been born in the previous reading passage] an einem Pfeiler *(column)* des Gefängnisses *(prison),* in *welches* man ihn eingesperrt hatte, und wollte sich *(himself—accusative)* erhenken *(hang).*

III. [Jeronimo] *stand* an einem Wandpfeiler *(pilaster)* und befestigte *(fastened)* den Strick *(rope),* der ihn dieser jammervollen *(sorrowful) Welt* entreißen sollte *(was to),* an eine Eisenklammer *(iron clamp),* als plötzlich der *größte* Teil *(part)* der Stadt mit einem Gekrache *(crash) versank* und alles *(this is accusative! Note that "der größte Teil der Stadt" is still the subject of this clause—cf. 21.3),* was Leben atmete, *unter* seinen Trümmern *(ruins) begrub.*

IV. *Hier lag* ein Haufen *(heap)* Erschlagener, hier ächzte *(moaned)* noch eine Stimme unter dem Schutt *(rubbish),* hier schrien Leute von *brennenden* Dächern herab, hier kämpften *(battled)* Menschen und Tiere mit den Wellen *(undulations),* hier war ein mutiger *(courageous)* Retter *(rescuer)* bemüht, zu helfen; hier stand ein anderer, bleich wie der Tod, und streckte *sprachlos* zitternde *(trembling)* Hände zum Himmel.

(However, in the midst of all this destruction, Jeronimo and Josephe, who had been condemned to death prior to the earthquake for producing an illegitimate child, manage to reunite.)

V. Indessen *(in the meantime)* war die schönste *Nacht* herabgestiegen, *voll* wundermilden *(wonderfully mild)* Duftes, so silberglänzend und *still,* wie nur ein Dichter davon träumen mag.

VI. Sie [Jeronimo und Josephe] *fanden* einen prachtvollen *(magnificent)* Granatapfelbaum *(pomegranate tree),* der seine Zweige *voll* duftender *(fragrant) Früchte weit* ausbreitete; und die *Nachtigall* flötete *(whistled)* im Wipfel *(treetop)* ihr wollüstiges *(delightfully pleasant)* Lied.

(While Jeronimo and Josephe don't quite live happily ever after, they at least enjoy a few good moments together.)

26

The Reflexive

A verb is considered reflexive when its subject and object are the same person(s) or thing(s): *Sie* kauft *sich* einen Laptop—*She* buys *herself* a laptop; *Das Kind* wäscht *sich*—*The child* washes *himself.*

26.1. Accusative and dative reflexive pronouns:

Singular	(I, you, he, she, it)	Plural	(we, you, they)
accusative	*mich—myself*	accusative	*uns—ourselves*
dative	*mir—myself*	dative	*uns—ourselves*
accusative	*dich—yourself*	accusative	*euch—yourselves*
dative	*dir—yourself*	dative	*euch—yourselves*
accusative	*sich—himself, herself, itself*	accusative	*sich—themselves, each other*
dative	*sich—himself, herself, itself*	dative	*sich—themselves, each other*

The formal accusative and dative form (yourself, yourselves) is ***sich.*** This is the only time the formal pronoun *(Sie, Ihnen, Sie)* is not capitalized.

The accusative and dative reflexive pronouns are identical for all persons *(du)* except the first person singular (*ich*) and the singular form of the informal you. The most common reflexive pronoun is ***sich.***

26.2. Some meanings which the reflexive may express are:

1. An action done by the subject to itself:

Ich amüsiere *mich*—I amuse *myself.*
Ich sehe *mich* in dem Spiegel—I see *myself* in the mirror.

2. An action done by the subject to itself which also involves an object (in these cases, the dative reflexive pronoun will be used):

Ich kaufe *mir* ein Buch—I buy *myself a* book.
Sie schreibt *sich* eine Liste—She writes *herself a* list.

3. A reciprocal action:

Sie küssen *sich*—They kiss *each other.*
Sie lieben *sich*—They love *each other.*

26.3. Occasionally the reflexive pronoun is used when only the direct object is used in English:

Er nimmt seinen Pudel mit *sich,* wenn er in den Park geht—He takes his poodle with *him* when he goes to the park.
Der Briefträger hat eine Freundin bei *sich*—The mailman has a woman friend with *him.*
But in other cases when ***sich*** is the object of a preposition, it will be translated reflexively, as it would be in English:

Sie weiß viel über ***sich***—She knows a lot about *herself.*
Sie tun das für ***sich***—They do that for *themselves.*

26.4. Reflexive pronouns also are used in German when English uses possessive pronouns instead:

Er wäscht *sich die* Hände (literally: he washes *to himself the* hands)—He washes *his* hands.

To understand how to translate this construction correctly, consider the following hypothetical sentences:

I wash to myself my hands. Ich wasche mir meine Hände.

The sentences are grammatically incorrect in both languages because they contain an unnecessary extra indication of possession. In English, *to myself* is eliminated because the adjective *my* already indicates that the hands are mine. In German, on the other hand, the adjective *meine* is omitted because the word *mir* already indicates that the hands belong to me. Therefore, whenever you see this construction in German, it is advisable to substitute the appropriate English possessive adjective (such as *my)* for the corresponding German reflexive pronoun (such as *mir).* Here are more examples:

Sie putzt *sich die* Zähne (literally: She brushes *to herself the* teeth)—She brushes *her* teeth.
Der beißende Hund ist *dem* Briefträger ein Dorn *im* Auge (literally: The biting dog is *to the mailman* a thorn in *the* eye)—The biting dog is a thorn in *the mailman's* eye.
Küß *mir den* Ellbogen (literally: kiss *to me the* elbow)—Kiss *my* elbow!
(Luther was reputed to say this when he was being "polite.")

26.5. *Selbst* and *selber*

Selbst and *selber* are sometimes used with reflexive pronouns to emphasize the reflexive meanings. Here are examples:

Sich selbst erkennen ist die größte Kunst—To know *oneself* is the greatest skill.
Arzt, heil *dich selber*—Physician, heal *thyself.*

Following a noun or pronoun, *selbst* and *selber* should be translated as *himself, herself, themselves,* etc. depending on the noun modified. For example, "Fräulein Meier hat den Korb *selbst* geflochten" is translated "Fräulein Meier *herself* wove the basket" while "Der Briefträger hat den Apfelbaum *selbst* gepflanzt" is translated as "The mailman *himself* has planted the apple tree."

***Selbst* and *selber* used as pronouns are interchangeable. However, when *selbst* precedes a noun or pronoun, it means "even."**

Selbst der ernste Professor hat über den Witz gelacht—*Even* the serious professor laughed at the joke.

26.6. Translate these sentences:

1. Was man zu sich selbst sagt, *hört* der Himmel wie Donner. (In other words, you can't have any secrets from God.)
2. Selbst ein *Experte* hat seinen *Meister.*

3. Gegen *Dummheit* kämpfen *(struggle) Götter* selbst vergebens *(in vain).*
4. Das Glück *hilft* denen nicht, die sich selbst nicht helfen.
5. Das Glück *fiel* ihm in den Schoß *(lap).*
6. Wer dem *anderen* Menschen den guten Namen *raubt,* macht ihn arm und sich nicht *reich.*
7. Wer sich bei einem Geizigen *(miser) wärmen* will, muß das *Feuer mitbringen.* (Note that you will want to translate *bei* as *at the home of* in this sentence.)
8. Fräulein Meier hat keine Lust, mit ihrem ehemaligen Geliebten in den Zoo zu gehen, denn sie *muß* sich die *Haare waschen.* (She also might need to sort her sock drawer.)
9. Der *letzte* Strohhalm *bricht* dem *Kamel* den Rücken.
10. Nächstenliebe fängt bei sich selbst an.

Vocabulary

* **an-fangen**—to begin
* **bei**—at the home of, with
der Donner (-s, -)—thunder
ehemalig—former
der **Geizige** (-n, -n)—miser
die **Lust**—desire
mit-bringen—to bring with one
die **Nächstenliebe**—charity
der **Rücken** (-s, -)— back
der **Schoß** (-es, ¨e)—lap
* **selber**—self
* **selbst**—self, even
* **sich**—self
der **Strohhalm**—straw
vergebens—in vain

26.7. Reflexive Verbs

There are several verbs that are reflexive in German but not in English. Here are some examples:

sich beeilen—to hurry
sich freuen—to rejoice, to be pleased
sich gewöhnen an—to become accustomed to
sich handeln um—to deal with, be a matter of
sich irren—to err
sich kümmern um—to worry about, to be concerned with
sich sehnen nach—to long for
sich verlassen auf—to rely upon
sich vorstellen—to introduce, to imagine

Note that *sich vorstellen* is translated differently depending on whether the reflexive pronoun is dative or accusative:

Ich stelle *mich* ihnen vor (*accusative*)—I *introduce* myself to them.
Ich stelle *mir* die fantastische Szene vor (*dative*)—I *imagine* the fantastic scene.

26.8. Here are sentences illustrating the use of all the reflexive pronouns in conjunction with the reflexive verb, *sich beeilen:*

ich beeile *mich* oft—I often hurry.
du beeilst *dich* auch—you also hurry.
er beeilt *sich* manchmal—he sometimes hurries.
sie beeilt *sich* selten—she hurries seldom.
es beeilt *sich* abends—it hurries in the evenings.
wir beeilen *uns* doch—we *are* hurrying.
ihr beeilt *euch* täglich—you hurry daily.
sie beeilen *sich* mittags—they hurry at noon.
Sie beeilen *sich* nicht—you do not hurry.

26.9. There are also several verbs that have both reflexive and non-reflexive meanings. The non-reflexive meaning will be listed first in your dictionary (unless the reflexive meaning is more common). Therefore, if you encounter a sentence with a *sich* form in it in which there is no obvious reciprocal action of the subject, realize that the *sich* (or *mich, dich,* etc.) is *only* guiding you to the v.r. definition in your dictionary. Here are some common verbs that have both reflexive and non-reflexive meanings:

non-reflexive	**reflexive**
denken—to think	*sich denken*—to imagine
erinnern—to remind	*sich erinnern*—to remember
setzen—to set	*sich setzen*—to sit down
unterhalten—to sustain	*sich unterhalten*—to converse
verlassen—to leave	*sich verlassen*—to rely upon
verstehen—to understand	*sich verstehen*—to get along with someone

Compare the following sentences:

Sie *erinnert* den Briefträger an die Aufgabe—She *reminds* the mailman of the task. (*non-reflexive)*
Er *erinnert sich* jetzt an die Aufgabe—He now *remembers* the task. *(reflexive)*
Er *zieht* nächste Woche nach Düsseldorf *um*—He will *move* to Düsseldorf next week (*non-reflexive)*
Er *zieht sich* oft *um*—He often *changes his clothes. (reflexive)*

Note: He *reminds* himself about the task—Er erinnert sich *selbst* an die Aufgabe.

Note also that the *sich* does not need to appear right next to the verb:
Das Herz ist arm, das *sich* nicht freuen kann—The heart is poor that can not rejoice.
Es bewährt sich, an das Gute im Menschen zu glauben, aber sich auf das Schlechte zu verlassen (Alfred Polgar)—It is worthwhile to believe in the good in man, but to rely on the bad.

26.10. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on pp. 191–192):

1. Wenn sich ein Igel *(hedgehog)* und ein Regenwurm *(earthworm)* paaren, was gibt das? Antwort: zehn Meter Stacheldraht. (Note that when two words are linked together, they do not need a genitive marker: ein Pfund Butter- a pound *of* butter; zwei Meter Holz—two meters *of* wood.)
2. Wer sich auf dem *Schulwege* verirrt, findet sich durch das ganze Leben nicht zurecht.
3. Hüte dich vor denen, die Gott gezeichnet hat.
4. Seit es Menschen gibt *(since mankind has existed),* hat der Mensch sich zu wenig gefreut: das *allein* ist unsre Erbsünde *(original sin).* (Nietzsche)
5. Nietzsches *Schriften* stellten sich als eine gewaltige *(powerful)* Sammlung kühnster *Aphorismen* dar, die durch eine einzigartige *(unique)* Wortkunst *(artistic use of words) faszinierte* Prägnanz erhalten. (Fritz Martini)
6. Auch in den *geordnesten* Familien ereignen sich Mißgeschicke.
7. Fräulein Meier verläßt sich immer mehr auf den Briefträger.
8. Gott versalzt uns dieses Leben, damit wir uns nach dem heiligen Feierabend sehnen. (What is the case of *dieses Leben*? How do you know?) This is probably the oddest proverb in German.

26.11. When *sich* is translated, and when it is left untranslated:

Compare the following first two sentences with the second two:

1. Sie macht *sich* selber unglücklich—She makes *herself* unhappy.
2. Sie macht *sich* das Essen—She fixes *herself the* meal.
3. Sie *wundert sich* über ihren Freund—She *wonders* about her friend.
4. Sie *unterhält sich* mit ihm—She *converses* with him.

In the first two sentences, *sich* is translated as *herself* because the subject *she* needs an object to complete the thought; *sich* explains in *#1* whom she makes unhappy

and in #2 whom she fixes the meal for. If the *sich* were left untranslated, something serious would be missing from the sentences.

In the second two sentences, however, *sich* is not translated because *sich* only serves to indicate that the German verb, unlike the English verb, is reflexive. This will obviously be the case because

1. a v.r. (or *sich)* definition will be listed in your dictionary,
2. adding a reflexive pronoun (such as *herself)* would make the sentence sound awkward. For example, no English-speaking person would *ever* say: "She wonders *herself* about her friend."

26.12. Translate this joke (it is not a very good joke, but it is excellent stylistically):

Ein bejahrter *(old)* Münchner kommt auf dem Viktualienmarkt *(marketplace)* mit einer *netten* Taube *(pigeon)* ins Gespräch. *Beide* verstehen sich ausgezeichnet *(excellently)* und möchten die Bekanntschaft *(acquaintance)* fortsetzen *(continue),* und so lädt der alte Herr die Taube für den *nächsten Nachmittag* zu sich zum *Kaffee* ein. Die Stunde ist *gekommen,* er hat den Tisch nett *gedeckt* und extra ein paar *Blumen* besorgt *(gotten),* aber wer nicht erscheint, ist die Taube. Habe ich mich so in meiner Taubenkenntnis *(pigeon-knowledge) geirrt,* fragt sich der alte Herr, während er vor seinem *Kaffee sitzt,* der langsam *kalt* wird. Unruhig schaut er immer häufiger auf die Uhr *(watch)—endlich,* eine Stunde später, klingelt es. Die Taube *steht* vor der Tür und *sagt* mit einem reizend verlegenen Lächeln: "Ich bitte Sie, entschuldigen Sie, daß ich so spät komme. Aber es war ein so *(such a)* herrlicher Nachmittag, und so habe ich mich entschlossen, zu Fuß zu gehen!"

Vocabulary

ausgezeichnet—excellently
* **bitten um**—to ask for
** **da**—since, because
* **damit**—so that
dar-stellen (r)—to appear
decken—to set, cover
ein so—such a
ein-laden—to invite
** **endlich**—finally
entschließen (r)—to decide
entschuldigen—to excuse
ereignen (r.)—to happen, occur
erhalten—to keep, maintain, receive
* **erscheinen** (i)—to appear
extra (adv.)—specially
der **Feierabend**—quitting time
* **freuen** (r)—to rejoice, be happy
ins Gespräch kommen—to converse with
gewaltig—powerful
häufig—frequent
herrlich—glorious

hüten (r) (vor)—to be on guard (against)
irren (r)—to err
klingeln (i)—to ring;
es klingelt—the doorbell rings
kühn—bold
das **Lächeln**—smile
** **langsam**—slow
das **Mißgeschick** (-es, -e)—accident
* **möchte**—would like to
der **Münchner** (-s, -)—inhabitant of Munich
* **nachher**—afterwards
der **Nachmittag** (-s, -e)—afternoon
* **nächst**—next
nett—nice
ordnen—to arrange, order
* **paar**—couple
paaren (r)—to mate
die **Prägnanz**—precision
reizend—charming
die **Sammlung** (-en)—collection
* **schauen** (i)—to look at
die **Schrift** (-en)—writing
der **Schulweg** (-s, -e)—way to school
sehnen (r) (nach)—to long (for)
** **seit**—since
der **Stacheldraht**—barbed wire
* die **Stunde** (-n)—hour
die **Taube** (-n)—pigeon
* die **Uhr** (-en)—clock
unruhig—restless
verirren (r)—to go astray
verlassen auf (r)—to rely on
verlegen—embarrassed
versalzen—to spoil
* **verstehen** (r)—to get along with
* **während**—while, during
zeichnen—to mark, to distinguish
zu Fuß gehen—to walk
zurecht-finden (r)—to find one's way

Reading Selection: Der Froschkönig

[There was once a beautiful young princess who was playing with her beloved ball. When she was playing, her ball fell into a deep well, causing her to cry. A frog appeared, and offered to retrieve her ball on the condition that he become a friend of hers, and she agreed. Once she had the ball, she went home and forgot all about the frog. At suppertime, as the princess was eating with her father, there was a knock at the door. The princess opened it, saw it was the frog, and slammed the door in his face. When she told her father what had happened, he demanded that she invite the frog in, as she had promised. It is at this point that the reading selection begins.]

. . . .*Endlich sprach* der *Frosch:* "Ich habe gegessen und bin müde (tired); nun trag mich in dein Kämmerlein (little room) und mach dein seiden (silk) Bettlein zurecht, dann können wir uns schlafen legen." Die *Königstochter begann* zu *weinen* und fürchtete sich vor dem *kalten* Frosch, den sie nicht anzurühren getraute (dared) und der nun in ihrem schönen, reinen Bettlein schlafen sollte. Der König aber wurde zornig (angry) und sprach: "Wer dir *geholfen* hat, als du in der Not

(need) warst, sollst du hernach nicht verachten. (despise)" Da packte (took) sie ihn mit *zwei* Fingern, trug ihn hinauf und *setzte* ihn in eine Ecke (corner). Als sie aber im Bett *lag*, kam er *gekrochen* und sprach: "Ich bin müde, ich will schlafen so gut wie du—heb mich herauf, oder ich sag's deinem Vater." *Dann* wurde sie bitterböse, holte ihn herauf und warf (threw) ihn aus allen Kräften wider die Wand: "Nun wirst du Ruhe (peace, rest) haben, du garstiger Frosch!"

Als er aber *herabfiel*, war er kein Frosch, sondern ein *Königssohn* mit schönen und *freundlichen* Augen.

Vocabulary

anrühren— to touch
** **fürchten** (r)—to be afraid of
garstig—nasty
herab**fallen**- to fall down
heraufheben—to lift up
heraufholen—to pick up
hernach—afterwards
der **Königssohn**—prince
die **Königstochter**—princess
* die **Kraft** (¨e)—strength
kriechen—to crawl
** **nun**—now
rein—pure
die **Ruhe**—peace
* **setzen**—to set
* **sondern**—but rather
* **tragen**—to carry
die **Wand** (¨e)—wall
* **wider**—against
zurechtmachen—make up

27

The Overloaded Adjective Construction

The **overloaded adjective construction** (also known as the "extended adjective" or the "participial" construction) is one of the most difficult constructions in the German language. Therefore, be sure to read this section carefully, especially if you need to read German to do scholarly research.

27.1. In this construction, one of two participles generally is used—the present participle, or the past participle.

The present participle is formed by adding a "d" to any German infinitive. ***Singen*** *(to sing)* can be changed to ***singend*** *(singing)*; ***lachen*** *(to laugh)* can be changed to ***lachend*** *(laughing)*; and ***tanzen*** *(to dance)* can be changed to ***tanzend*** *(dancing)*. (Review 18.1)

The past participle is identical with other past participles—***gesungen*** *(sung)*, ***gelacht*** *(laughed)*, ***getanzt*** *(danced)*, ***geschrieben*** *(written)*.

Both present and past participles can be used as adjectives:

die ***singende*** Frau—the *singing* woman
das ***geschriebene*** Buch—the *written* book

In fact, the present participles are most often used as adjectives, and they are used as adverbs occasionally. They are **never** used as verbs.

27.2. German differs from English to the degree that modifiers can be placed between the introductory word and the present or past participles.

For example, one can say: **(von)** ***einer nach dem langen Schlaf wirklich überflüssigen Schläfrigkeit***—an after the long sleep really superfluous sleepiness;
or: . . . ***den wahrscheinlich ein für allemal für Gregor bestimmten Napf***—the probably once and for all for Gregor designated bowl. (Kafka, ***Die Verwandlung***)

27.3. Generally, an overloaded adjective can be identified as such when two words appear together in German, which cannot be consecutive in English.

The most common non-consecutive word combinations are:

1. **an article** (or a similar strong adjective) and a **preposition** such as

mein / nach Europa oft fliegender Freund—my to Europe often flying friend
ein schöner, / im Winter selten vorkommender Tag—a beautiful, in winter seldom appearing day
die/ in der Realität unbefriedigt gebliebenen Wünsche des menschlichen Unterbewußten—the in reality unsatisfied remaining wishes of the human subconscious (Fritz Martini)

2. **two articles** (or similar strong adjectives) such as

die/ dem Lehrer zuhörenden Studenten—the to the teacher listening students
ein/ dem Studenten sehr interessantes Buch—a to the student very interesting book
die neue, / den meisten Menschen noch fremde Idee—the new to most people still foreign idea

27.4. When you encounter an overloaded adjective construction, use the following four steps in order to transform it into idiomatic English:

1. **Locate the modifier which begins the overloaded construction.** (Generally, the modifier will be an article: *ein, eine, der, das, die.*)

2. **Locate the noun, or the noun phrase, which the modifier describes.** This noun will be the first "available" noun which agrees with the modifier. For

example, in the segment, ***die in der Realität unbefriedigt gebliebenen Wünsche des menschlichen Unterbewußten, Wünsche*** (des menschlichen Unterbewußten) agrees with *die,* and it is the first available noun. ***Realität*** is not considered available because it is already the object of the preposition ***in.***

3. **Locate a participle and any accompanying adverbs;** the participle will have a "second" adjective ending (usually either *-e* or *-en* (cf. 4.3); it will appear before the noun. In the above segment, ***unbefriedigt gebliebenen*** is an example.

4. **Read the final clause; do not change the order of the words in this clause** (in ***der*** *Realität).* The final clause will often end with a noun. Therefore, the segment: ***die*** */ in der Realität / unbefriedigt gebliebenen/* ***Wünsche des menschlichen***
1 4 3 2
Unterbewußten should be translated as follows:
the wishes of the human subconscious that have remained unsatisfied in reality.

27.5. Note: It is sometimes desirable to add a "which" or "that" or a "who" and an auxiliary to the participle in order to make the translation sound smoother. By adding a "which," etc., you are merely changing an adjectival clause into a relative one in the same way as you could change the clause "the often discussed topic" into "the topic, which has often been discussed" and retain the same meaning.

27.6. While this construction usually contains a participle functioning as an adjective, other adjectives sometimes occur instead. Here are examples:

eine mir sehr *angenehme* Idee—an idea very *agreeable* to me
ein den jungen Kindern *wichtiges* Versprechen—a promise *important* to the young children.

27.7. Here are more examples of each of the four steps:

Step 1 will consist of finding the **adjective,** or adjectives, that begin this construction:

Der /vom Schicksal verfolgte / Mann—The man persecuted by fate
Ein / vom Schicksal verfolgter / Mann—A man persecuted by fate
Ein alter, / vom Schicksal verfolgter / Mann—An old man persecuted by fate
Der alte, einsame, / vom Schicksal verfolgte / Mann—The old, lonely man persecuted by fate
Die Freunde **alter,** / vom Schicksal verfolgter / Männer—The friends of old men persecuted by fate

Step 2 will consist of finding the **noun** to which the adjective is attached:

Der vom Schicksal verfolgte **Mann**
Der vom Schicksal verfolgte **Mann der kranken Frau mit vielen Schmerzen** —The husband of the sick woman with many pains who was persecuted by fate
Der vom Schicksal verfolgte **alte Mann**—The old man persecuted by fate

Step 3 will consist of finding the ***adjective,* which is a kind of pivot for step 4.** It will appear **in front of the noun** in step 2, and it will *always* have an adjective ending. **It may be an adjective formed from a verb, or it may be a regular adjective:**

Der vom Schicksal **verfolgte** Mann—The man persecuted by fate
Der vom Schicksal **oft verfolgte** Mann—The man often persecuted by fate
Der seinem Schicksal **folgende** Mann—The man following his fate
Der mit seinem Schicksal **glückliche** Mann—The man who is happy with his fate

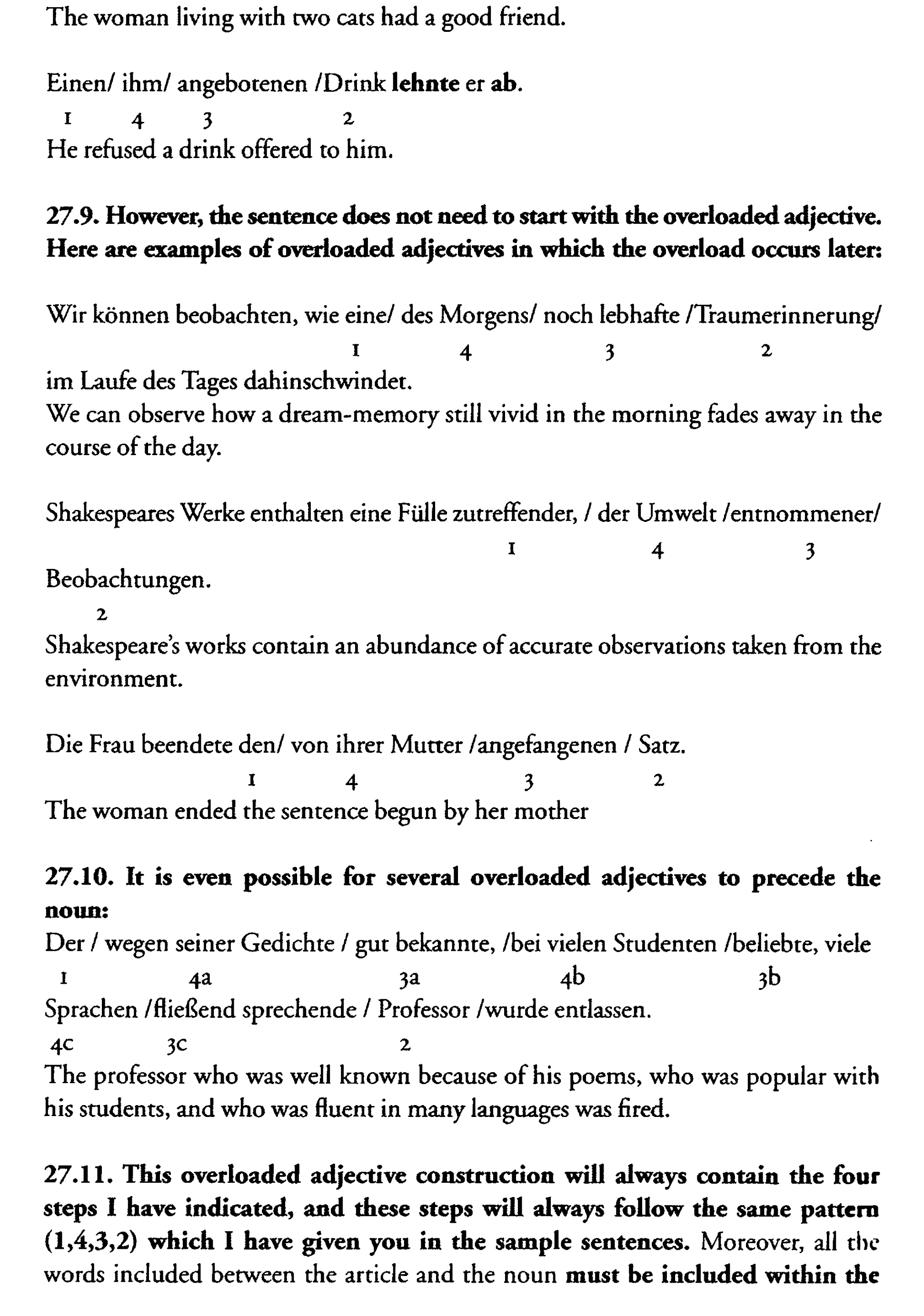
Step 4 will consist of **the words located after step 1 and before step 3;** they may be translated in the order in which they are found.

Der **vom Schicksal** verfolgte Mann—The man persecuted by fate
Der **von einem schrecklichen, fast unglaublichen Schicksal** verfolgte Mann—The man persecuted by a horrible, almost unbelievable fate
Diese **von den Ägyptern** geschriebenen Erzählungen enthalten wichtige Wahrheiten—These stories written bv the Egyptians contain important truths.

27.8. When the overloaded adjective is found in the beginning of the sentence, the appropriate noun to which the article belongs will be found immediately before the conjugated verb. For in this type of clause, as in all independent German clauses, the conjugated verb appears in "second" place (cf. "Basic Verb Placement," Chapter 6); therefore, all the words preceding it will have to belong together.

Here are more examples:

Ein junger,/ auf ein Verbrechen /angeklagter /Spanier namens Jeronimo **war** der
1 4 3 2
Geliebte Josephes.
A young Spaniard named Jeronimo (who was) accused of a crime was Josephe's lover.



Die/ mit zwei Katzen/ wohnende/ Frau **hatte** einen guten Freund.
1 4 3 2
The woman living with two cats had a good friend.

Einen/ ihm/ angebotenen /Drink **lehnte** er **ab.**
1 4 3 2
He refused a drink offered to him.

27.9. However, the sentence does not need to start with the overloaded adjective. Here are examples of overloaded adjectives in which the overload occurs later:

Wir können beobachten, wie eine/ des Morgens/ noch lebhafte /Traumerinnerung/
1 4 3 2
im Laufe des Tages dahinschwindet.
We can observe how a dream-memory still vivid in the morning fades away in the course of the day.

Shakespeares Werke enthalten eine Fülle zutreffender, / der Umwelt /entnommener/
1 4 3
Beobachtungen.
2
Shakespeare's works contain an abundance of accurate observations taken from the environment.

Die Frau beendete den/ von ihrer Mutter /angefangenen / Satz.
1 4 3 2
The woman ended the sentence begun by her mother

27.10. It is even possible for several overloaded adjectives to precede the noun:
Der / wegen seiner Gedichte / gut bekannte, /bei vielen Studenten /beliebte, viele
1 4a 3a 4b 3b
Sprachen /fließend sprechende / Professor /wurde entlassen.
4c 3c 2
The professor who was well known because of his poems, who was popular with his students, and who was fluent in many languages was fired.

27.11. This overloaded adjective construction will always contain the four steps I have indicated, and these steps will always follow the same pattern (1,4,3,2) which I have given you in the sample sentences. Moreover, all the words included between the article and the noun **must be included within the**

overload; they can **never** be carried over to any other part of the sentence. In fact, you may find it useful to place brackets around this construction to remind yourself that all these words consist of a **single unit** within the sentence.

27.12. When the participle preceding the noun is a past participle, you will have to look up the infinitive in your dictionary, even though the word is used as an adjective. Here are examples:

das *benutzte* Beispiel—look up *benutzen* (the used example)
die *aufgeklärten* Zeiten—look up *aufklären* (the enlightened times)
die *geschriebene* Regel—look up *schreiben* (the written rule)

After the adjective ending (which generally will be either *-e* or *-en)* is removed, all such participles will end either in *-t* (when they are easy—cf. "benutzt" and "aufgeklärt") or in *-en* (when they are hard—cf. "geschrieben").

Overloaded adjective constructions can be differentiated from relative constructions because they don't have commas preceding the article, and because they end with a noun rather than a verb. Compare

Der Elefant, *der* in die Luft *stieg,* war aus Gummi—The elephant *that* rose in the air was made of rubber *(relative)*
Der/ in die Luft /steigende / *Elefant* war aus Gummi—The elephant rising in the air was made of rubber *(overload)*

27.11. Translate these sentences. Indicate the four steps for each overload:

1. Josephe *(a woman)* fand ihren Geliebten in einem dunklen, von *Pinien beschatteten* Tal *(valley).* (Kleist)
2. Herzog Wilhelm von Breisach kam von einer in Worms mit dem deutschen Kaiser abgehaltenen *(held)* Zusammenkunft *(meeting)* zurück. (Kleist)
3. Am *Fuße* der *Alpen,* bei (*near*) Locarno, im *oberen Italien befand* sich ein altes, einem Marchese *(marquis)* gehöriges Schloß. (Kleist)
4. Ist der Briefträger ein vom Schicksal *(fate)* verfolgter Mensch?
5. Die Frau ergriff eine mit *Lilien gefüllte Glasvase* und schleuderte sie in den Kamin (fireplace), wo sie in *tausend* Stücke verschellte.
6. Verstohlen blickte sie die ihr gegenüber *sitzende Dame* an.
7. Poseidon wurde überdrüssig *(bored with)* seiner Meere *(seas).* Der Dreizack *(trident)* entfiel *(fell from)* ihm. Still *saß er* an felsiger *(rocky) Küste,* und eine von seiner Gegenwart *(presence)* betäubte *(dazed)* Möwe *(seagull)* zog schwankende *(precarious)* Kreise um sein Haupt. (Kafka)

8. Solche in seinem gegenwärtigen Zustand *(situation)* ganz nutzlose Gedanken gingen ihm durch den Kopf. (Kafka) (What does *nutzlose* modify? Be careful.)
9. Das junge Mädchen saß ganz still da, und versuchte mit aller Kraft, die ihr so ungewohnten Tränen zu unterdrücken.
10. Der Mann, der die mit zwei Katzen wohnende Frau liebte, mußte oft mit ihr zum Tierarzt gehen.
11. Trotz seines *Pessimismus* wurde der Roman [Thomas Manns *Buddenbrooks]* ein behagliches *(cozy, agreeable),* den Reiz *(charm)* der alten Bürgerlichkeit *(middle-class way of life)* mit Liebe und Humor, geduldiger *(patient)* Breite *(prolixity)* und köstlichem *(exquisite) Detail* ausbreitendes *(depicting) Buch.* (Fritz Martini)
12. Das *dicke* Kind ging in die *Bibliothek* an einem *Freitag* oder einem Samstag, jedenfalls nicht and dem zum Ausleihen (*lending)* bestimmten Tag.
13. E. T. A. Hoffmann war ein wegen seiner boshaften *Karikaturen* gefürchteter Zeichner *(sketcher)* und ein Dichter, der ohne . . . viele *Getränke* nicht zu arbeiten vermochte. (Martini) (Note that *Zeichner* is attached to the overload while *Dichter* is attached to the relative clause.)
14. Ein *hoch* in die Luft springender Kakerlak *(cockroach) erschreckte* Fräulein Meier, während sie bei dem Briefträger saß.
15. Der Briefträger sah in dem mutigen *(plucky),* vom Zoo *neulich* entflohenen *(escaped)* Flußpferd *(hippo)* ein Symbol des Drangs der *Freiheit* aller Menschen und Tiere. (The hippo's name was Bubbles.)
16. Gegenüber der Tür . . . zeigte sich im Kerzenschein *(candle light)* eine große, in heftigen *(severe)* Strichen *(strokes, outlines)* ausgeführte Kreidezeichnung *(chalk drawing),* die Napoleon darstellte *(represented),*wie er in plumper *(awkward)* und *despotischer* Haltung seine mit Kanonenstiefeln *(gun-boots)* bekleideten Füße an einem Kamin *(fireplace) wärmte.* (Thomas Mann) (This is a hard sentence!)
17. (A challenging sentence) Am schmalen Bogenfenster *(bay window)* einer *Zelle,* die nach dem *grauen,* jetzt vom *Morgenlicht* beschienenen Schloßturm von Riedberg hinüberschaute, saß die schöne Lukretia Planta. (C. F. Meyer)

Vocabulary

ab-halten—to hold
an-blicken—to look at
aus-breiten—to spread out, to depict
aus-führen —to execute, to carry out
* **befinden** (r)— to be located

behaglich—cozy, comfortable
bekleiden—to dress, adorn
beschatten—to shade
bescheinen—to light up
bestimmen—to determine
betäuben—to daze
boshaft—malicious

die **Breite**—expanse, prolixity
die **Bürgerlichkeit**—middle class way of life
dar-stellen—to represent
der **Drang** (-es, ¨e)—craving
entfallen (i)—to fall away from
ergreifen—to grasp
erschrecken—to frighten
felsig—rocky
geduldig—patient
* **gegenüber**—opposite
* die **Gegenwart**—present
gegenwärtig—present
gehörig—belonging to
geliebt—loved
das **Getränk** (-es, -e)—drink
grau—grey
die **Haltung** —stance, manner
* das **Haupt** (-s, ¨er)—head
hinüber-schauen (i)—to look over
* das **Italien** (-s)—Italy
jedenfalls—in any case
der **Kaiser** (-s, -)—emperor
der **Kamin** (-s, -e)—fireplace
** der **Kopf** (-es, ¨e)—head
köstlich—precious, exquisite
* die **Kraft** (¨e)—strength
der **Kreis** (-es, -e)—circle
künstlerisch—artistic
die **Küste** (-n)—coast
* die **Luft** (-e)—air
** **manche**—some
das **Meer** (-es, -e)—sea, ocean
die **Möwe** (-n)—seagull
mutig—courageous
neulich—recently
nutzlos—useless
ober—upper
die **Pinie** (-n)—pine
plump—awkward
* das **Recht** (-es, -e)—justice, right
der **Reiz** (-es, -e)—charm, stimulus
** der **Roman** (-es, -e)—novel
das **Schicksal** (-s, -e)—fate
schleudern—to fling
das **Schloß** (-sses, ¨sser)—castle
schmal—narrow
* **solch**—such
die **Tränen**—tears
treiben—to drive
das **Tal** (-es, ¨er)—valley
das **Tier** (-es, -e)—animal
der **Tierarzt**—veterinarian
* **trotz**—in spite of
der **Turm** (-es, ¨e)—tower
überdrüssig—bored with
ungewohnt—unfamiliar
unterdrücken—to suppress
verfolgen—to persecute
* **vermögen**—to be able to
verstohlen—secretly
* **versuchen**—to try
der **Zeichner** (-s, -)—sketcher
* **zeigen** (r)—to show; to be shown
die **Zelle** (-n)—cell
* **ziehen (zog, hat gezogen)**—to draw, to pull
zurück-kommen (i)—to return
die **Zusammenkunft** (¨e)—meeting
der **Zustand** (-es, ¨e)—condition

Reading Selection: Der Wolf und die sieben Geißlein (little goats) (This is a Grimm fairy tale familiar in Germany, which I have spiced up with overloaded adjectives to give you additional practice with them.) I have bold-faced words that I think you should know or guess and I have italicized words that will be repeated.

Words that are underlined mean that more than one word is included in the translation. (Vocabulary is in Appendix K.)

Es war **einmal** eine alte *Geiß* (goat), die **sieben** junge Geißlein hatte. Eines Tages wollte sie in den Wald gehen, **um etwas** zu essen **zu** *holen* (get). So *rief* (called) sie ihre Kinder ins Haus und sprach: "Liebe Kinder, ich will in den Wald. Wenn der Wolf kommt, dürft ihr (you) ihn nicht in unser Häuslein **lassen**. Wenn er hereinkäme (were to come in), so würde er euch (you) **alle** fressen. Das böse *Geschöpf* (creature) verstellt (disguises) sich oft, aber an seiner *Stimme* (voice) und an seinen **schwarzen** Füßen werdet ihr ihn **gleich** (immediately) **erkennen**." Die Kinder, die ihre Mutter sehr liebte, sagten: "Liebe Mutter, du **brauchst** keine Angst zu haben." So ging die über die Sicherheit ihrer Kinder sehr beruhigte (confident) Alte glücklich in den Wald.

Bald ***klopfte*** **jemand** an die Tür und rief: "*Macht auf*, liebe Kinder, eure Mutter ist **da** und hat **jedem** von euch **etwas** mitgebracht." **Aber** die Geißlein erkannten, daß es der Wolf war. "Wir machen nicht auf!" riefen sie, "du bist nicht unsere Mutter, sie hat eine feine Stimme, aber deine Stimme ist rauh; du bist der Wolf."

Dann ging der im Wald **ganz** allein **wohnende** Wolf weg und kaufte ein Stück (piece) Kreide (chalk); die **aß** er und machte **damit** seine Stimme fein. Er kam ***zurück***, klopfte an die Tür und rief: "Macht auf, liebe Kinder, eure Mutter ist da!" Aber der Wolf hatte seinen schwarzen Fuß ins Fenster **gelegt**; den sahen die Kinder und riefen: "Wir machen nicht auf, unsere Mutter hat keinen schwarzen Fuß wie du; du bist der Wolf." So *lief* (ran, went) der Wolf zum in der Nähe des Waldes wohnenden ***Müller*** und **fragte** ihn, **ob** er etwas *Mehl* (flour) auf seinen Fuß streuen (sprinkle) könnte. Der Müller ***dachte:*** "Der Wolf will jemanden betrügen (deceive)," und wollte es nicht **tun**. Aber der Wolf sprach: "Wenn du es nicht tust, dann fresse ich dich." So **fürchtete sich** der Müller und machte dem Wolf den Fuß **weiß**. Ja, so **sind** die Menschen.

Nun ging der von allen Geschöpfen der **Welt** gefürchtete Wolf **wieder** zu der Tür, klopfte an und sprach: "Macht auf, Kinder, euer Mütterchen ist zurück." Die Geißlein riefen: "Du mußt uns **erst** deinen Fuß zeigen, **sonst** (otherwise) wissen wir nicht, ob du unser Mütterchen bist." Dann legte er den mit Mehl bedeckten Fuß ins Fenster, und als sie sahen, daß er weiß war, so **glaubten** sie, es wäre (was) **alles wahr,** was er sagte, und machten die Tür auf. Wer aber hereinkam, das war der Wolf!

Dann litten (suffered) sie alle Todesangst. **Obwohl** sie sich gut *versteckten* (hid), fand der Wolf sie **doch** und fraß eins **nach** dem **anderen** auf; nur die jüngste Geiß, die sich in dem Kasten (box) der Wanduhr (wall clock) versteckt hatte, fand er nicht. **Nachdem** (after) der Wolf die **Sechs** gefressen hatte, ging er weg, legte sich draußen (outside) unter einen der vielen Bäume **vor** dem von Tannen (pines) beschatteten (shaded) Haus und begann zu **schlafen**.

Bald kam die alte Geiß aus dem Wald **wieder** nach Hause. Ach! was hat sie da gesehen! Alles war umgeworfen (strewn about). Sie *suchte* (sought, looked for) ihre Kinder, aber sie fand sie nicht. Sie rief sie alle bei Namen, aber **niemand** antwortete. **Endlich,** als sie den Namen des jüngsten rief, antwortete eine feine, seiner Mutter sehr willkommene Stimme: "Liebe Mutter, ich bin im Uhrkasten (clock box)." Sie holte es heraus und es **erzählte** ihr, daß der Wolf gekommen wäre und die anderen gefressen hätte. So **können Sie** sich vorstellen (imagine), **wie** sie über ihre armen, von dem Wolf gefressenen Kinder geweint hat.

Endlich ging sie hinaus und das jüngste Geißlein lief mit. Als sie vor das Haus kamen, lag da der Wolf unter dem Baum und **schnarchte** laut. "Ach, Gott," dachte sie, "**vielleicht** leben meine Kinder **noch**!" Dann **mußte** das jüngste Geißlein ins Haus laufen und Schere (scissors), Nadel und Zwirn holen. Dann schnitt (cut open) die Mutter dem Wolf den *Bauch* auf, und kaum (hardly) hatte sie einen Schnitt getan, so steckte **schon** ein Geißlein den Kopf heraus, und **endlich** sprangen alle sechs heraus, und alle lebten noch. Das war ihr natürlich eine Freude! Die Alte sagte: "**Jetzt** suchen wir Steine; mit **denen füllen** wir dem Wolf den Bauch, **solange** er noch schläft." Die sieben Geißlein taten das und die Alte nähte ihn wieder zu (sewed up).

Als der Wolf **erwachte,** stand er auf, und **weil** ihn die von den Geißlein in seinen Bauch gefüllten Steine so **durstig** machten, wollte er zu einem *Brunnen* (well) gehen und trinken. Als er aber an den Brunnen kam und trinken wollte, zogen (pulled) ihn die Steine in den Brunnen hinein, und er **mußte** ertrinken. Als die Geißlein, die jetzt **überglücklich** waren, das sahen, liefen sie herbei und riefen laut: "Der Wolf ist **tot**!" und lachten und tanzten mit ihrer Mutter um den Brunnen.

28

The Passive

28.1. Passive voice is formed in English by using the verb *to be* as an auxiliary:

He *helps* his friend (active)—His friend *is helped* by him (passive)
He *helped* his friend (active)—His friend *was helped* by him (passive)
He *has helped* his friend (active)—His friend *has been helped* by him (passive)
He *can help* his friend (active)—His friend *can be helped* by him (passive)

28.2. In German, passive is formed by using the verb ***werden*** as an auxiliary with a participle with the past participial form (such as *gesagt, geschrieben)* of another verb:

Sein Freund **wird** von ihm **gesehen**—His friend **is seen** by him.
Jeden Tag **werden** die im Wohnzimmer oft spielenden Katzen gestreichelt—Every day the cats who often play in the living room **are patted**.
Ehrlichkeit **wurde** nie **bereut**—Honesty **was** never **regretted.**

Reminder: On good days, German participles will have the prefix *ge-*, and even on bad days, they will always have the suffix *-t* or *-en: gemacht, gefragt, gekannt, geschrieben, getan, versprochen, erwartet.*

Whenever you see a verb ending in *-t* when *wird* is used as an auxiliary, the verb must be a participle: *wird verlernt; wird beliebt, wird erlaubt.*

Whenever you see a verb ending in *-en* and there is an *o* in the root (except for variations of *kommen*), the verb will be a participle: *besprochen, empfohlen, entflohen.*

However, a participle can also have a vowel other than *o: geschrieben, gefallen, gegeben, gegriffen, gelungen.*

28.3. In the passive construction, *werden* will be conjugated, and it will appear in "second" place, while the participle will appear at the end of the clause. The tense of *werden* will determine whether the tense of the passive is present, past, present perfect or past perfect.

28.4. Examples of the passive

1. Here are all the examples of the present passive:

ich *werde* gesehen — I *am* seen
du *wirst* gesehen — you *are* seen
er *wird* gesehen — he *is* seen
es *wird* gesehen — it *is* seen
sie *wird* gesehen — she *is* seen

wir *werden* gesehen — we *are* seen
ihr *werdet* gesehen — you *are* seen
sie *werden* gesehen — they *are* seen
Sie *werden* gesehen — you *are* seen

2. Here are all the examples of the past passive:

ich *wurde* gesehen — I *was* seen
du *wurdest* gesehen — you *were* seen
er *wurde* gesehen — he *was* seen
es *wurde* gesehen — it *was* seen
sie *wurde* gesehen — she *was* seen

wir *wurden* gesehen — we *were* seen
ihr *wurdet* gesehen — you *were* seen
sie *wurden* gesehen — they *were* seen
Sie *wurden* gesehen — you *were* seen

3. Here are all the examples of the present perfect passive:

ich *bin* gesehen *worden*	I *have been* seen
du *bist* gesehen *worden*	you *have been* seen
er, es, sie *ist* gesehen *worden*	he, it, she *has been* seen
wir *sind* gesehen *worden*	we *have been* seen
ihr *seid* gesehen *worden*	you *have been* seen
sie *sind* gesehen *worden*	they *have been* seen
Sie *sind* gesehen *worden*	you *have been* seen

NOTE THAT *WORDEN ALWAYS* MEANS *BEEN*!!!

4. Here are the other passive forms, which appear less frequently:

Das Bild *war* gesehen *worden*—The picture *had been* seen. (past perfect passive)
Das Bild *wird* gesehen *werden*—The picture *will be* seen. (future passive)

Das Bild *wird* gesehen *worden sein*—The picture *will have been seen.* (future perfect passive)

28.5. The passive construction can be confusing because *werden* also is used in two other ways with which you are already familiar:

a. without an infinitive, *werden* simply means "to become:"

Es *wird* dunkel—It *becomes* dark.
Er *wird* alt—He *grows* old.

b. with an infinitive, *werden* designates the future:

Sie *wird* mit uns *gehen*—She *will go* with us.
Sie *wird* das Gedicht *schreiben*—She *will write* the poem.

c. Compare the sentences in (a) and (b) with the following passive:

Der Student ***wird*** von dem Professor ***gesehen***—The student *is seen* by the professor.
Das Gedicht ***wird*** von ihr ***geschrieben***—The poem *is written* by her.

Werden used passively will always be translated as a form of the verb *to be* and never as the verb *to become.* If in doubt, translate ***wird*** as *is* and ***werden*** as ***are*** rather than ***becomes/become,*** as passive is used far more frequently than ***become.***

28.6. *Worden* will **always** be translated as *been* because ***worden*** is used only as the participial form of the passive. Compare the following two sentences:

Der Hund *ist* alt *geworden*—The dog *has become* old. (*regular*)
Der Hund ist dressiert ***worden***—The dog *has been* trained. (*passive*)

28.7. Whenever you see a form of *werden,* therefore, check for possible verbs at the end of the clause.

1. If there is a **past participle** the sentence will be **passive:**

Der Krimi *wird* oft *gelesen*—The thriller *is* often *read.*
Die Frage *wurde* oft *gestellt*—The question *was* often *asked.*

Also, sentences with the passive usually will have an inanimate noun *(der Krimi. die Frage)* for the nominative noun.

2. If there is a simple infinitive, the sentence will be a simple future:

Er *wird* mit uns *gehen*—He *will go* with us.
Sie *werden* den Film *sehen*—They *will* see the film.

Reminder: The infinitive is the verb form found in your dictionaries. It will *always* end in *-n* or *-en.*

3. If there are no verbs, translate *werden* as *become:*

Das schönste Grün *wird* auch Heu—The most beautiful green also becomes hay.
Die Studenten *werden* nie reich—The students never *become* rich.
Der Mann *wird* Professor—The man *becomes* a professor.
Ein Gast *wird zu* einer Last—A guest *becomes* a burden. (Often, if you see *werden* accompanied by the preposition *zu,* it will mean *become,* and you will not translate the *zu.*)

28.8. Occasionally, however, a passive sentence should be translated as future passive, as can be shown by the following two sentences:

Morgen *wird* der Film *gesehen*—Tomorrow the movie *will be seen.*
Wann *wird* der Tanzbär *gesehen?*—When *will* the dancing bear *be seen*?
In each sentence, *wird* makes the sentence passive only. The *morgen* in the first sentence and the *wann* in the second sentence rather than the verb point out that the sentences should be translated in the future tense.

Otherwise, the "official" future will be written as follows: Der Film *wird gesehen werden*—The movie *will be seen.*

28.9. Sometimes the infinitive of the verb and its perfect are identical.
However, you can generally differentiate the future from the passive by context. Here are examples:

Er *wird* den toten Vogel *begraben*—He *will bury* the dead bird. (*future*)
Der tote Vogel *wird* von ihm *begraben*—The dead bird *is buried* by him. (*passive*)
Er *wird* seine Kollegen *empfangen*—He *will receive* his colleagues. (*future*)
Er *wird* von seinen Kollegen *empfangen*—He *is received* by his colleagues. (*passive*)

Note that if you have *wurde* and a verb that could be either an infinitive or a participle, the verb will *always* be a participle, because the future *cannot be formed* with the past of *werden:*

Er *wurde* von seinene Kollegen *empfangen*—He *was received* by his colleagues *(passive)*
Wo *wurde* Ulysses S. Grant *begraben*?—Where *was* Ulysses S. Grant *buried*?

28.10. Modals can be combined with the passive in the following way:

Das Buch *muß* unbedingt *gelesen werden*—The book *must* definitely *be read.*
Das Bild *mußte gesehen werden*—The picture *had to be seen.*
Das Bild *hat gesehen werden müssen*—The picture *has had to be seen.*
Das Bild *hatte gesehen werden müssen*—The picture *had had to be seen.*
Das Bild *wird gesehen werden müssen*—The picture *will have to be seen.*

Whenever you have to translate a sentence with three or more verbs, the conjugated verb will always be translated first, the final verb will be translated second, the penultimate verb will be translated third, and any fourth verb will be translated last. Here is an example:

Die Doktorarbeit *wird* von dem Professor *gelesen werden müssen*—The dissertation
1 4 3 2
will have to be read by the professor.

28.11. Other cautions: *wird* when used as a passive should be translated as *is; werden* should be translated as *are.* It is extremely tempting to translate them as past tenses as they look deceptively past:

Die Arbeit **wird** oft getan—The work **is** often done.
Die Tür **wird** zugemacht—The door **is** closed.
Die Katzen **werden** selten gehört—The cats **are** seldom heard.

When *werden* appears at the end of the clause, **if the word to the left of it is an adjective,** translate *werden* as *become;* **if the word to the left of it is a participle,** translate *werden* as a passive:

Sie kann *reich* werden—She can *become* rich
Wenn sie *alt* wird, wird sie viele Bücher lesen—When she *becomes* old, she will read many books.
Sie will *geliebt* werden—She wants to *be* loved
Sie muß *verstanden* werden—She must *be* understood.
Wenn er *gesehen* wird, arbeitet er viel—Whenever he *is* seen, he works a lot.
Der Wolf machte viele Versuche, um von den Geißlein *hereingelassen zu werden*—The wolf made many attempts *to be* let in by the little goats.

28.12. Because the various uses of *werden* are confusing, you should make a chart of the possibilities to use as a handy reference:

1. *werden + participle* (a verb ending in *-en* [with a vowel change] or *-t*, and usually with a *ge-* prefix) = *passive (is, are, was, were, be):*

Die E-mail **wird** von dem Dichter **geschrieben**—The e-mail is written by the poet.
Das Folgende **wird** oft **gesagt**—The following is often said.
Der Mann **wurde erwartet**—The man was expected.
Die Frau **ist** endlich **geliebt worden**—The woman has finally been loved.
Der Film **muß besprochen werden**—The film must be discussed.
This should be your first option!!!

2. *werden + infinitive* (a verb ending in *-n* or *-en* only with no vowel change) = *will:*

Der Mann **wird** mit der Frau **singen**—The man will sing with the woman.
Der Briefträger **wird** Fräulein Meier **helfen müssen**—The mailman will have to help Fräulein Meier.

3. *werden + predicate adjective* (or a predicate nominative) = *become:*

Der Mann **wird** unglücklich—The man becomes unhappy.
Der Mann **wird zu** einem Dichter—The man becomes a poet.
Der Briefträger kann glücklich **werden**—The mailman can become happy.

28.13. Translate these sentences, being particularly aware of how you are translating *werden* (not all of the sentences are passive):

1. An der *Frucht* wird der Baum erkannt.
2. *Hohe Klimmer* und *tiefe Schwimmer* werden nicht alt.
3. Esel werden zur Hochzeit geladen *(invited)*, nur um Wasser zu tragen.
4. Beim *(at the) Tanze* wird die Unschuld *(innocence)* umgebracht *(murdered);* auf dem *Heimwege* wird sie begraben. (Obviously, this proverb is amazingly puritanical! I cannot imagine any German-speaking person *ever* saying it.)
5. *Rom wurde nicht in einem Tag erbaut.*
6. Kein Armer soll verachtet werden, denn *Christus* war auch arm auf *Erden*.
7. Unter *Räubern* wird kein *Mord* begangen. (There is honor among thieves.)
8. Wer im Frühling nicht sät *(sows)*, wird im Herbst nichts ernten *(reap)*. (Be careful when translating *nicht* and *nichts)*
9. *Freundschaft* muß vergolten werden.

10. Ein auf die Spitze *(point, extreme)* getriebenes *Recht* kann unter manchen Umständen *(circumstances)* zu einem großen Unrecht werden.
11. Wenn der Stein aus der Hand und das Wort aus dem Mund ist, können sie nicht mehr zurückgebracht werden.
12. Die Tür wurde *geöffnet,* und ein beleibter Mann, der einen langen *Bart* hatte, erschien in der Türöffnung.
13. Die liebevollen Katzen Fräulein Meiers sind oft *gestreichelt* worden.
14. Die Erinnerung ist das einzige *Paradies,* aus *welchem* wir nicht vertrieben werden können. (Jean Paul).
15. Rache ist ein Gericht (dish, food), das *kalt* gegessen werden sollte.
16. Aber die deutschen *Revolutionäre* (um 1830), die unter dem Sammelnamen "Junges Deutschland" mißverständlich und unfreiwillig zusammengefaßt wurden, waren der Vergangenheit stärker verhaftet, als sie selbst es ahnten und je zugeben wollten. (Martini)
17. Die *Tanzenden* werden von denen, die die Musik nicht hören, für toll (*mad, crazy*) gehalten.
18. Wittgenstein war einmal krank. Da in der Hausapotheke (medicine chest) ein bestimmtes *Medikament* nicht vorhanden war, wurde mein Vater, der Kaufmann war, ersucht, das Medikament aus Neunkirchen (*the name of a town*) *mitzubringen.* Ich selber wurde beauftragt, Wittgenstein das *Päketchen* zu überbringen . . . . Als ich *hinkam,* war Wittgenstein *bettlägrig.* Er *bedankte* sich vielmals und sagte: "Ich kann dir jetzt nichts geben, aber ich spiele dir etwas auf der *Klarinette* vor." Mir war das ziemlich peinlich. (A former pupil of Wittgenstein recalls his childhood experience with the philosopher.)

Vocabulary

ahnen—to suspect
begehen, beging, hat begangen—to commit
beauftragen—to commission
bedanken (r.)—to thank (a person)
beleibt—stout
bettlägrig—bedridden
* **einmal**—once
* **einzig**—only
erbauen—to build
* die **Erinnerung** (-en)—memory
** **erkennen, erkannte, hat erkannt**—to recognize
* **escheinen**—to appear
ersuchen—to request, ask
der **Frühling** (-s)—spring
das **Gericht** (-s, -e)—food (in this context)
die **Hausapotheke**—medicine chest
der **Heimweg**—way home
der **Herbst** (-es, -e)—fall
die **Hochzeit** (-en)—wedding
* **je**—ever
der **Kaufmann** (-s ¨er)—merchant
der **Klimmer** (-s, -)—climber
laden, lud, hat geladen—to invite
liebevoll—loving, affectionate
das **Medikament**—medicine

mißverständlich—erroneous, misleading
der **Mord** (-s, -e)—murder
* **nicht mehr**—no longer
* **niemals**—never
das **Päketchen** (-s, -)—parcel
peinlich—embarrassing
der **Revolutionär** (-s, -e)—revolutionary
der **Sammelname** (-ns, -n)—collective name
* **selber**—self, even
streicheln—to stroke, pat
toll—mad, crazy
die **Türöffnung**—doorway
überbringen—to deliver
um-bringen, brachte um, hat umgebracht—to murder
unfreiweillig—involuntarily
verachten—to despise
* **die Vergangenheit**—past
vergelten, vergalt, hat vergolten—to reward
* **vgl.—vergleiche**—compare (cf.)
verhaftet—dependent, bound up with
vertreiben, vertrieb, hat vertrieben—to drive away
vorhanden—available
* **worden**—(always) been
* **ziemlich**—rather
zu-geben, gab zu, hat zugegeben—to admit
zurück-bringen, brachte zurück, hat zurückgebracht—to bring back
zusammen-fassen—to combine

28.14. Practice with the forms of *werden:*

1. Es wird getan.
2. Es wurde getan.
3. Es ist getan worden.
4. Es war getan worden.
5. Es muß getan werden.
6. Es mußte getan werden.
7. Es wird getan werden.
8. Die Leute werden gehört.
9. Es wird erkannt.
10. Es wird versprochen.
11. Sie wird das Problem verstehen.
12. Das Problem wird von ihr nicht verstanden.
13. Das Problem wurde verstanden.
14. Die Bilder werden angesehen.
15. Die Studenten werden erwartet.
16. Die Studenten können gesehen werden.
17. Die Tür wurde zugemacht.
18. Die Grammatik wird studiert.
19. Vor acht Jahren wurde der Kritiker oft gelesen.

20. Sie wird in die Bibliothek gehen.
21. Die Frucht wird gegessen.
22. Er wurde begraben.
23. Wird das Lied je gesungen?
24. Ein mit vielen Hunden wohnender Mann wird eine mit vielen Katzen wohnende Frau kennenlernen.

28.15. Participle or infinitive exercise:

wird erstochen
wird erwartet
wird gehen
wird angefangen
wird gebracht
wird gefunden
wird sehen
ist begraben worden
wurde verlesen
wird machen
wurde repariert

29

Constructions to Be Translated Passively into English; the "Fake" Passive

29.1. Some constructions that are active in German may be translated into English as passive. The most common of these constructions are:

1. sentences in which *man* is the subject
2. some verbs that are active in German, but passive in English
3. some reflexive verbs should be translated passively; *sich lassen* is one of the most common of these reflexive verbs.

29.2. Sentences with *man* (one)

Sentences with *man* as the subject can be translated either actively or passively, depending on personal preference. However, at times, a passive translation may sound smoother in English. Examples are:

Man tut das *nicht—One does not do* that, or: That *is not done.*
Man hat Jeronimo Rugera in das Gefängnis *eingesperrt—One locked* Jeronimo Rugera in prison, or: Jeronimo Rugera *was locked* in prison.

29.3. Some verbs that are active in German must be translated into English with the verb "to be." The most common of these verbs are *gelten (to be valid), heißen (to be called), schweigen (to be silent)* and the modal *dürfen (to be permitted).* Here are examples:

Eine Unze guten Beispiels *gilt* mehr als ein Pfund Worte—An ounce of a good example *is worth* more than a pound of words.

Der Hund *heißt* Grimmelshausen—The dog *is named* (or called) Grimmelshausen.
Die Vögel *schweigen* im Walde—The birds *are silent* in the woods.
Das junge Kind *darf* den gewalttätigen Film nicht sehen—The young child *is not permitted to* see the violent film.

29.4. Some reflexive verbs also should be translated with the verb "to be." Here are some examples:

sich befinden to be located
sich finden to be found
sich freuen über to be happy about
sich fürchten vor to be afraid of
sich interessieren für to be interested in
sich spiegeln to be reflected

Here are sample sentences:

Hier *findet sich* ein interessanter Gedanke—Here an interesting thought *is found.*
Fräulein Meier *interessiert sich für* Erdkunde—Fräulein Meier *is interested in* geography.

29.5. ***Sich wiederholen* is translated passively whenever the subject is inanimate.** Here is an example:

Das *wiederholt sich* immer wieder—That *is repeated* again and again.

29.6. ***Sich lassen***
Sich lassen should be translated as *can be* in the present tense, or as *could be* in the past tense. Here are examples:

Das *läßt sich* zeigen—That *can be* shown (present)
Das Problem *läßt sich* leicht verstehen—The problem *can* easily *be* understood (present)

Das *ließ sich* sagen—That *could be* said (past)
Be certain to write this definition into your dictionary if it is not already there!

However, if the subject is a person rather than an abstraction, *läßt sich* should be translated as *has* or even *lets himself.*

Der Mann *läßt sich* die Haare schneiden—The man *has* his hair cut.
Man soll *sich* nicht zu viel träumen *lassen*—One should not *let himself dream* too much.

29.7. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on p. 216–217):

1. Wer sich fürchtet, sieht Gespenster.
2. Der Teufel ist nicht so schwarz, wie man ihn malt *(paints).*
3. Für jeden Topf *(pot)* findet sich ein Deckel *(cover).*
4. *Fische* fängt man mit der Angel *(hook),* Leute fängt man mit *Worten.*
5. Lieben und Beten *(praying)* lassen sich nicht nötigen.
6. Glück läßt sich finden, Behalten *(keeping it)* ist eine Kunst.
7. Der *Expressionismus* läßt sich nicht ohne Nietzsches Vorgang *(precedence)* begreifen. (Martini)
8. Was von *Stroh* ist, muß sich vor dem *Feuer* hüten.
9. Ein zänkisches *(cranky) Weib* und ein triefendes *(dripping)* Dach *(roof),* wenn es sehr *regnet,* lassen sich *miteinander* vergleichen. (Proverbs)
10. Alte Bäume lassen sich nicht biegen.
11. *Leoparden* brechen in den Tempel ein und saufen *(guzzle)* die Opferkrüge leer. Das wiederholt sich immer wieder. Schließlich kann man es vorausberechnen *(calculate in advance),* und es wird ein Teil der *Zeremonie.* (Kafka)

29.8. The "fake" passive

The "fake" (or apparent, or statal) passive is conjugated with a form of the verb *sein* plus a past participle. This passive is a fake because the past participle is an adjective rather than a real verb, and it describes the result of a previous action. Here are examples:

Das Auto ist verkauft (the car is sold) indicates that the car is sold and that it can no longer be bought by anyone; *verkauft (sold)* is an adjective describing the car.
Das Auto wird verkauft (the car is being sold), on the other hand, indicates that the car is in the process of being sold and that anyone who wants to can still buy it.
Die Tür wird zugemacht (the door is being closed) indicates that the door is in the process of being closed (and your cat can still get through it).

Die Tür ist zugemacht (the door is closed), on the other hand, indicates that the door is closed (and your cat can't get through it unless you have a special cat door).

The "fake" passive is easy to translate into English because the verb *sein* is translated literally as *to be,* while the participle is translated naturally as a participle. Examples are:

Die Katze ist *verloren*—The cat is *lost.*
Das Kind *ist* natürlich sehr *erregt*—The child *is* naturally very *excited.*

Note that even though the participle is functioning as a predicate adjective, it still appears at the end of the clause.

29.8. Translate these sentences:

1. Verlobt *(engaged)* ist noch nicht verheiratet.
2. Die Bärenhaut *(bearskin)* soll man nicht verkaufen, ehe der *Bär erstochen* ist.
3. Nachdem die *Kuh gestohlen* ist, sperrt *(locks)* man den Stall *(stable).*
4. Solange man nährt, ist man geehrt, und solange man gibt, geliebt.
5. Dem Tod ist *Macht* gegeben über alles *Endliche* . . . .Aber ihm ist keine Macht gegeben über die Liebe. (Paul Tillich)

Vocabulary

die **Angel** (-n)—fishhook
* **begreifen**—to comprehend
behalten—to keep
biegen, bog, gebogen—to bend
das **Dach** (-es, ¨er)—roof
** **ehe**—before
ehren—to honor
ein-brechen—to break in
erstechen, erstach, erstochen—to stab
fangen (fängt)—to catch
* **finden** (r)—to be found
* **freuen** (r)—to be pleased
das **Gespenst** (-es, -er)—ghost
hüten (vor) (r)—to be on guard (against)
* **immer wieder**—again & again
* die **Kunst** (¨e)—art
* **lassen** (läßt) (r)—can be
leer—empty
* die **Macht**—power, strength, might
malen—to paint
miteinander—with one another
** **nachdem**—after
nähren—to nourish
* **noch nicht**—not yet
nötigen—to force
der **Opferkrug** (-s, ¨e)—sacrificial vessel
saufen—to guzzle
schließlich—finally
* **schwarz**—black

** **solange**—as long as
der **Stall** (-s, -e)—stable
* das **Teil** (-s, -e)—part
der **Topf** (-es, ⸚e)—pot
* **vergleichen**—to compare
verheiraten—to marry
verkaufen—to sell
voraus-berechnen—calculate in advance
* **wiederholen** (r)—to be repeated
zänkisch—cranky

Reading Selection: *Zwei Chassidische* (Hasidic) ***Geschichten*** (Martin Buber)

I. Eine arme Apfelhändlerin (lady apple dealer), deren Stand nah am Hause Rabbi Chaims von Zans war, kam einst klagend zu ihm: "Unser Rabbi, ich habe noch kein Geld, um für den Sabbat einzukaufen." "Und dein Apfelstand?" fragte der Zaddik (wise man). "Die Leute sagen", antwortete sie, "meine Äpfel seien (are) schlecht, und sie wollen keine kaufen." Sogleich lief Rabbi Chaim auf die Gasse und rief: "Wer will gute Äpfel kaufen?" Im Nu (immediately) sammelte sich die Menge um ihn, die Münzen flogen unbesehen und ungezählt herbei, und bald waren alle Früchte zum doppelten und dreifachen Preis verkauft. "Sieh nur", sagte er zur Frau, als er sich zum Gehen wandte, "deine Äpfel waren gut, die Leute haben es nur nicht gewußt."

II. Ehe Rabbi Mordechai von Neshiz seinen Beruf erkannte, betrieb er einen kleinen Handel. Nach jeder Reise, die er unternahm, um seine Waren zu verkaufen, pflegte er ein wenig Geld zurückzulegen, um sich für das Hüttenfest (Feast of Tabernacles) eine Etrogfrucht (a citron used in a religious service) zu erstehen (get). Als er mehrere Rubel beisammen hatte, fuhr er in die Kreisstadt (town) und dachte unterwegs unablässig daran, ob es ihm wohl vergönnt (granted) würde (would be), unter den dort feilgebotenen (offered) Paradiesäpfeln (literally: a *paradise apple;* here, an *Etrog* is meant) den schönsten zu erwerben. Da sah er mitten auf der Straße einen Wasserverkäufer stehen, der um sein gefallenes Pferd jammerte. Er stieg ab und gab dem Mann all sein Geld, daß er sich ein anderes kaufe (might buy). "Was macht es aus?" sagte er lachend zu sich, als er sich auf dem Heimweg machte, "alle werden den Segen (blessing) über dem Etrog sprechen, und ich spreche meinen Segen über diesem Pferd." Zu Hause fand er einen herrlichen Etrog vor, den ihm Freunde indessen gespendet hatten.

30

Subjunctive I

30.1. The German subjunctive is not too difficult to translate (although most explanations of the subjunctive, including this one, may seem long and confusing) because often the context forces the reader to use the subjunctive naturally, whether or not the form is recognized.

There are two types of the subjunctive, one based on the infinitive root of the verb, and one based on the past tense. At this point, it will be crucial for you to learn the infinitive and the past subjunctive forms of *sein (sei*—infinitive; *wäre*—past) and *haben (habe*—infinitive; *hätte*—past), as these are the verbs that appear most frequently in your reading.

30.2. The subjunctive is formed from the infinitive root/stem of the verb (which I will call "subjunctive I," although it is sometimes called the present subjunctive).

Here are some examples of the subjunctive based on the infinitive stem of the verb in comparison with the present indicative:

indicative	**subjunctive I**	**subjunctive I**	**subjunctive I**	**subjunctive I**
(gehen)	*(gehen)*	*(sein)*	*(haben)*	*(werden)*
ich gehe	gehe	sei	habe	werde
*du gehst	gehest	sei(e)st	habest	werdest
***er geht**	**gehe**	**sei**	**habe**	**werde**
wir gehen	gehen	seien	haben	werden
*ihr geht	gehet	sei(e)t	habet	werdet
sie gehen	gehen	seien	haben	werden
Sie gehen	gehen	seien	haben	werden

*For verbs except ***sein*** and the modals ***(dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen,*** and ***wollen),*** present indicative and the Subjunctive I will be identical except for second and third person singular and the informal you plural.

30.3. The most common use of this subjunctive form is indirect discourse, which is, whenever a sentence includes what someone has said or thought without using his direct words. Examples are:

Er sagt, er ***habe*** die Eintrittskarte—He says, he *has* the admission ticket.
Sie glaubt, sie ***spreche*** die Wahrheit—She believes she *is speaking* the truth.

The subjunctive I generally appears after verbs such as ***sprechen*** *(speak),* ***sagen*** *(say),* ***fragen*** *(ask),* ***antworten*** *(answer),* ***glauben*** *(believe),* ***denken*** *(think),* ***versprechen*** *(promise),* ***meinen*** *(be of the opinion, suppose),* ***erzählen*** *(explain),* ***hoffen*** *(hope),* or even ***schreiben*** *(write).*

A rough equivalent of this in English is shown by adding the word *"that"* after similar verbs: Er glaubt, er habe viel zu tun—He believes *that* he has a lot to do.

While it is not necessary to add *"that"* to your translation, chances are that if you feel like adding it, you are dealing with a sentence that is in indirect discourse, and therefore you do not need to add any auxiliaries to the verb in your translation to prove that you realize it is subjunctive I.

30.4. Although this form is subjunctive in German, it is not subjunctive in English. Therefore, it is to be translated as an indicative verb. Moreover, it should be translated either present or past tense, depending on whether the supposition verb *(sagen, hoffen,* etc.) is present or past. Here are examples:

Sie ***glaubt,*** sie ***verstehe*** den komplizierten Begriff—She ***believes*** she ***understands*** the complicated concept. (present)

Sie *glaubte*, sie *verstehe* den komplizierten Begriff—She *believed* she *understood* the complicated concept. (past)
Er *sagt*, er *sei* glücklich—He *says* he *is* happy (present)
Er *sagte*, er *sei* glücklich—He *said* he *was* happy (past)

30.5. The present perfect is formed by using the subjunctive I form of either *haben* or *sein* with a participle. Here are examples:

Er sagte, er *habe* den Begriff *verstanden*—He said he *had understood* the concept.
Fräulein Meier glaubte, ihr Kindheitstraum *sei* Wirklichkeit *geworden*—Fräulein Meier believed, her childhood dream *had become* a reality.

30.6. Note that the subjunctive I can be continued beyond the initial clause:

K. erklärte Hans, daß eine solche Hilfe nicht nötig **sei**, Zanken (scolding) **gehöre** wohl zu des Lehrers Natur. . ., übrigens (moreover) **wirke** auf K. dieses Zanken nicht so wie auf einen Schüler, er **schüttele** es **ab**, es **sei** ihm fast gleichgültig—K. explained to Hans that such a help **was** not necessary, chiding indeed **belonged** to the teacher's nature, moreover, this chiding **did not affect** K. as it would a pupil, he **could shake** it off, it **was** almost indifferent to him. (Kafka)

30.7. Occasionally, this subjunctive will also be used as a command. A good example is the Lord's Prayer: "Unser Vater im Himmel. Dein Name *werde* geheiligt. Dein Reich *komme*. Dein Wille *geschehe* auf Erden wie im Himmel."—Our Father in Heaven. *Let* thy name be hallowed. *Let* thy kingdom come. *Let* thy will be done . . .

The expletive Gott*sei*dank—*let* God be thanked, or Thank God—also has the command subjunctive within it.

This form can be recognized because the third person singular ends in *-e* rather than *-t* for present tense; moreover, the forms will always be either imperative or subjunctive I. Also, a straight indicative translation will seem somewhat inappropriate. Here are other examples:

Gott *gnade* dem, der mit faulen Leuten haushält—*Let* God bless him who associates with lazy people.
Besser, es *fresse* mich ein Wolf als ein Lamm—It is better that a wolf *eat* me, than a lamb (eat me).

30.8. When the verb is followed by *wir* and the sentence has an exclamation point, it is best translated by *let us*. Examples are:

Vergessen wir nicht, das zu tun!—*Let us* not forget to do that!
Gehen wir jetzt!—*Let us go* now!
Seien wir glücklich!—*Let us be* happy!

30.9. At other times, subjunctive I (which is not indirect discourse) should be translated into English with *may, should,* or even without an *-s* ending on the verb. Examples are:

Obwohl es gut *sei,* gefällt es ihr nicht—Although it *may be* good, it does not please her.
Man *vergesse* nicht. . .—One *should* not forget. . .
Gott *helfe* ihm!—God *help* him!

Note the difference between the indicative and the subjunctive I:

Man glaubt das nicht—One *does not believe* that (indicative)
Man glaube das nicht—One *should not believe* that (subjunctive I)

30.10. ***Summary:***

1. If the sentence starts with a clause with a verb in it such as *sagen* (to say), *fragen* (to ask), *meinen* (to believe), *behaupten* (to assert), *erklären* (to explain) and the next clause has a verb in subjunctive I, do ***not*** embellish the subjunctive I with any auxiliaries. It is **only** indirect discourse:

Er **sagt**, er **sei** glücklich—He **says** he **is** happy.
Er **sagte**, er **sei** glücklich—He **said** he **was** happy.
This happens more often than not with subjunctive I!

2. If the sentence consists of only one clause, and **contains a subjunctive I, it usually must be embellished to point out that it is subjunctive** I

Die Torheit anderer Leute **sei** deine Weisheit—The foolishness of other people **should be** your wisdom (Or: Let the foolishness of other people be your wisdom.)

3. Note the difference between:

Man glaubt das nicht—One **does** not believe that. (-t is still present, indicative)
Man glaube das nicht—One **should** not believe that. (-e shows the subjunctive I)

30.11. Translate these sentences:

1. Ein böses *(guilty)* Gewissen *denkt* stets *(constantly),* der Wolf sei hinterm *Ofen.*
2. Der *Fuchs* meint, daß jeder *Hühner* stehle, wie er. (How do you know that *jeder* does not modify *Hühner*?)
3. Hoch lebe der *König*! (You may translate *hoch* as *long)*
4. Wenn alle dir sagen, du seiest *betrunken,* geh schlafen! (Do you remember the imperative? See 6.4)
5. Kinder meinen, wenn es im Dorf *regnet,* es regne in der ganzen *Welt.* (How do you know that *meinen* is *not* an adjective?)
6. Die Wahrsager erinnern uns: Vergessen wir nicht die Zukunft!
7. Ein *Durstiger* träumt, daß er trinke, wenn er aber aufwacht, ist seine *Zunge* noch trocken (dry).
8. Der Bibelverkäufer schlägt vor: Lesen wir die *Bibel!*
9. Gott bewahre mich vor meinen Freunden!
10. Wer *fürchtet,* er tue zu viel, tut immer zu wenig.
11. Der Briefträger glaubte, er habe viel von Fräulein Meier erfahren.
12. Die Gelehrten sind gute Uhrwerke: nur sorge man, sie richtig aufzuziehen *(wind)*! Dann zeigen sie ohne *Falsch* die Stunde an und machen einen bescheidenen *(modest)* Lärm *(noise)* dabei. (Nietzsche) (Nietzsche's view of scholars tends to be as dim as his view of Christians!)

Vocabulary

an-zeigen—to show
auf-ziehen—to wind
bescheiden—modest
bewahren vor—to protect from
der **Bibelverkäufer** (-s, -)—Bible salesman
* **dabei**—in so doing
das **Dorf** (-es, ¨er)—village
* **erinnern**—to remind
(ohne) Falsch—without error
der **Gelehrte** (-n, -n)—scholar
der **Lärm** (-es)—noise
* **meinen**—to be of the opinion, think
der **Ofen** (-s, ¨)—oven
regnen (i)—to rain
richtig—correctly
schlafen (i)—to sleep
* **sei** (from *sein*)—to be
* **selbst**—self, even
sorgen (i)—to take care
stets—constantly
träumen—to dream
das **Uhrwerk** (-s, -e)—clock,
der **Wahrsager** (-s, -)—prophet
** **wieder**—again
vor-schlagen—to suggest
* die **Zukunft**—future

31

Subjunctive II

31.1. The subjunctive based on the past of the verb (subjunctive II)

The subjunctive II (which is also sometimes called the past subjunctive) usually is formed by adding an umlaut to the past of strong/hard verbs (if these verbs contain vowels *a, o,* or *u*). When weak/easy verbs are encountered, the past indicative and the Subjunctive II are identical. Here are examples:

Past indicative	Subjunctive II	Past indicative	Subjunctive II
singen (strong)		*sagen* (weak)	
ich sang	sänge	sagte	sagte
du sangst	sängest	sagtest	sagtest
er sang	sänge	sagte	sagte
wir sangen	sängen	sagten	sagten
ihr sangt	sänget	sagtet	sagtet
sie sangen	sängen	sagten	sagten
Sie sangen	sängen	sagten	sagten

And here are the Subjunctive II forms *of sein, haben,* and *werden:*

sein	*haben*	*werden*
ich wäre	hätte	würde
du wär(e)st	hättest	würdest
er wäre	hätte	würde
wir wären	hätten	würden
ihr wär(e)t	hättet	würdet
sie wären	hätten	würden
Sie wären	hätten	würden

31.2. Here are the most frequent uses of the subjunctive II

1. Expressions of events that did not occur:

Es ***wäre*** nett ***gewesen,*** wenn er ***gekommen wäre***—It *would have been* nice, if he *had come.*
Wenn er das ***gewußt hätte, hätte*** er die richtige Antwort ***gegeben***—If he *had known* that, he *would have given* the right answer.
Wenn Fräulein Meier hier ***wäre, gäbe*** sie uns eine Erklärung—If Fräulein Meier *were* here, she *would give* us an explanation.

2. Different degrees of assumption or possibility:

Vielleicht ***wäre*** das möglich—Perhaps that *would* be possible.
Es ***wäre*** nett, das zu tun—It *would* be nice to do that.
Wenn ich nur reich ***wäre***—If only I *were* rich!

3. **Clauses of conjecture that cannot be confirmed immediately,** such as after ***als ob*** *(as if),* ***als wenn,*** and ***als:***

Er sieht aus, ***als ob*** er glücklich ***wäre***—He looks *as if* he *were* happy.
Arbeite, ***als könntest*** du ewig leben—Work *as if you could* live eternally; Bete, ***als endete*** morgen dein Streben—Pray *as if* tomorrow your striving *would end.*

4. **Desires:** Ich ***wünschte,*** ich ***könnte gehen***—I *wish* I *could go.* (Note that ***wünschte*** also is subjunctive in German, although it is indicative in English.)

5. **Reported speech** such as the words of a third person (the first person being the narrator and the second person being the listener). The subjunctive II is also used if there is the slightest doubt about the accuracy of the statements:

Man sagte, Fräulein Meier ***ginge gern*** in den Zoo—It was said that Fräulein Meier *liked to go* to the zoo.
Sie behauptet, daß sie hilflos *wäre*—She assert*s* that she *is* helpless.
Sie behauptete, daß sie hilflos *wäre*—She assert*ed* that she *was* helpless.

This is also used in newspapers to avoid libel:

Nach Angaben der Polizei, ***hätte*** der Räuber den Mord begangen—According to police reports, the robber had committed the murder.

31.3. There are both present and past forms of the subjunctive II

Das *wäre* möglich—That *would be* possible (present).
Das *wäre* möglich *gewesen*—That *would have been* possible (past).
Wenn er das *wüßte, täte* er das nicht—If he *were to know* (or *knew)* that, he *would not do* that (present).
Wenn er das *gewußt hätte, hätte* er das nicht *getan*—If he *had known* that, he *would* not *have done* that (past).
Note that in the past form the subjunctive of either *sein (wäre)* or *haben (hätte)* is used as the auxiliary verb.

31.4. How to translate the subjunctive II

1. When there is only one subjunctive verb in a sentence, it usually will be translated as ***would,*** particularly if it appears in the main clause of the sentence:

Es *wäre* schön, einen neuen Wintermantel zu besitzen—It *would be* nice to own a new winter coat.
Ohne ihre Katzen *wäre* Fräulein Meier sehr betrübt—Without her cats, Fräulein Meier *would be* quite sad.
Vielleicht *ginge* er doch mit uns ins Kino—Perhaps he *would go* to the movies with us, after all.

2. The subjunctive II also will be translated as ***would*** if the verb refers to some event which can happen only in the future:

Er glaubte, er *flöge* nächstes Jahr nach Berlin—He believed he *would fly* to Berlin next year.
Sie sagte, wir *sähen* sie morgen—She said we *would see* her tomorrow.
Arbeite, als *endete* morgen dein Streben—Work as if tomorrow your striving *would end.*

3. The subjunctive II will be translated as ***were*** (or a similar past) whenever itis part of an "if" clause:

Er tat, als ob er das *wüßte*—He acted as if he *knew* that.
Zuviel schmeckt bitter, auch wenn es lauter Honig *wäre*—Too much tastes bitter, even if it *were* pure honey.
Wenn er nur hier *wäre*!—If only he *were* here!

31.5. If . . . then clauses (the conditional)

In most "if . . . then" sentences, both verbs will be subjunctive; in the "if" clause, the subjunctive verb should be translated as were (or a similar past), while in the main clause, the subjunctive verb should be translated as ***would.*** Examples are:

Wenn der Student hier *wäre, sänge* er ein Trinklied—If the student *were* here, he *would sing* a drinking song.
Wenn der Student ein Trinklied *sänge, wäre* er glücklich—If the student *were to sing* a drinking song, he *would be* happy.
Wenn alle Meere ein Meer *wären,* was für ein großes Meer *wär'* das—If all oceans were one ocean, what a great ocean that would be.

Moreover, some subjunctive sentences begin with a verb, and they all follow an "if . . . then" pattern. Again, the verb in the "if" clause (which is the verb starting the sentence) should be translated as *were* while the other subjunctive II verb should be translated as *would.* Here are examples:

Gäbe es keine Armut, so *gäbe* es keine Kunst—If there *were* no poverty, there *would be* no art.
Hätte ich das *gewußt, wäre* ich nicht *dahingegangen—If I had known* that, I *would* not *have gone* there.

31.6. The subjunctive II in conjunction with the passive:

Whenever the subjunctive II is used in conjunction with the passive, the auxiliary will always be *wäre.*
When a subjunctive passive verb is part of the main clause, it should be translated as *would have been . . .* Examples are:

Es *wäre* von dem Gelehrten *erwartet worden,* daß er die Antwort wissen würde—It *would have been expected* of the scholar that he would know the answer.

Wenn das Geißlein sich nicht so gut versteckt hätte, *wäre* es eher *gefunden worden*—If the little goat had not hidden so well, he *would have been found* sooner.

When a subjunctive passive verb is part of an "if" clause, it should be translated as *had been . . .* Examples are:

Wenn es nur eher *erklärt worden wäre*—*If it had* only *been explained* sooner!
Sie sieht aus, als *wäre* sie *geküßt worden*—She looks *as if* she *had been kissed.*

31.7. Translate these sentences:

1. Ohne Musik wäre das Leben ein *Irrtum.* (Nietzsche)
2. Ein Esel bleibt ein Esel, auch wenn er nach *Rom käme.*
3. Wenn er hier wäre, wäre sie glücklich.
4. Wäre die Wahrheit ein Bach *(brook),* hätten die Menschen Wasserscheu *(hydrophobia).*
5. Wenn er an den ehemaligen *(former)* Geliebten Fräulein Meiers *denkt,* sieht der Briefträger aus, als hätte er einen Holzapfel gegessen. (He is looking quite annoyed!)
6. Wenn es ein Maul *(mouth)* hätte, so *biß'* es dich. (It looks mean and hostile. Or, it is quite obviously right in front of you.)
7. Wenn Arbeit so lustig und *leicht* wäre, so täte es der Bürgermeister selbst.
8. Ich wüßte nicht zu *leben,* wenn ich nicht noch ein *Seher* wäre dessen, was kommen muß. (Nietzsche)
9. Wenn es möglich gewesen wäre, den Turm *(tower)* von Babel zu erbauen, ohne ihn zu erklettern, es wäre erlaubt worden. (Kafka) (Note: do not add a *would* to the *if* clause!)
10. *Sneewittchen* erzählte den sieben Zwergen, daß seine *Stiefmutter* es hätte wollen umbringen lassen, der Jäger *(hunter)* hätte ihm aber das Leben geschenkt, und da wäre es den ganzen Tag gelaufen, bis es *endlich* ihr Häuslein *gefunden* hätte. (Note that *es* should be translated as *she* because the noun *Sneewittchen* is neuter.)
11. Niemand außer dem Briefträger hätte erwartet, daß der *einsichtsvolle,* die Zukunft der Erde behandelnde Aufsatz *(essay)* von Fräulein Meier geschrieben worden war.
12. Warum kann der *Hund* Furcht, aber nicht Reue *(repentance)* empfinden? Wäre es *richtig* zu sagen, "weil er nicht *sprechen* kann"? (Wittgenstein) (How do you know that *kann* and *empfinden* have to go together?)
13. Jeronimo war starr *(rigid)* vor Entsetzen; und gleich, als ob sein ganzes Bewußtsein *(consciousness, mind)* zerschmettert worden wäre, *hielt* er sich jetzt an dem

Pfeiler *(column),* an *welchem* er hatte sterben wollen, um nicht *umzufallen.* (Kleist)

14. Zarathustra über Jesus:
Wäre er doch in der Wüste geblieben und ferne von den *Guten* und Gerechten! Vielleicht hätte er leben gelernt und die Erde lieben gelernt—und das Lachen dazu . . . Er starb zu früh: er selber hätte seine Lehre widerrufen, wäre er bis zu meinem Alter gekommen. (Nietzsche) (So if Jesus had only lived to be forty, he would have thought just like Nietzsche!)

Vocabulary

* **als ob**—as if
  das **Alter** (-s, -)—age
* **auch wenn**—even if
  der **Aufsatz** (-es, ¨-e)—essay
* **aus-sehen** (i)—to seem, appear
* **außer**—except for
  der **Bach** (-es, ¨-e)—brook
  behandeln—to treat
** **bis zu**—to the point of
  bisse—subj. of beißen—to bite
  das **Bewußtsein** (-s)—consciousness, mind
  der **Bürgermeister** (-s, -)—mayor
  dazu—in addition
* **dessen**—of that (review 25.13)
  ehemalig—former
  einsichtsvoll—insightful
  empfinden—to feel, perceive
  das **Entsetzen** (-s)—horror
  erbauen—to build
  erklettern—to climb
  erlauben—to allow
** **erwarten**—to expect
** **erzählen**—to explain, tell
* **fern**—far
* **früh**—early
  gäbe—subj. of geben
  geliebt—loved
* **gleich**—immediately
  halten—to hold
* **hätte**—subj. of haben
  der **Holzapfel** (-s, ¨-)—crabapple
  der **Irrtum** (-s, ¨-er)—error
  der **Gerechte** (-n, -n)—righteous one
  käme—subj. of kommen
  laufen—to run, go
* die **Lehre** (-n)—teaching, doctrine
** **möglich**—possible
** **niemand**—no one
  die **Reue**—repentance
* **selber**—himself
  das **Sneewittchen**—Snow White
  spräche—subj. of sprechen
  starr (vor)—rigid (with)
  um-bringen—to kill
  um-fallen (i)—to fall down
* **wäre**—subj. of sein
* **weil**—because
* **welch**—which, what
  widerrufen—to renounce
* **wüßte**—subj. of wissen
  die **Wüste** (-n)—desert
  zerschmettern—to smash
* die **Zukunft**—future

31.8 Subjunctive practice (not all of these are subjunctive, so be especially careful):

1. Wenn er hier wäre, ginge er mit uns.
2. Wenn er hier gewesen wäre, wäre er mit uns gegangen.
3. Wenn er ihr eine E-Mail schriebe, so wäre sie glücklich.
4. Sie sieht aus, als hätte sie viel zu tun.
5. Sie sah aus, als hätte sie viel getan.
6. Sie glaubt, sie sei freundlich.
7. Sie glaubte, sie sei freundlich.
8. Sie sei freundlich.
9. Wäre sie hier, so wäre er auch hier.
10. Er sagt, er habe viele Freunde.
11. Er sagt, er hätte viele Freunde.
12. Sie wünschte, sie hätte viele Freunde.
13. Er tat, als wäre alles in Ordnung.
14. Gott helfe ihm.
15. Gott hilft him.
16. Das läßt sich sagen.
17. Das ließe sich sagen, wenn es wahr wäre.
18. Wenn er seine Stimme nicht verloren hätte, so sänge er mit uns.
19. Es wäre schön, deutsch lesen zu können.
20. Nach Berichten (reports) der Polizei hätten die Räuber den Mord begangen (committed).
21. Wenn das jüngste Geißlein sich nicht so gut versteckt hätte, wäre es von dem Wolf gefunden und gefressen worden.

32

Other Subjunctive Forms

32.1. The subjunctive forms of the modals

Here are two charts giving the subjunctive forms of the modals:

The subjunctive I (formed from the infinitive stem of the modal)

	dürfen	**können**	**mögen**	**müssen**	**sollen**	**wollen**
ich	dürfe	könne	möge	müsse	solle	wolle
du	dürfest	könnest	mögest	müssest	sollest	wollest
sie	dürfe	könne	möge	müsse	solle	wolle
wir	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr	dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
Sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

The subjunctive II (formed from the past stem of the modal)

	dürfen	**können**	**mögen**	**müssen**	**sollen**	**wollen**
ich	dürfte	könnte	möchte	müßte	sollte	wollte
du	dürftest	könntest	möchtest	müßtest	solltest	wolltest
sie	dürfte	könnte	möchte	müßte	sollte	wollte
wir	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten	sollten	wollten
ihr	dürftet	könntet	möchtet	müßtet	solltet	wolltet
sie	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten	sollten	wollten
Sie	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten	sollten	wollten

The subjunctive formed from the infinitive stem of the modal probably will not appear too often in your reading. Consequently I am giving you the chart primarily as a reference, in case you do come across it.

32.2. The subjunctive II of the modals appears more often; therefore, you should become familiar with it. Here are sample sentences:

Wenn er einundzwanzig wäre, *dürfte* er Schnaps trinken—If he were twenty-one, he *would be permitted* to drink brandy.
Er *müßte* dahin gehen, wenn er nicht krank wäre—He *would have* to go, if he were not sick.
Möchte generally will be translated as *would like to:* Fräulein Meier *möchte* ein Glas Schnaps trinken—Fräulein Meier *would like to* drink a glass of brandy.
Könnte generally will be translated as *could:* Es wäre gut, Bücher zu kaufen, wenn man die Zeit, sie zu lesen, mitkaufen *könnte*—It would be good to buy books if one *could* buy the time to read them along with them. (Schopenhauer)

32.3. Note the following possible meanings of subjunctive modals:

dürfte—might be; *wollte*—wished; *sollte*—should

Das *dürfte* möglich sein—That *might be* possible.
Ich *wollte,* ich könnte gehen—I *wished* I could go.
Ich *sollte* studieren, anstatt einen Krimi zu lesen—I *should* study instead of reading a murder mystery.

32.4. Here is a comparison of the present indicative, past indicative, and subjunctive II of the modals *dürfen, können, mögen,* and *müssen.* Note that the infinitive

and the third person plural *(they) present indicative* have umlauts, as does the *subjunctive*. Therefore, whenever you see any of these modals with umlauts, be careful to note whether the verb is indicative or subjunctive, and try not to confuse them. Here is a chart:

	dürfen	**können**	**mögen**	**müssen**
present indicative				
er , es, sie	darf	kann	mag	muss
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen
past indicative				
er	durfte	könnte	mochte	mußte
sie	durften	konnten	mochten	mußte
subjunctive II				
er	dürfte	könnte	möchte	müßte
sie	dürften	könnten	möchten	müßten

Fortunately the definition for both ***konnte*** (indicative) and ***könnte*** (subjunctive) is *could.*

32.5. *Hätte* in conjunction with a modal will always indicate something that could (would, should) have taken place, but which did not. Here are examples:

Er *hätte* gehen können—He *could* have gone.
Fräulein Meier *hätte* das dem Bürokraten nicht sagen sollen—Fräulein Meier *should* not have said that to the bureaucrat.

32.6. Translate these sentences (vocabulary is on p. 234):

1. Wenn alle *Lügner* Hafer *(oats)* fräßen, müßten die Pferde *verhungern.*
2. Der *Geschichtsschreiber* berichtet, was geschehen ist, der Dichter, was geschehen könnte. (Aristoteles)
3. Vielleicht hätte der Mann seiner Frau sein Geheimnis (seine Freude an Musikdosen) erzählen sollen.
4. Wer möchte mit Fräulein Meier in die Schweiz fahren?
5. Der Faule sagt: Es ist ein Löwe draußen; ich könnte getötet werden auf der Gaße. (Proverbs)
6. Die deutsche Sprache hat einen großen Reichtum an Sprichwörtern. Gleichwohl dürfte es nicht übel sein, auch die Sprichwörter aus anderen Sprachen zu borgen, die sich kurz und nachdrücklich übersetzen lassen. (Lessing)

32.7. The conditional, formed by the subjunctive form of *werden* (*würde*)

Occasionally, the subjunctive form of *werden* will be used in conjunction with other verbs. (The conjugation of the subjunctive form of *werden* is given to you in 31.1.) **Note that the subjunctive II of *werden* (generally either *würde* or *würden*) will almost always mean *would!*** Here are examples:

Ich *würde gehen,* wenn ich die Zeit dafür hätte—I *would go* if I had the time for it.
Er *würde* das *tun müssen,* wenn er hier wäre—He *would have to do* that if he were here.
Es gibt eine Menge Dinge in der Welt, die ich gerne anders hätte als sie in Wirklichkeit sind; aber in einer Welt ohne Böses *würde* das Leben nicht lebenswert *sein*—There are a number of things in the world that I would like to have different from what they are in reality, but in a world without evil, life *would* not *be* worth living. (T.S. Eliot)

32. 8. Note: do *not* confuse ***würde*** with its non-subjunctive form ***wurde,*** which means *became* when used as the only verb: Es *wurde* dunkel—it *became* dark
or *was* when used passively: Es *wurde* oft *getan*—it *was* often *done.*
The conditional will ***always*** have an umlaut: Er *würde* das getan haben—he *would* have done that...

32.9. Translate these sentences:

1. Zarathustra sagte: "Ich würde nur an einen Gott glauben, der zu tanzen verstünde." (Nietzsche)
2. Wäre Narrheit *(foolishness)* das Zipperlein *(gout),* würde man wenige Leute beim Tanze sehen.
3. Wenn Gott ein Land strafen *(punish)* wollte, würde er den Herren die *Weisheit* nehmen.
4. Wenn die Keuschheit *(chastity)* zum Tanze käme, so würde sie auf *gläsernen* Schuhen tanzen.
5. Wäre es nicht um der Hoffnung willen, das Herz würde brechen.
6. Wenn *Wünsche* Pferde wären, so würden *Bettler reiten.*
7. Eine chassidische *(Hasidic)* Geschichte:
   Rabbi Chajim von Krosno (a place), ein Schüler *(disciple)* des Baalschem (a name), sah einst mit seinen Schülern einem Seiltänzer *(tightrope-walker)* zu. Er war so *tief* in den Anblick *versunken,* daß sie ihn fragten, was es sei, das seine Augen an die törichte Schaustellung *(exhibition)* banne *(attracted).* "Dieser Mann", antwortete er, "setzt sein Leben aufs Spiel *(gambles with his life),* ich könnte nicht sagen

weswegen. Gewiß aber kann er, während er auf dem Seil *(rope)* geht, nicht daran *denken,* daß er mit seiner Handlung *(action) hundert* Gulden *(guilders)* verdient; denn sowie *(as soon as)* er dies dächte, würde er abstürzen" *(fall off).* (Buber)

Vocabulary

abfallen (i)—to fall off
der **Anblick** (-es, -e)—spectacle
bannen—to attract
** **bauen**—to build
borgen—to borrow
* **dächte**—subj. of denken
* **dürfte** (sometimes)—might be
fräße—subj. of fressen—to eat like an animal
das **Geheimnis** (-es, -sse)—secret
** **geschehen**—to happen
** **gewiß**—certain
gläsern—glass
gleichwohl—nevertheless
die **Handlung** (-en)—action
* **lassen** (r.)—can be
der **Lügner** (-s, -)—liar
* **möchte**—would like to; might
nachdrücklich—emphatic, firm
der **Schüler** (-s, -)—disciple
spielen—to play
töricht—foolish
übel—evil, bad, wicked
übersetzen—to translate
verdienen—to earn
verhungern (i)—to starve
versunken—absorbed
* **verstünde**—subj. of verstehen—to know how to
weswegen—on what account
* **wollte** (sometimes)—wished
* **würde**—would
zu-sehen (i)—to watch

Reading Selection: ***Der Schwan*** **(Slawomir Mrozek)**
(If you don't wish to use a dictionary, vocabulary for this section is given in Appendix K.)

Im Park befand sich ein Teich *(pond).* Seine Zierde *(adornment)* war ein Schwan. Eines Tages war der Schwan verschwunden. Halbstarke hatten ihn gestohlen.

Der Vorstand der Städtischen Grünanlagen *(municipal park district)* besorgte einen neuen Schwan. Um ihm das Los seines Vorgängers zu ersparen, wurde ihm ein eigener Wächter zugeteilt.

Dieser war ein alter, seit Jahren vereinsamter Mann. Als er seinen Posten antrat, begann es abends bereits kalt zu werden. Niemand kam mehr in den Park. Der Alte ging um den Teich herum, paßte auf den Schwan auf und sah manchmal in die Sterne. Ihn fror. Er hatte Lust, auf einen Sprung *(on a whim)* in die kleine Wirtschaft *(inn)* in der Nähe des Parks zu gehen. Schon wollte er sich auf den Weg machen, als ihm der Schwan einfiel. Er befürchtete, dieser könne während seiner Abwesenheit gestohlen werden. Dann verlöre er seinen Posten. Er verzichtete *(gave up)* also auf sein Vorhaben.

Aber die Kälte quälte (*tormented*) ihn immer mehr und vertiefte seine Einsamkeit. Schließlich beschloß er, zusammen mit dem Schwan in die Wirtschaft zu gehen. Selbst wenn jemand in den Park käme, um sich der schönen Natur zu erfreuen, würde er das Fehlen des Schwans nicht sofort bemerken. "Die Nacht ist sternklar, aber ohne Mondschein, und wir kommen gleich zurück", dachte er und nahm den Schwan mit.

Die Wirtschaft war voll Wärme und Bratenduft *(smell of baking)*. Der Alte setzte den Schwan sich gegenüber auf einen Stuhl, um ihn im Auge zu behalten. Dann bestellte er ein bescheidenes (modest) Mahl und ein Gläschen Wodka, um sich aufzuwärmen.

Als er sein Hammelfleisch *(mutton)* mit Lust und Zufriedenheit verzehrte *(consumed)*, fiel ihm auf, daß ihn der Schwan ganz eigenartig ansah. Der Vogel tat ihm leid. Solange dieser vorwurfsvolle *(reproachful)* Blick auf ihm ruhte, konnte er nicht essen. Er rief den Kellner *(waiter)* und bestellte für den Schwan eine in warmem, gezuckertem Starkbier aufgeweichte Semmel. Der Schwan wurde fröhlich, und nachdem sie ihr Mahl beendet hatten, kehrten beide munter und zufrieden auf ihren Posten zurück.

Am nächsten Abend war es wieder kalt. Die Sterne glänzten besonders stark, und jeder Stern war wie ein kalter Nagel im warmen, einsamen Herzen des Alten. Aber er kämpfte gegen die Versuchung.

In der Mitte des Teichs schwamm als sanft leuchtender weißer Fleck *(spot)* der Schwan.

Bei dem Gedanken, welch ein Schauer *(shudder)* jeden durchdringen müsse, der in einer solchen Nacht mit Wasser in Berührung (*contact*) käme, wurde der Alte ganz gerührt. Sollte der arme Schwan gar nichts vom Leben haben? Bestimmt würde er lieber in einer warmen Ecke sitzen und etwas essen.

Er nahm also den Vogel unter den Arm und begab sich (proceeded) in die Wirtschaft.

Und wieder kam ein Abend, und wieder überfiel Melancholie den Alten. Aber diesmal war er fest entschlossen, nicht in die Wirtschaft zu gehen. Gestern auf dem Nachhauseweg hatte der Schwan getanzt und unglaubliche Sachen gesungen.

Als er am Ufer *(shore)* saß und in den Himmel oder in den leeren, beißend kalten Park blickte, fühlte er plötzlich ein zaghaftes *(timid)* Zupfen *(tug)* an seinem Hosenbein *(trouser leg)*. Der Schwan war ans Ufer geschwommen, um ihn an etwas zu erinnern. Da gingen sie.

Einen Monat später wurde der Alte zusammen mit dem Schwan entlassen. Der Schwan torkelte *(swayed)* am hellichten Tage auf dem Wasser. Die Mütter, die mit ihren kleinen Kindern in den Park kamen, um sich zu erholen *(relax)* und den Vogel anzusehen, hatten sich beschwert *(complained)*. Der Kinder wegen. Daraus ersieht man, daß moralische Haltung auch für den bescheidensten Posten erforderlich *(necessary)* ist.

33

If a Sentence Starts with a Verb

33.1. So far, you have been told that a sentence can begin with a verb

1. if the sentence is a question (cf. 6.6)

Ist Arbeit der beste Schlaftrunk—*Is* work the best sleeping-potion?

2. or if it is a command (cf. 6.6)

Lerne Geschichte, sonst bleibst du ewig ein Kind—*Learn* history, or else you will remain eternally a child.

3. or if the verb appears in the subjunctive I form and is followed by *wir,* the verb will be translated *let us* (cf. 30.8)

Studieren wir jetzt—*Let us* study now!

33.2. However, a sentence beginning with a verb can also signal an if . . . then construction.

This type of sentence will always contain two clauses separated by commas; the first clause will begin with a verb and the second clause generally will begin with the word *so* or ***dann.*** Here are examples:

Sagt Gott ja, *so* spricht die Schlange nein—If God says yes, the snake says no.
Findet der Teufel jemanden müßig, so wird er ihm Arbeit schaffen—If the devil finds someone idle, he will create work for him.

33.3. These sentences are to be translated in the following way:

1. Begin the sentence with if;
2. find the subject of the sentence;
3. place the verb (found at the beginning of the German sentence) after the subject;
4. either translate *so* (or *dann)* as *then,* or omit *so* from your translation.
5. It is acceptable to add a "will" in the "then" clause if future is implied.

Here are more examples:

Hat der Fuchs den Schwanz verloren, *so* sagt er, er sei unnütz—*If* the fox has lost his tail, *then* he *will* say it is useless.
Redet das Geld, *so* schweigt die Welt—*If* money talks *(then)* the world will be silent.

33.4. Translate these sentences:

1. Tanzt ein Alter, so *macht* er viel Staub *(dust).* (This is mean!)
2. Will die Katze nicht mausen *("to mouse"),* so laß sie draußen *(outside).*
3. Klopft die Not *(need)* an, so tut die Liebe die Tür auf. (At least the person in need hopes this will happen.)
4. Fällt das Brot, so fällt es auf die *Butterseite.* (Is this subjunctive or not? How do you know?)
5. Führt ein *blinder* Mann den anderen, werden *beide* nicht weit *wandern.*
6. Bellt *(bark)* ein alter Hund, so soll man aufschauen. (Denn ein alter Hund bellt nicht leichtfertig [*irresponsibly*].)
7. Spricht man vom Wolf, dann lauert er schon *hinterm Busch.* (The English equivalent for this might be: "Speak of the devil.")
8. Fehlt es dir an Wein, so trinke Bier.
9. Kommt der Berg nicht zu mir, so gehe ich zu ihm.
10. Hab' ich keine Küh', so hab' ich keine Müh'. (Is *Küh'* singular or plural?)
11. Gäbe es keine Narren, so gäbe es keine *Weisen.* (If you wish to review *es gibt,* please turn to 9.1.)

12. Die *Welt* ist ein trunkener Bauer; hilft man ihm *rechts* in den *Sattel,* so fällt er links hinab.
13. Bekommt der Arme ein Stück Brot, so *reißt* es ihm der Hund aus der Hand. (Das Glück eines Armen ist allzu kurz!)
14. Fällt der Krug *(jug)* auf den Stein, so zerbricht er; und fällt der Stein auf den Krug, so zerbricht er auch.
15. Ist dein *Feind* auch nur wie eine Ameise *(ant),* so *rechne* ihn doch unter den Elefanten. (No *Feind* is harmless!)
16. Tonio Kröger ging den Weg, den er gehen mußte, ein wenig nachlässig und ungleichmäßig . . . , und wenn er irrging, so geschah es, weil es für etliche *(many)* einen richtigen Weg überhaupt nicht gibt. Fragte man ihn, was in aller Welt er zu werden gedachte, so erteilte *(imparted)* er wechselnde Auskunft *(information),* denn er pflegte zu sagen *(was in the habit of saying)* . . . , daß er die Möglichkeiten zu tausend Daseinsformen in sich trage, zusammen mit dem heimlichen *(secret)* Bewußtsein, daß es im Grunde *(fundamentally)* lauter Unmöglichkeiten seien. (Thomas Mann, "Tonio Kröger")

Vocabulary

an-klopfen (i) — to knock
auf-schauen (i) — to look up
auf-tun — to open
die **Auskunft** — information
der **Bauer** (-s, -n) — farmer
das **Bewußtsein** — awareness
die **Daseinsform** (-en) — form of existence
draußen — outside
erteilen — to impart
* **fehlen** (i) — to lack
* **führen** — to lead
gedenken (i) — to intend
(im) Grunde — fundamentally
heimlich — secret
hinab-fallen (i) — to fall down
* **hinter** — behind
irr(e)gehen (i) — to go astray
der **Krug** (-es, ⸚e) — jug
lauern (i) — to lie in wait; lurk
* **lauter** — nothing but
* **links** — left
die **Mühe** (-n) — effort
nachlässig — careless
der **Narr** (-en, -en) — fool
rechnen — to calculate, to consider
* **rechts** — right
reißen — to rip, tear
der **Sattel** (-s, ⸚) — saddle
* das **Stück** (-s, -e) — piece
überhaupt — at all, generally; **überhaupt nicht** — not at all
ungleichmäßig — irregular
wechselnd — changing
** **weil** — because
* **weit** — far
zerbrechen (zerbricht) — to break into pieces
* **zusammen** — together

34

Other Pronouns

In addition to the pronouns *ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie,* and *Sie,* there are other pronouns which you have encountered already. Here is a summary of them.

34.1. *Alles, etwas,* and *nichts*

Three pronouns are undeclined, regardless of whether they are nominative, accusative, genitive, or dative. They are:

alles—everything; ***etwas***—something; and ***nichts***—nothing.

Here are examples:

Es hat ***alles*** seinen Zweck—***Everything*** has its purpose.
Etwas fehlt—***Something*** is missing.
Was ***nichts*** kostet, taugt ***nichts***—Whatever costs *nothing* amounts to *nothing.*

Occasionally, these three pronouns will be followed by an adjective that is capitalized. Such constructions should be translated as follows:

Alles Schöne gefällt dem Briefträger—***Everything* (that is) *beautiful*** pleases the mailman.
Wer will ***etwas Neues*** hören?—Who wants to hear ***something new?***

Zu seiner Überraschung geschah ***nichts Außergewöhnliches*** auf seiner Reise—To his surprise, ***nothing*** (that was) ***unusual*** happened during his trip.

34.2. *Man, alle, jemand, niemand* and *wer*

These pronouns are all declined in a manner similar to *der* words. Here are their declensions:

	one	*everyone*	*someone*	*no one*	*who*
nominative	*man*	*alle**	*jemand*	*niemand*	*wer*
accusative	eine**n**	alle	jemande**n**	niemande**n**	we**n**
genitive	eine**s**	alle**r**	jemande**s**	niemande**s**	wessen
dative	eine**m**	alle**n**	jemande**m**	niemande**m**	we**m**

*Note that *alle* is plural in German: Alle *sind* hier—Everyone *is* here.

34.3. *Jeder, ander* and *viel*

These pronouns are technically adjectives, and they are declined as if they were adjectives used as nouns. However, they are never capitalized. Their definitions are: *jeder*—each; *ander*—other; and *viel*—many. Here are examples:

Jeder singt auf seine Weise, der eine laut, der *andere* leise—*Each* (person) sings in his (own) way—the one sings loudly, the *other* sings softly.
Jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied—*Each* one is the smith (creator) of his happiness.
Auch der Unordentlichste verlangt von *anderen* Ordnung—Even the most disorganized one demands order from *others.*
Viele werden Heilige um ihres Magens willen—*Many* become saints for the sake of their stomach(s).

ander is especially difficult to determine whether or not it is singular or plural:

Tadle *andere* nicht deiner Mängel wegen—Do not fault *others* on account of your own failings. (plural)
Anderer Fehler sind gute Lehrer—The errors *of others* are good teachers. (plural)
Wer *anderen* alles recht machen will, muß früh aufstehen—Whoever wants to make everything right *for others* must get up early.
ander preceded by *ein* will *always* be singular: Er hilft einem *anderen*—He helps another.

Moreover, *ander* (like *viel* and *jeder* can also be used as an adjective modifying a noun):
Es kann kein Prophet *den anderen* [Propheten] ansehen, ohne zu lachen—No prophet can look at the other without laughing. (singular)
Es kann kein Prophet *die anderen* ansehen, ohne zu lachen—No prophet can look at the other*s* without laughing. (plural)
Andere Fehler sind schwer zu entdecken—*Other* errors are difficult to discover.
Eine Hand wäscht *die andere* [Hand]—One hand washes the other.

34.4. *Der, die, das,* and *die*

The definite articles can also occasionally be used as pronouns. This is particularly true when one of the clauses begins with *wer* or *der.* Here are examples:

Wer alte Säcke mit Seide näht, *der* ist verrückt—*Whoever* sews old sacks with silk is crazy. (For an idiomatic translation, eliminate the *der.*)
Der ist weise, *der* die Zeit nimmt, wie sie ist—*He* (or *that one)* is wise, *who* takes time as it is.
Die Guten müssen *den* kreuzigen, *der* sich seine eigene Tugend erfindet—The good (i.e. the self-righteous people) must crucify *him* (or *that one)—who* invents his own virtue for himself. (Nietzsche)
Die Guten nämlich, *die* können nicht schaffen! *Die* sind immer der Anfang vom Ende—The good namely, *they* cannot create! *They* are always the beginning of the end. (Nietzsche)

34.5. Articles also can be used as placeholders for a previously used noun.

Here are examples:

Es gibt keinen Stolz wie *den* eines reich gewordenen Armen—There is no pride like *that* [pride] of a poor person who has become rich.
Ein Geiziger hat zwei Töchter; *die eine* heißt "Bringher", *die andere* heißt "Tragher".—A miser has two daughters; *the one* is called "Bring-here" and *the other* is called "Carry-here."

34.6. *Einer* and *eines (*and *eine)*

Although the indefinite article *ein* does not usually have an ending in the masculine nominative or neuter nominative and accusative cases, it will have an ending if it refers to a noun used in a different part of the sentence.

Note that the noun following *einer, eines, eine,* etc. will be in genitive case:
Here are examples:

Einer meiner Handschuhe fehlt—*One* of my gloves is missing.
Eines seiner Kinder ist krank—*One* of his children is sick.
Eine der Idealforderungen des Christentums lautet: Du sollst den Nächsten lieben wie dich selbst: *One of* the ideal commandments of Christianity is: Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself. . .

Occasionally, *einer* can be used to refer to one specific person:

Wenn zwei auf einem Pferd reiten, muß *einer* hinten sitzen—When two ride on one horse, *one* must sit behind.
Inzwischen rede ich als *einer,* der Zeit hat, zu mir selber. Niemand erzählt mir Neues: so erzähle ich mir mich selber—Inbetween I speak to myself as *one* who has time. No one tells me anything new: so I will explain myself to myself. (Nietzsche)

34.7. Translate these sentences:

1. Wer im *dreißigsten* Jahr nichts weiß, im *vierzigsten* nichts ist, im *fünfzigsten* nichts hat, der lernt nichts, wird nichts und kommt zu nichts.
2. Wer nichts für andere tut, tut nichts für sich.
3. Wer weiter will, als sein Pferd kann, der steige ab und gehe zu Fuß.
4. Einer teilt reichlich *(abundantly)* aus und hat immer mehr; ein anderer kargt *(is stingy),* wo er nicht soll, und wird doch ärmer. (Proverbs)
5. Eines der Sprichwörter, das Fräulein Meier besonders lieb ist, lautet: Pfau (*peacock*), schau auf deine Beine.
6. Seinem Schicksal *(fate)* mag niemand entrinnen.
7. Wer will, dem ist alles möglich.
8. Viele wären Feiglinge, hätten sie genug Mut.
9. Es hackt keine *Krähe* der anderen die Augen aus.
10. Es geschieht nichts *Neues* unter der *Sonne.*
11. Wenn Hegel alles Wirkliche als vernünftig erklärte, stützte er einen*Realismus,* der die Dichtung, *Philosophie* und Religion nicht mehr als erste Lebensaufgaben empfand, sondern *politische,* wirtschaftliche und wissenschaftliche *Interessen* in den *Vordergrund* schob. (Martini)
12. Es ließe sich alles trefflich schlichten *(performed),*
könnte man die Sachen zweimal verrichten *(execute, do).* (Goethe)

Vocabulary

- **ab-steigen** (i)—to dismount
- * **alle**—everyone
- ** **alles**—everything
- **aus-hacken**—to peck out
- **aus-teilen**—to share
- das **Bein** (-s, -e)—leg
- * **besonders**—especially
- * die **Dichtung** (-en)—literature
- **dreißig**—thirty
- **empfinden**—to perceive
- **entrinnen** (i)—to escape
- * **entweder . . . oder**—either . . . or
- **erklären**—to explain
- ** **etwas**—something
- der **Feigling** (-s, -e)—coward
- * **fünfzig**—fifty
- * **gleich**—immediately
- die **Krähe** (-n)—crow
- ** **lassen** (r)—can be (note 29.6)
- **lauten**—to go, to read, to sound
- die **Lebensaufgabe** (-n)—life's work
- **lieb**—dear
- die **Mut**—courage
- die **Sache** (-n)—matter
- **schieben**—to push
- **schauen** (auf)—to look at
- **stützen**—to support
- **trefflich**—excellent
- **vernünftig**—reasonable
- * **vierzig**—forty
- der **Vordergrund** (-es, -e)—foreground
- ** **weiter**—further
- * **wirklich**—real
- * **wirtschaftlich**—economic
- * **wissenschaftlich**—scientific

I. Aus der *Fröhlichen Wissenschaft*

<u>Wie, wenn</u> *(what if)* dir eines *Tages* oder *Nachts* ein *Dämon* in deine einsamste Einsamkeit nachschliche *(crept)* und dir sagte: "Dieses Leben, wie du es jetzt lebst und gelebt hast, wirst du noch einmal und noch unzählige Male leben müssen; und es wird nichts Neues daran sein, sondern jeder Schmerz und jede Lust und jeder Gedanke und Seufzer *(moan)* und alles unsäglich Kleine und Große deines Lebens muß dir wiederkommen, und alles in derselben <u>Reihe und</u> <u>Folge</u> *(order)*—und ebenso diese Spinne *(spider)* und dieses *Mondlicht* zwischen den Bäumen, und ebenso dieser Augenblick und ich selber. Die ewige Sanduhr des Daseins wird immer wieder umgedreht—und du mit ihr, Stäubchen *(little speck of dust)* vom Staube!" Würdest du dich nicht niederwerfen und mit den Zähnen knirschen *(gnash)* und den Dämon verfluchen, der so redete? Oder hast du einmal einen ungeheuren *(wonderous)* Augenblick erlebt, wo du ihm antworten würdest: "Du bist ein Gott und nie *hörte* ich Göttlicheres!"

II. Vgl. Aus dem *Willen zur Macht*

Gesetzt *(assumed),* wir sagen ja *(yes)* zu einem einzigen Augenblick, so haben wir damit nicht nur zu uns selbst, sondern zu allem Dasein ja gesagt. Denn es steht nichts für sich [allein], weder in uns selbst, noch in den *Dingen:* und wenn nur ein einziges Mal unsere Seele wie eine Saite *(lyre)* vor Glück gezittert und getönt hat, so waren alle Ewigkeiten nötig, um dies Eine Geschehen zu bedingen—und alle Ewigkeit war in diesem einzigen Augenblick unseres Jasagens . . . erlöst, gerechtfertigt und bejaht.

35

Placement of Commas

Commas are crucial for determining how to break sentences up in order to translate them correctly. They are especially troublesome because sometimes they indicate that clauses should continue (when used in sequences and in appositional phrases) while other times they signal when the sentence should be broken up into a separate unit. Note the following ways in which commas are used:

35.1. Sequences:

When commas are used in sequences, they are not breaking up the sentence, and you must continue with it in order to translate the sentence correctly.

1. Commas are used in lists to divide off items (but not before the **und** at the end):

Der Briefträger ist **fleißig, klug, verantwortlich** und nett—The mailman is hardworking, clever, responsible, and nice.

2. This can also happen when adjectives include overloaded adjectives:

Ein **junger, auf** ein Verbrechen angeklagter Spanier—a young Spaniard accused of a crime

35.2. Commas are placed around appositional phrases:

Die Foto-Voltaik, die Umwandlung des Lichts in Strom, hatte Schlagzeilen gemacht—Photo-voltaics, the transformation of light into current, had made headlines.
Er lebte in Feindschaft **mit seinem Halbbruder, dem Grafen Jakob dem Rotbart**—He lived in animosity with his half-brother, the Count Jacob the Redbeard

35.3. Clauses:

1. A comma is used before and/or after each subordinate clause to separate it from the main clause:

Drei leben **freilich, wenn** zwei nicht heim sind—Three live peacefully, when two aren't home
Wo sich eine Tür **schließt,** öffnet sich eine andere—Where one door closes, another one opens
Wer **weiß, was** der Abend bringt—Who knows what the evening will bring
Der **Mann, den Fräulein Meier liebt, ist** glücklich—The man whom Fräulein Meier loves is fortunate.

Sometimes these sentences can seem interminable (and I have put a / where the breaks should be): Hartmann von Aues Versepos "Der arme Heinrich",/ dessen Stoff in Gerhart Hauptmanns gleichnamigen Drama weiterlebt,/ ist die Geschichte eines Ritters,/ der vom Aussatz befallen wird, /den nur der freiwillige Opfertod eines unschuldigen Mädchens heilen kann . . . ./Die Einsicht des Ritters,/ daß es töricht sei, /sich dem entziehen zu wollen, /was über ihn verhängt ist, /rettet dem Mädchen das Leben /und verschafft dem Ritter Heilung durch göttliche Gnade—Hartmann von Aue's verse epic "Poor Heinrich," /whose material continues to live in Gerhart Hauptmann's drama of the same name, /is the story of a knight who is afflicted with leprosy,/ whom only the voluntary sacrifice of an innocent girl can heal . . . ./The insight of the knight/ that it is foolish to want to withdraw from what is given to him [as an affliction]/ saves the girl's life/ and creates salvation for the knight through divine grace.

Moreover, while everything within a relative clause is linked together, a relative clause can "split up" a main clause:

Der Mann hört den Kindern, **die Weihnachtslieder singen,** *zu*—The man listens to the children who are singing Christmas songs.

Da in der Hausapotheke ein bestimmtes Medikament nicht vorhanden war, *wurde mein Vater,* **der Kaufmann war,** *ersucht,* das Medikament aus Neunkirchen mitzubringen—Because a specific medicine was not available in the medicine chest, my father, who was a merchant, was requested to bring the medicine from Neunkirchen.
Der moderne Mensch wird getadelt, daß *er* von der Technik, **auf die er so stolz sei,** *nicht den richtigen Gebrauch mache*—Modern man is scolded that he does not make the correct use of technology of which he is so proud. (C.R. Goedsche)

2. Commas separate main clauses joined by **und** or **oder:**

Er **kam, und** wir aßen—He came and we ate.
But not if an element in the first has to be understood in the second:
Er kam und aß—He came and ate

3. Commas are always placed before the other co-ordinating conjunctions (*aber, sondern, denn*), whether they introduce a clause or a phrase:

Liebe deine **Nachbarn, aber** lege den Zaun nicht nieder—Love your neighbors, but don't take down the fence
Warum kann der Hund **Furcht, aber** nicht Reue empfinden—Why can a dog perceive fear, but not repentance?

4. Commas are sometimes used to join two main clauses when the equivalent English would normally have a semicolon:

Der Arzt **hilft, die Natur** heilt—The doctor helps; nature heals
Die Wärter **entfernten sich, der Tiger** war eben reichlich gefüttert worden—The guards withdrew; the tiger had just been fed abundantly. (Kafka)
Das Mädchen lächelte **die ganze Zeit, sie** schien sehr glücklich zu sein—The girl smiled the whole time; she seemed to be very happy.

35.4. Prior to 1996, commas were put at the end of a clause to introduce a *zu* construction:

Um Spengler richtig zu verstehen, muß man begreifen, daß in seinem Werk der Versuch gemacht wird, **eine Theorie geschichtlicher Entwicklungen zu finden**—In order to understand Spengler correctly, one must realize that in his work the attempt is made to find a theory of historical developments. (C.R. Goedsche)

35.5. Translate these sentences (Because these are all hard, they are included in the answer key in Appendix J).

1. Die *Schule reißt* die Kinder während der *kostbarsten* Entwicklungszeit aus dem Kreis der Familie, *beraubt* sie des Glückes der *Freiheit* und macht aus dem Kinde ein abgehetztes, gedrücktes Geschöpf, dem ein Ausdruck der Müdigkeit, *Furcht* und Langweile anhaftet, während es mit den *Lippen* fremde Worte in einer fremden Sprache wiederholt. (Thomas Mann)
2. In den *höheren* Pariser Kreisen galt es als ein *exklusives* Vergnügen, die Vorstellungen von dem Marquis de Sade in dem "Schlupfwinkel für den *moralischen* Auswurf der bürgerlichen Gesellschaft" zu besuchen.
3. Wenn man einmal glaubt, eine *Regel* [über die deutsche Sprache] gefunden zu haben, welche *festen Grund* bietet, um einen Augenblick in dem allgemeinen Wirrwarr und *Tumult* der zehn Redeteile auszuruhen, so vernimmt man in der *Grammatik:* "Der Schüler gebe acht auf folgende *Ausnahmen.*" (Mark Twain)
4. Der Gelehrte war ein kleiner, *schäbig* gekleideter Mann, dessen Augen stets in der Klasse umherblickten, aber niemals den Studenten *ansahen,* mit dem er sprach.
5. Die *Öffnung* des Weltraums (by means of space travel) könnte unseren, die Erde zum Maßstab machenden *Provinzialismus* überwinden und uns eine neue Vision von der Größe der Schöpfung vermitteln, *nämlich* die *Einsicht,* daß Erde und Menschheit, ihr *Raum* und ihre Zeit nur ein Teil des Ganzen sind. (Paul Tillich)
6. Das moralische Urteil gehört, wie das religiöse, einer Stufe der Unwissenheit zu, auf der selbst der Begriff des *Realen,* die Unterscheidung des Realen und *Imaginären* noch fehlt: so daß "Wahrheit" auf solcher Stufe lauter *Dinge* bezeichnet, die wir heute "Einbildungen" nennen. (Nietzsche)

Vocabulary

abgehetzt—worn out
acht geben—to pay attention to
allgemein—general
anhaften—to cling
der **Ausdruck** (-s ¨-e)—expression
ausruhen—to rest
der **Auswurf**—scum
besuchen—to attend, to visit
bezeichnen—to designate
bieten—to offer
die **Einbildung** (-en)—illusion, deception
die **Entwicklungszeit**—time of development
gedrückt—oppressed
* **gelten**—to be valid
das **Geschöpf**—creature
der **Kreis** (-es, -e)—circle
die **Langweile**—boredom
* **lauter**—nothing but
der **Maßstab** (-s, ¨-e)—measure, standard

die **Müdigkeit**—exhaustion
das **Redeteil** (-s, -e)—part of speech
der **Schlupfwinkel** (-s, -)—hiding corner
die **Schöpfung**—creation
stets—contstantly
die **Stufe** (-n)—stage
überwinden—overcome
umherblicken—to look around
die **Unterscheidung** (-en)—differentiation
das **Urteil** (-s, -e)—judgment
das **Vergnügen** (-s, -)—pleasure
vernehmen—perceive
vermitteln—to convey
die **Vorstellung** (-en)—performance
der **Weltraum**—world space
der **Wirrwarr**—confusion

36

Troublesome Words

About the only thing that these words have in common is that they are all troublesome. I have included them here so that you can take special note of them. First, here is a list of the words discussed in this chapter (which are arranged alphabetically):

36.1. The Troublesome Words

all—all, every	**gelingen**—to succeed (36.12)
alle—everyone	**gerade**—straight, just
als—when, than, as	**gleich**—equal, immediately
also—thus, so	**kennen**—to know
auch—also, even	**können**—to be able to, can
auch wenn—even if	**lauter** (adj.)—pure (adv.)—nothing but
da—there, since, it	**mehr**—more
denn—because, for	**nachdem**—after
doch—still, nevertheless, after all	**nicht**—not
einige—several	**nicht mehr**—no longer
erst—only, not until, first	**nichts**—nothing
fehlen—to lack	**noch**—yet, still
gefallen—to please (36.12)	**noch nicht**—not yet
gehen—es geht mir gut—I am fine (36.12)	**weder . . . noch**—neither . . . nor

Troublesome Words continued

selbst—self, even	**um . . . willen**—for the sake of
so—thus, so, just, then	**um . . . zu**—in order to
so ein, ein so—such a	**voll**—full, full of
stehen—to stand, be, to be written on	**zu**—to, too, closed
um—at, around	

36.2. *All* is used with or without endings. When there is an ending, it is always strong. The strong singular ending is used rarely; it occurs mainly in stereotyped phrases and in proverbial expressions. Here is an example:

Aller Anfang ist schwer—*Every* beginning is difficult.

All with an ending is the plural of *jeder (each, everyone),* and it means *every single one of them;* it precedes nouns and follows pronouns. Here are examples:

Morgen, morgen, nur nicht heute, sagen *alle* faulen Leute—Tomorrow, tomorrow, only not today, say *all* lazy people.
Wir *alle* haben das gewußt—*All of us* have known that.

36.3. *Alle* often will mean *everyone* (cf. 34.2). Examples are:

Es werden nicht *alle* in das Himmelreich kommen—Not *everyone* will come into the Kingdom of Heaven.
Arm und reich, vor Gott sind *alle* gleich—Poor and rich, before God, *all* are equal.

While *everyone* in English is singular, *alle* is plural.

36.4. *Auch* generally means *also.* However, *auch* preceding the noun it modifies means *even.*

Auch Fräulein Meier ist manchmal fleißig—*Even* Fräulein Meier is hardworking sometimes.

Auch wenn and *wenn auch* mean *even if* (cf. 23.6).
Auch wenn es Bratwürste *(sausages/cats and dogs)* regnet, hat Fräulein Meier sich entschieden, den Briefträger zu begleiten—*Even if* it rains cats and dogs, Fräulein Meier has decided to accompany the mailman.

36.5. *Als* is tricky because it can mean *when, than,* and *as.*

As a conjunction, *als* means *when* and it introduces dependent clauses referring to a single event or an action in the past. In these clauses, the verb will always be at the end, and will never be in the present tense. Here is an example:

Als der Student jünger *war,* fuhr er oft mit seinem Fahrrad—*When* the student was younger, he often rode his bicycle (cf. 23.3)

Als means *than* when used with a comparative (cf. 11.4): Er ist größer *als* ich—He is taller *than* I.

***Als* means *as* when it is followed by a noun:**

Fräulein Meier kennt den Briefträger *als* einen sehr sensiblen Mann—Fräulein Meier knows the mailman *as* a very sensitive man.
Bei seinen Freunden gilt er *als* großer Dichter—Among his friends, he is considered *(as)* a great writer.

***Als* when used with the subjunctive can also mean** *as if* (cf. 31.4):

Fräulein Meier sieht aus, *als hätte* sie viel zu tun—Fräulein Meier looks *as if* she *had* a lot to do.
Der Student tat, *als wäre* er glücklich—The student acted *as if he were* happy.

36.6. *Also* will always mean *thus, so.* Remember Nietzsche's *Also sprach Zarathustra (Thus* Spoke Zarathustra).

36.7. ***Da* is one of the most troublesome German words because it is so versatile. As an adverb, *da* can mean** *here* or *there.*

Da bin ich—*Here* I am.
Da blieb er, bis der Bus kam—He stayed *there* until the bus came.

Da can also mean *then, at that time.* Here are examples:

Da lachte der Briefträger—*Then* the mailman laughed.
Von *da an*—from *that time* on
hier und *da*—now and *then.*

Moreover, *da* **used in conjunction with a preposition will mean** *it* (cf. 12.1–12.3). An example:

Er hat einen schönen, mit Edelsteinen besetzten Füller, und er schreibt immer *damit*—He has a beautiful jewelled pen, and he always writes *with it.*

As a subordinating conjunction, *da* **will mean** *since, because, in as much as, while, although* (cf. 23.6):
Da Fräulein Meier nicht zu Hause war, konnte ihre Mutter sie nicht besuchen—*Since* Fräulein Meier was not at home, her mother could not visit her. **When the verb appears at the end of a clause beginning with *da, da* will have to be a subordinating conjunction!**

36.8. *Denn* generally means *because, for* (cf. 21.1). It **rarely** means *then.*

Fräulein Meier ist oft mit dem Briefträger, *denn* seine Gesellschaft gefällt ihr—Fräulein Meier is often with the mailman, for she likes his company.

Sometimes *denn* will appear in the middle of a sentence, in which case it will be used as a flavoring particle:

Wo ist er ***denn***—Where (on earth) is he? Was ist ***denn*** los—What's going on?

36.9. *Doch* means *however, yet, still, nevertheless,* and *after all.* It can be used in a sentence in the following ways:

Das ist *doch* wahr—That *(really) is* true (even though you don't believe me).
Das kann *doch* nicht dein Ernst sein—You don't *really* mean that, do you?
Er ist dumm, aber sie liebt ihn *doch*—He is dumb, but she loves him *nevertheless.*

Doch (like the French *si)* also can be used as a one word contradiction to negative questions. Here is an example:

Haben Sie Tante Lotte immer noch nicht geschrieben?—Haven't you written Aunt Lotte yet? *Doch*!—I have *too* written her!

36.10. *Einige* means *some. Einige* Menschen lesen gern—*Some* people like to read. Do not confuse this word with *einig,* which means *at one, united, in agreement, unanimous.*

36.11. *Erst* when used with age or time references **will always** mean *only* or *not until.* Here are some examples:

Es wurde *erst* heute fertig—It was *not* ready *until* today.
Erst nach seinem Tode wurde der Dichter weltberühmt—*Only* after his death did the poet become world-famous.

Otherwise, *erst* will *mean first: Erst* die Arbeit, dann das Vergnügen—*First* the work, then the pleasure.

36.12. *Fehlen, gefallen, gehen* and *gelingen:* Some verbs in German require an *es* as the subject of the clause, while in English the German noun in the dative case would seem to make a more appropriate subject. Here are examples:

Es fehlt dem Zoo an einem Elefanten (Literally: it lacks to the zoo on an elephant)—The zoo lacks an elephant.
Die Katzenminze *gefällt der Katze* (Literally: the catnip is pleasing to the cat)—The cat likes the catnip.
Es *geht mir* gut (Literally: it goes to me well)—I am fine.
Es *gelingt der Katze,* den Spielzeug zu fangen (Literally: it succeeds to the cat to catch the toy)—The cat succeeds in catching the toy.

36.13. *Gerade* as an adjective means *straight, direct, honest.* However, when used adverbially, *gerade* means *quite, exactly, just, directly.* Here is an example:

Das geschah *gerade* in dem Augenblick des großen Erdbebens—That happened *just* at the moment of the great earthquake.

36.14. *Gleich* as an adjective means *equal, same.* Die Studenten sind *gleichen* Alters—The students are the *same* age.

However, when used adverbially, *gleich* means *immediately.* Ich komme *gleich* wieder—I will return *immediately.*

36.15. *Kennen (to be acquainted with)* and *können (to be able to)* are often confused. Remember that *kennen* generally will be the only verb in the sentence, while *können* usually will function as a modal. Here are two sentences each containing the two verbs in both present and past tense:

Der Student *kennt* das Kind—The student *knows* the child.
Der Student *kann* viel essen—The student *is able to* eat a lot.

Der Student *kannte* das Kind—The student *knew* the child.
Der Student *konnte* viel essen—The student *was able to* eat a lot.

36.16. *Lauter* as an adjective means *pure, genuine, true.*
Von *lauteren* Brunnen fließen *lautere* Wasser—*Pure* water flows from *pure* wells.

However, as an adverb, *lauter* means *nothing but.*

Er trinkt *lauter* Wein—He drinks *nothing but* wine.
Er sieht den Wald vor *lauter* Bäumen nicht—He does not see the forest for the trees. (Literally: He does not see the forest on account of *nothing but* trees.)

36.17. *Mehr* usually means *more.* Das Flußpferd wiegt *mehr* als der Elefant—The hippo weighs *more* than the elephant.

Immer mehr means *more and more.* An example:
Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger bleiben *immer mehr* zusammen—Fräulein Meier and the mailman are together *more and more.*

However, *nicht mehr* can mean both *no more* and *no longer.*

Sie ist *nicht mehr* zu Hause—She is *no longer* at home.

Mehr will occasionally appear at the end of a clause:

Er hat kein Geld *mehr*—He has no *more* money.
Die Tochter des alten Mannes ist kein Kind *mehr*—The old man's daughter is *no longer* a child.

36.18. *Nachdem* generally is used as a subordinating conjunction meaning *after.*

Nachdem er seinen neuen roten Sportwagen gewaschen hatte, fuhr der Briefträger mit Fräulein Meier in die Stadt—*After* he had washed his new red sportscar, the mailman drove to the city with Fräulein Meier.

36.19. *Nicht* and *nichts.* Remember that *nicht* is always an adverb, while *nichts* is always a pronoun. Do not confuse them! Compare:

Wer *nichts* an die Angel steckt, fängt *nichts*—Whoever puts *nothing* on the fishhook captures *nothing.*
Der Briefträger ist *nicht* pessimistisch—The mailman is *not* pessimistic.

36.20. *Noch* generally will mean *yet, still, in addition to.* But it has the following meanings as well:

noch einmal—once more
noch nicht—not yet
noch nie—never (before)
weder . . . noch—neither . . . nor (cf. 21.1)

Weder Fräulein Meier *noch* der Briefträger ist zu Hause—*Neither* Fräulein Meier *nor* the mailman is at home.

36.21. *Selbst* (cf. 26.5) generally is used with the reflexive pronouns to emphasize their meanings. Examples are:

Arzt, heil dich *selbst*—Physician, heal *thyself.*
Jeder ist sich *selbst* der beste Freund—Everyone is for *himself*
his best friend (Or: Everyone is his own best friend).

However, when *selbst* is placed in front of the noun, it will mean *even.*

Selbst der alte Vater des Briefträgers glaubt nicht an die Wahrhaftigkeit aller pessimistischen Sprichwörter—*Even* the old father of the mailman does not believe in the truth of all the pessimistic proverbs.
Selbst unser Herrgott kann es nicht allen recht machen—*Even* our Lord God cannot make it right for everyone.

36.22. *So* has a variety of meanings in addition to *thus, so.*

1. *So* can be used as a filler word, which sometimes can be translated *just,* or it can be omitted:

Das haben wir *so* zum Spaß gemacht—We *have just* done that for fun.

2. So *ein* or *ein so* will mean *such a:*

Das Kind hat *ein so* schönes Lächeln—The child has *such a* beautiful smile.

3. *So* can be used as a comparative (cf. 11.4):

Der Student liest *so* viel *wie* der Professor—The student reads *as* much *as* the professor.

4. *So* can also mean *according to: So* Nietzsche sind die Gelehrten gute Uhrwerke—*According to* Nietzsche, scholars are (like) good clocks.

5. *So* is often used in "if . . . then" clauses to mean *then* (cf. 23.3 and 33.2).

Bezahlen wir die Musik, *so* wollen wir dazu tanzen—If we pay for the music, *then* we also want to dance to it.
Wenn die Armut zur Tür eingeht, *so* fliegt die Liebe zum Fenster hinaus—If poverty comes to the door, *then* love flies out the window.

36.23. *Stehen* usually means *to stand.* But it can also mean *be upright, be situated, be, stand still,* and *stop.* Here are examples:

Tränen *stehen* ihm in den Augen—Tears *are* in his eyes.
Es *steht* in ihren Kräften—It lies in her powers.
Ich *stehe* nicht allein mit meiner Meinung—*I am* not alone in my opinion.
Orangensaft *stand* im Eisschrank—Orange juice *was in* the refrigerator.

Perhaps the most common meaning of *stehen* which may seem strange to you is *to be written.* Here is an example:

Auf dem Zettel *steht* "Entschuldigung"—On the note *is written* "excuse me."

36.24. ***Um*** (a review)

1. As a preposition, *um* can mean either *around,* or *at* (cf. 5.7).Er geht *um* die Ecke—He goes *around* the corner.

In reference to time, *um* means *at:* Fast jeden Abend *um* zehn Uhr studiert Fräulein Meier Erdkunde—Almost every evening *at* ten o'clock Fräulein Meier studies geography.

2. However, *um . . . willen means for the sake of* (cf. 5.13).

Er ist hier *um* seines Freundes *willen*—He is here *for the sake of* his friend.

3. And *um . . . zu* means *in order to* (cf. 20.6).

Wir sind hier, *um zu* werden—nicht, *um zu* sein—We are here *in order to* become—not *in order to* be.

36.25. *Voll* means *full, filled, complete, entire.* It can be used as an adjective in front of a noun to mean *full:*

Er hat eine *volle* Tasche—He has a *full* pocket.

In these cases, *voll* will have a normal adjective ending.

However *voll* also can appear directly in front of a noun, with either no ending or with an *-er* ending; and then it should be translated as *full of.* Here are examples:

Die Liebe ist *voll* Eifersucht—Love *is full* of jealousy.
Das Zimmer des Studenten ist *voller* Katzen—The room of the student is *full of cats.*

36.26. *Zu* is encountered most frequently as a preposition (cf. 5.4). However, it has the other following meanings:

1. When used as a participle with infinitives, it means *to* (Chapter 20):

Die Studenten haben viel *zu* lernen—The students have much *to* learn.

2. As an adverb, *zu* means *to, closed, towards, shut.*

Die Tür des Autos ist noch nicht *zu*—The car door is not yet *shut.*

3. When preceding an adjective or an adverb, *zu* can mean *too.*

Man kann nicht *zu* viel lachen—One cannot laugh *too* much.
Es ist *zu* schön, um wahr zu sein—It is *too* good to be true.

4. When *zu* appears with a form of the verb *to be,* the verb following the *zu* must be translated passively (cf. 20.9):

Viel *ist* noch *zu tun*—Much *is* still *to be done.*

36.27. Translate these sentences:

1. Wie man ißt, so arbeitet man auch
2. Kommt einmal das Glück, so kommen fünf Sturmwinde *(ill -winds)* danach.
3. Unter Gleichen ist der beste Friede,
4. Wer Pech hat, den *beißt* ein Hund, auch wenn er ein *Kamel reitet.*
5. Jedem Lapp' (native of Lappland) gefällt seine *Kapp'.*

6. Auf einem von dem Briefträger an Fräulein Meier geschriebenen Zettel steht: "Ich liebe Dich."
7. Lieber zweimal fragen als einmal irregehen.
8. Gesundheit schätzt man erst, nachdem man sie verloren hat.
9. Unter der Brücke war der *wetterbraune, weißbärtige* Kopf eines *Ruderers* zum Vorschein gekommen, der, aus seinen ungelenken Bewegungen zu schließen, mit der *Lagune* nicht vertraut war. (C. F. Meyer)
10. Und in der Tat schien mitten in diesen gräßlichen *(horrible)* Augenblicken, in *welchen* alle irdischen Güter der Menschen zugrunde gingen und die ganze Natur verschüttet zu werden drohte, der menschliche Geist selbst wie eine schöne *Blume* aufzugehen. (Kleist)
11. Fräulein Meier und der Briefträger sind in die Stadt gefahren, um sich zu verheiraten!

Vocabulary

* **als ob**—as if
* **an-sehen**—to look at
auf-gehen (i)—to rise
* der **Augenblick** (-es, -e)—moment
* die **Bewegung** (-en)—movement
* das **Bild** (-es, -er)—picture
die **Brücke** (-n)—bridge
drohen (i)—to threaten
eng—narrow
* **entweder . . . oder**—either . . . or
* **fahren** (i)—to drive, to go
* der **Friede** (-ns, -)—peace
* **genug**—enough
das **Gut** (-s, ¨er)—property
irdische Güter—worldly goods
irre-gehen (i)—to go astray
* **lieber**—preferably
das **Pech**—bad luck
malen—to paint
der **Ruderer** (-s, -)—rower, oarsman
ruhig—quiet
schätzen—to value
schließen—to conclude, infer
* die **Stunde** (-n)—hour, period
* die **Tat** (-en)—deed; in der **Tat**—in fact
ungelenk—awkward
verheiraten (r)—to marry
* **verlieren**—to lose
verschütten—to bury
vertraut—familiar
zum Vorschein kommen—to appear
wetterbraun—weather-browned
zugrunde gehen—to perish

Final Sentences

1. Ist jedes Ende so schwer wie aller Anfang?
2. Fast *(almost)* alles, was Fräulein Meier tut, ist ihrem Bräutigam angenehm *(agreeable).*
3. Bei der Hochzeitsfeier *(wedding celebration)* wird viel Sekt *(champagne)* getrunken.

4. Nach meiner Erfahrung (*experience*) braucht man zum Erlernen (for the learning) des Englischen 30 Stunden, des Französischen 30 Tage, des Deutschen 30 Jahre. Entweder reformiere man also diese Sprache, oder man lege sie zu den toten Sprachen, denn nur die Toten haben heutzutage noch Zeit genug, sie zu erlernen. (Mark Twain)

APPENDIX A

Strategies for Reading German; Suggested Schedule for Covering *German Quickly*

1. Reading for structure and reading for meaning

Effective reading is a combination of two processes, which involves looking at the specifics (trees) and the general meaning (forest) of the passage. The exercise sentences in *German Quickly* are essentially "tree" sentences because they are meant to help you focus on the specifics of grammatical constructions. The reading passages are "forest" sentences because they require you to take all of the information within the passage into consideration.

In individual ("tree") sentences, you focus on the forms and structures at a very basic level, such as identifying parts of speech, including determining the subject and the verb of each clause, and then you build up the message of the text from these units. To do this, you need to be able to recognize both individual words and larger structures, such as phrases and clauses; you also need to know how to break up interminable sentences into reasonable units. Your familiarity with case endings

and verb placement is often crucial for correct translation. By learning principles of German grammar, we have been mostly concentrating on "tree" processing.

General ("forest") processing involves "reading for meaning." While reading longer passages, you focus on the meaning, remembering the meanings which have been expressed so far, and making predictions about what meanings might be expressed next. You need to use "forest" processing to check the accuracy of your assumptions about the "tree"sentences within the text.

2. First impressions

Even before you start reading the text, you will probably have a rough idea of what it is about. Ideally, the passage will have a title, and it will concern a subject within your field of study. Instead of beginning to read it as if it contained English syntax, it is generally advisable to make some predictions about the content and the key words.

3. Skimming

Look over the text without making any special effort to read particular words or sentences. In the process, you will notice some words that you can recognize or guess. *You may also notice that a certain unfamiliar word occurs repeatedly and decide to look it up before you start reading the text closely.* The information gained in this way can help you make better predictions about the text. *You should also mark these words in your dictionary in case you need to return to them to refine your original definition.*

When skimming, it can be useful to pick out certain features:

a. Cognates and proper names—*Organisation, organisch, Fundamentalismus, Drama, Nietzsche*
b. Nouns and pronouns—it helps that the nouns are capitalized, but don't forget that pronouns can also be subjects.
c. Verbs—especially auxiliaries such as *haben, sein, werden,* and the modals, as well as verbs at the end of a clause preceded by a *zu: zu gehen, verstanden zu haben,* etc.
d. Words that you already know and are sure of
e. Negatives—*nicht, kein,* which can drastically affect the meaning of your reading
f. Logical connectors—*aber, doch, denn, und,* and subordinating or relative pronouns such as *wenn, als, was, wer, die, das, der,* which give important information about the connections between different parts of the text. Because they can also tell you how to break up clauses *these words are all extremely important to know.*

g. Punctuation, especially commas, which also give you information about how to break the sentence up.
h. You will probably find it helpful to keep a list of grammar rules near your dictionary to use as a reference when you are reading.

4. Although a sentence may seem interminable, it is often composed of several smaller units; *it is crucial to tackle a sentence bit by bit to determine its meaning.* Breaks usually consist of commas, semi-colons, colons, or conjunctions such as *und, denn, aber, sondern, daß, als, wenn, wie.* A relative clause will be indicated by a relative pronoun (*der, das, die, den, dem, denen, dessen, deren*) mid-sentence preceded by a comma and with a verb at the end, which will have either a comma or a period after it. Each complete clause will have a subject and a verb within it; *it is crucial to find the subject and the verb and place the verb after the subject and before the object in your English translation.* (See chapters 6, 22, and 23.)

5. Taking care in deciding where to break clauses up

It is important to realize that conjunctions such as *und* and that commas can be treacherous with regard to deciding where to break up clauses, as they sometimes function as connectors and sometimes as dividers. If a clause does not have a comma before an *und,* it will continue beyond the *und:* Sie hat gesungen und getanzt—she has sung and danced. If a clause *does* have a comma before an *und,* the comma and the *und* combined indicate a break: Sie hat schön gesungen, und er hat sie stolz angesehen—She sang beautifully, and he looked at her proudly. (See Chapter 21.) Commas sometimes indicate sequential adjectives: Die glückliche, junge, mit vielen Feunden umgebene Frau war Studentin—The happy young woman surrounded with many friends was a student. However, they can also indicate breaks between clauses: Als sie siebzehn war, war sie beinah ein Star—When she was seventeen, she was almost a star. Als Zarathustra dreißig Jahre alt war, ging er in das Gebirge—When Zarathustra was thirty years old, he went to the mountains. Der Mann, der die Frau liebte, war der Briefträger—The man who loved the woman was the mailman. In German, whenever you see a comma followed by a form of *der* and a verb at the end of the clause, you will be dealing with a relative clause, and everything between the commas will belong together. (See chapters 23–25 and 35.)

6. Predicting the meaning

In addition to pre-reading skills, make a mental note of the content of the larger stretches of the text—paragraphs, for example (provided that they are a reasonable length). This makes it easier to follow the overall message of longer texts and the way the meanings are developed section by section.

7. Guessing

a. Look at the word closely to see whether you recognize parts of the word which you know or which you can find in the dictionary. A knowledge of word-formation patterns in German might be necessary here. (*Nachbar—neighbor; Nachbarschaft—neighborhood; einsichtsvoll—insightful;* see also 17.7.)
b. Look at the context for clues and make basic guesses about the kind of meaning the word could have. *Do not stop reading when you come across an unfamiliar word, since valuable clues as to its meaning are often found in the rest of the sentence, or in the next sentence. Focus on meaning rather than structure, and to look for clues in the following words and the following sentence.* It is often not necessary to understand the exact meaning of a word in order to comprehend the text.

8. *Although the text is linear, your reading of it does not have to be.* You can move through the text as you begin to understand its content. Do not become fixated on any one word or any one sentence! German does not adhere to English word order, as you realize quite well by this point; therefore, you need not stick to English word order to translate correctly.

9. Do not panic! Sometimes, when you come across an especially difficult sentence, it is easy to lose sight of the fact that you nevertheless do know German. It is the linguistic equivalent of runners "hitting the wall," and it happens to most students, regardless of how well they might know German. If this happens to you, take a break from German, then return to it. Acquiring a reading knowledge of German is not a linear process; it involves progress and plateaus and then more progress. Often, a grammar explanation will not seem clear until after you have more of a conceptual framework to understand it. Learning to read German is like constructing a jigsaw puzzle: the more pieces you have in place, the easier it is to fit in the final pieces.

10. Building a vocabulary

This will improve reading efficiency enormously. There are two principal areas:

a. Items of general vocabulary which are likely to feature in a wide variety of texts. My *Important Word* list (Appendix B) is meant to be such a vocabulary. The most important words on the list are: auxiliary verbs (*haben, sein, werden*), modals, connectors and conjunctions, pronouns, prepositions, and negation words as well as common verbs and nouns. If you find yourself looking up the same word several times in the dictionary, you should probably memorize it—

or be able to find it quickly. You might find it helpful to paste my Important Word list into the front of your dictionary.

b. Items of specialized vocabulary in your own field.

c. I have given suggestions for memorizing words in Chapter 2, section 2.10. You may wish to review these.

Note: For other strategies for reading German, consult *Reading German* (Waltraud Coles and Bill Dodd, Oxford University Press, 1997)

SUGGESTED SCHEDULE FOR READING GERMAN QUICKLY

1. Introduction; get a general idea of the pronunciation (although this is difficult if you do not have a teacher).
2. chapters 1 & 2
3. chapter 3, part I
4. chapter 3, part II
5. chapter 4
6. chapter 5, part I
7. chapter 5, part II
8. chapter 6
9. chapter 7
10. chapters 8 & 9
11. chapters 10 & 11
12. chapter 12, including reading selection
13. chapter 13
14. chapter 14
15. chapter 15, including the reading selection
16. chapters 16 & 17 (sentences in 17 are optional)
17. chapters 18 & 19
18. chapters 20 & 21
19. chapters 22 & 23
20. chapters 24 & 25;
21. chapter 26; reading selections are optional
22. chapter 27—a really difficult assignment
23. chapter 28
24. chapter 29 (an easy assignment)
25. chapter 30
26. chapter 31
27. chapters 32 & 33

28. chapters 34 & 35
29. chapter 36
30. review (You may wish to skip reading selections or exercises at the end of chapters and use them when you review the entire book. Once you review the book, many questions you have about the grammar might fall into place.)

APPENDIX B

Important Words

(= most important words; boldfaced words are those which are especially problematic)*

der *Abend*—evening
* *aber*—however, but
aktuell—modern, up-to-date
all—all, every
alle—everyone
allein—alone
alles—everything
* *als*—than, when
als ob—as if
* *also*—thus, so
alt—old
* *an* (a, d)— of, at, on
* *ander*—other
andere—others
ändern—to change
anfangen—to begin
ansehen—to look at
anstatt (g)—instead of
die *Antwort*—answer
die *Arbeit*—work
arm—poor
die *Art*—manner, way, kind
der *Arzt*—doctor, physician
* *auch*—also, even
auch wenn—even if
* *auf* (a,d)—up, upon, at
aufmachen—to open
aufstehen—to get up
der *Augenblick*—moment
* *aus* (d)—out of, of, from
aussehen—to look, appear
außer (d)—except for, outside, in addition
bald—soon
bauen—to build
der *Baum*—tree
befinden, befand, befunden (r)—to be situated
begreifen—to understand, grasp
* *bei* (d)—at, with, amongst, near by

* *beide*—both
das *Beispiel*—example; z.B.—for example
bekommen, bekam, bekommen—to receive, get
beschreiben—to describe
besonders—especially
bevor—before
die *Bewegung*—movement
das *Bild*—picture, image
die *Bildung*—education, development
bis (a)—until, as far as
bitten (um)—to ask (for)
blicken—to look
bleiben, blieb, ist geblieben—to remain
böse—bad, evil, guilty
brauchen nicht—need not
brechen (bricht), brach, gebrochen—to break
breit—broad, wide
bringen, brachte, gebracht—to bring
der *Christ*—Christian
* *da*—since (as a subordinating conjunction); (as an adverb) there, then, it
dabei—besides, in so doing, thus, moreover
* *dagegen*—on the contrary
damals—at that time
damit—so that, with it
danken—to thank
* *dann*—then
d.h.—das heißt—that is, i.e.
das *Dasein*—being, existence
* *daß*—that
dein—your
denen—to or for whom
denken, dachte, gedacht—to think
* *denn*—for, because
* *der*—the (mas. nom., fem. dat. & gen., pl. gen.)
deren—whose
* *derselbe*—the same
deshalb—therefore, for that reason
dessen—whose
* *deutsch*—German
der *Dichter*—poet
die *Dichtung*—writing, poetry
* *dieser*—this
* *die*—the (fem & pl. nom. & acc)
das *Ding*—thing
* *doch*—nevertheless
dort—there
drei—three
du—you (informal)
dunkel—dark
durch (a)—through, by
dürfen (darf)—to be permitted
eben—just, flat
ehe—before
eigen—own, particular, unique
eigentlich—actually
ein—a, one
einfach—simple
* *einige*—several, some
einfallen—to occur to
einmal— once
einsam—lonely
einzig— only, sole, unique
das *Ende*—end
endlich— finally
entstehen, entstand, ist entstanden—to originate
entweder . . . oder—either . . . or
er—he, it
die *Erde*—earth
erfahren (erfährt)—to learn, discover, experience
erhalten, erhielt, erhalten—to receive

erinnern (r)—to remember
erkennen, erkannte, erkannt—to recognize
erscheinen—to appear
* *erst*—**only**, not until, first
erwarten—to expect
* *es gibt*—there is, there are
essen, aß, gegessen—to eat
etwa—about, approximately
etwas—something
fahren—to travel, go
der *Fall*—case, instance, trap, fall
fallen, fiel, ist gefallen—to fall
* *fast*—almost
faul—lazy (people); rotten (food)
fehlen—to lack
der *Fehler*—error
der *Feind*—enemy
fern—far, afar
finden, fand, gefunden—to find; *sich finden*—to be located
fleißig—hard-working
folgen—to follow
die *Frage*—question
fragen (nach)—to ask (about)
das *Frankreich*—France
die *Frau*—woman
die *Freiheit*—freedom
die *Freude*—joy
freuen (r)—to be pleased
der *Friede*—peace
die *Frucht*—fruit
früh— early
fühlen (r)—to feel
die *Furcht*—fear
fürchten—to fear
führen—to lead
* *für* (a)—for
* *ganz*—whole, complete, entirely, quite
* *geben (gibt),* gab, gegeben—to give
die *Geburt*—birth
der *Gedanke*—thought
gefallen, gefiel, gefallen—to please
gegen (a)—against, toward, approximately
gegenüber (d)—opposite, vis-à-vis
die *Gegenwart*—present
* *gehen,* ging, ist gegangen—to go; **es geht um**—it is a matter of
gehören—to belong to
der *Geist*—spirit, intellect
geistig—spiritual, intellectual
das *Geld*—money
gelingen, gelang, ist gelungen—to succeed
* *gelten (gilt),* galt, gegolten—to be valid, considered, true
genau—exact, accurate
genug—enough
gerade—just, straight
die *Gerechtigkeit*—justice
gern—gladly; **er tut das gern**—he *likes to* do that
geschehen, geschah, ist geschehen—to happen
die *Geschichte*—history, story
die *Gesellschaft*—society
das *Gesicht*—face
gestern—yesterday
gesund—healthy
gewesen (p. part. of *sein*)—been
gewiß—certainly
gewöhnlich—usually
glauben—believe
* *gleich*—equal, immediately
gleichen (i)—to compare
das *Glück*—happiness, luck, fortune
glücklich—happy, lucky, fortunate
der *Gott*—God, god
* *groß*—great, large
der *Grund*— reason

gut—good
* *haben* (hat) hatte, gehabt—to have
* *halten (hält),* hielt, gehalten—hold; support; stop;
halten für—**consider**
handeln—to act, deal with; **sich handeln um**—to be a matter of
hassen—to hate
das *Haupt*—head, chief, main
heiß—hot
* *heißen,* hieß, gehießen—to be called; das heißt—that is (i.e.)
helfen,(hilft), half, geholfen—to help
her—motion towards someone
der *Herr* (-n, -en)—mister, lord, master
das *Herz*—heart
heute—today
hin—motion away from someone
der *Himmel*—sky, heaven
hinter (a, d)—behind
* *hoch,* höher, am höchsten—high
die *Hoffnung*—hope
hören—to hear
ich—I
ihr—(pron.) you; her; (poss. adj.) her, their, its
* *immer*—always; *immer mehr*—more and more
immer wieder—again and again
* *in* (a, d)—in, within, into, at
indem—while
das *Italien*—Italy
ja—yes, indeed
das *Jahr*—year
das *Jahrhundert*—century
je—ever
je . . . desto—the . . . the
* *jeder*—each, every
* *jemand*—someone
* *jetzt*—now

jung—young
* *kein*—no, none, not any
* *kennen,* kannte, gekannt—to know
klar—clear
* *klein*—little, small
kommen—to come
* *können* (kann)—to be able to, can
der *Kopf*—head
die *Kraft*—strength, power
der *Krieg*—war
die *Kunst*—art
* *kurz*—short, brief
* *lachen*—to laugh
das *Land*—country
* *lang*—long; 10 Jahre lang—**for ten years**
lange—for a long time
langsam—slow
* *lassen,* ließ, gelassen—to let, leave; **sich lassen**—can be
lauter—nothing but
leben—to live
das *Leben*—life
legen—to place
die *Lehre*—doctrine, teaching
der *Lehrer*—teacher
leicht—easy, light
lernen—to learn
lesen (liest), las, gelesen—to read
letzt—last
* die *Leute*—people
die *Liebe*—love
lieben—to love
* *lieber*—rather, preferably
liegen, lag, gelegen—to lie, be situated
links—left
die *Luft*—air
lügen—to lie, fib
* *machen*— to make, do
die *Macht*—power, strength

das *Mal*—time (*einmal*—once)
* *man*—one
* ***manche***—some
manchmal—sometimes
der *Mann*—man, husband
* *mehr*—more (comparative of *viel*)
* ***mehrere***—several
mein—mine
meinen—to think, say, mean
die *Meinung*—opinion
* *meist*—most (superlative of *viel*)
meistens—mostly
* der *Mensch* (-en, -en)—person, human being
merken—to notice
* *mit* (d)—with, by
die *Mitte*—middle
* *mögen* (mag)—may, like
* *möglich*—possible
der *Monat*—month
* *morgen*—tomorrow
der *Morgen*—morning
* *müssen* (muß)—must; **mußte**—had to
* *nach* (d)—after, according to
nachdem (subordinating conjunction)—after
nachher—afterwards
nächst—next
die *Nacht*—night
nah—near
die *Nähe*—vicinity (cf. "nearness")
namens—by name of
nämlich—namely
neben (a, d)—next to, near
* *nehmen (nimmt),* nahm, genommen—to take
nein—no
nennen—to call, name
neu—new
* *nicht*—not
nicht mehr—no longer
* ***nichts***—nothing
* *nie*—never
* *niemand*—no one
* ***noch***—still, yet; noch nicht—not yet; ***noch einmal***—once again
* *nun*— now
* *nur*— only
* *ob*—whether, if
oben—above
obwohl—although
oder—or
oft—often
ohne (a)—without
paar— couple, few
der Pfund—pound
plötzlich—suddenly
* *recht*—right, correct, rather
das *Recht*—right, justice
rechts—to the right; on the right side
reden—to speak
die *Regel*—rule
das *Reich*— empire
reich—rich
der *Roman*—novel
rufen, rief, gerufen—to call
sagen— to say
der Satz— sentence
schauen—to look at
* ***scheinen,*** schien, ist geschienen—to appear, seem; to shine
schlecht—bad, poor, wicked
schließen—to close
schnell—quick
* *schon*—already
schön—beautiful
schreiben, schrieb, geschrieben—to write
schwarz—black
die *Schweiz*— Switzerland
* *schwer*—heavy, difficult

sehen (sieht), sah, gesehen—to see
* *sehr*—very, much
* ***sei*** (imperative, subj. 1)—be, is, was
* *sein (ist),* war, ist gewesen—to be
* *sein*—his, its
* *seit* (d)—since, for
selber—self
* ***selbst***—even, self
selten—seldom, rare
setzen—to put, set, place
sich—himself, herself, itself, themselves
sicher—sure, safe, certainly
* *sie*—she, they, her, them, it
Sie—you (formal)
der *Sinn*—meaning
sitzen, saß, gesessen—to sit
so—then, so; *so . . . wie*—as . . . as
sofort—immediately
sogar—even, indeed
solange—as long as
solch—such
* *sollen* (soll)—is to, should
* *sondern*—rather, on the contrary
spät—late
die *Sprache*—language
sprechen—to speak
* der *Staat*—state
* die *Stadt*—city
stark—strong
statt (g)—instead of
* *stehen,* stand, ist gestanden—to stand, to be
stellen—to put, place, lay, impose
* *sterben (stirbt),* starb, ist gestorben—to die
still—quiet, quietly
* die *Straße*—street
das *Stück*—piece
die *Stunde*—hour
suchen—to search for, seek
der *Tag*—day
täglich—daily
die *Tat*—deed
die *Technik*—technology
das *Teil*—part
teuer—expensive
tief—deep
der *Tod*—death
tot—dead
tragen (trägt), trug, getragen—to carry, wear
treffen (r)—to meet
treten (tritt), trat, getreten—to walk, step, enter
trotz (g)—in spite of
trotzdem—nevertheless
* ***tun,*** tat, getan—to do
* *über* (a, d)—over, about
die *Uhr*—o'clock; watch
* *um* (a)—around, at; um . . . willen—for the sake of; um . . . zu—in order to
* *und*—and
ungefähr—approximately
unser—our
* *unter* (a,d)—under, among
die *Vergangenheit*—past
vergessen, vergaß, vergessen—to forget
vergleichen—to compare; vgl.—cf.
verlieren, verlor, verloren—to lose
* *verstehen, verstand, verstanden*— to understand
versuchen—to try, tempt
* ***viel***—much
* *viele*—many
* *vielleicht*—perhaps
* ***vielmehr***—rather
das *Volk*—people, nation
* *voll*— full, filled with

* *von* (d)—of, from, about
* *vor* (a,d)—before, of, with; **vor 10 Jahren**—10 years ago; **vor allem**—above all
vorsichtig—cautious
vorstellen (v.r.)—to imagine, introduce
* *wahr*—true, real
die *Wahrheit*—truth
* *während* (g)—during ; (subordinating) while
wahrscheinlich—probably
* *wann*—when
warten (auf)—to wait (for)
* *warum*—why
* *was*—what, that, which
weder . . . noch—neither . . . nor
der *Weg*—way
weg—away
wegen (g)—because of
* *weil*—because, since
weise—wise
die *Weise*—manner, custom, way
die *Weisheit*—wisdom
weiß—white (also third person sing. of *wissen*)
* *weit*—far, wide
* *weiter*—further
welch—which
die *Welt*—world
die *Weltanschauung*—world view
* *wenig*—little; **wenige**—few
* *wenn*—when, if
* *wer*—who
* ***werden,*** wurde, ist geworden—*most frequently: is 28.1ff;* to become; will

wert—worth; nicht der Mühe wert—not worth the trouble
der *Wert*—value
wert—worth
* *wichtig*—important
wider—against
* *wie*—how, like, as
* *wieder*—again
wiederholen—to repeat
der *Wille*—will
* *wir*—we
wirklich—real, genuine, really
die *Wirklichkeit*—reality
die *Wirtschaft*—economy
* *wissen (weiß),* wußte, gewußt—to know
die *Wissenschaft*—science
* *wo*—where, when
* *wohl*—indeed, probably, well
wohnen—to live
* *wollen* (will)—to want to
* *worden*—been
der *Wunsch*—wish
wünschen—to wish
zeigen— to show, point
* die *Zeit*—time
ziehen, zog, gezogen—to draw, pull, raise, attract
ziemlich—rather
* *zu* (d)—at, to, too
die *Zukunft*—future
zumachen—to close
* *zurück*—back, behind
zusammen—together
zwar—indeed
zwischen (a, d)—between



APPENDIX C

English Grammar Necessary for Learning German

If you are unfamiliar with English grammar, please use this section as a reference. You will need it. If you would like to buy an English grammar book, I would recommend *The Deluxe Transitive Vampire: The Ultimate Handbook of Grammar for the Innocent, the Eager and the Doomed* (Karen Elizabeth Gordon).

Clause

A clause is a unit within a sentence that has both a subject and a verb. German sentences may contain multiple clauses, much to the chagrin of many readers.

Nouns (See Chapter 3)

A noun is a word that names a person, place, thing, or abstraction. Nouns have cases. German has four cases: nominative (English subjective), accusative (English objective), genitive (usually, but not always, English possessive), and dative (usually, but not always, English indirect object).

Nominative is the subject; all sentences have subjects:
The *man* is friendly.
The *bear* dances.
I am happy.

A **predicate nominative** is a noun after the verbs "to be," "to become," "to remain," and similar verbs. The predicate nominative indicates that the subject and the object are one and the same:

The *poet* is a great *man.*
The *woman* becomes *a professor.*
(This will not generally affect your translation.)

A **direct object** answers the question *what* or *whom* after the verb:

The man kills *the wolf.*
The woman writes *a poem.*
He likes *me.* *
I like *him.* *
* In English, some pronouns reveal the difference between nominative (*I, he, she, we, they*) and accusative (*me, him, her, us, them)* cases.

A **possessive noun** is in an inextricable relationship with another noun:
The *man's* friend is nice. (Or: The friend *of the man* is nice.)
He loves the *woman's* sister. (Or: He loves the sister *of the woman.*)

An indirect object is an object for which the prepositions "to" or "for" are understood:
The man writes *his girl friend* a love letter. (Or: The man writes a love letter *to his girl friend.*)
The woman sends *her mother* a Mother's Day card.

Note: Even when a sentence begins with prepositional phrases, the verb will appear directly after the subject and before the object: During the dark and stormy night, in the middle of the woods, the storyteller *frightened* the campers.

Adjectives (See Chapter 4)

Adjectives describe nouns or pronouns: A *nice* man; a *certain* someone

Adjectives usually appear *before* the noun they modify: An *interesting* concept; a *useless* animal; an *engaging* woman; *good* friends

Articles and numbers are also adjectives:
A kind woman; *the* interesting book; *three* blind mice; *ten* partridges

Usually, adjectives are preceded by articles: a *good* idea; the *hungry* cat. However, when adjectives precede plural nouns, they often do not need an article: *loyal* friends; *difficult* ideas.

Adjectives after the verbs "to be," "to become," "to remain," and verbs involving the senses are **predicate adjectives:**
She *is funny.*
He became *rich.*
They remained *angry* for a long time.
She seems *sad.*
He looks *happy.*

Adjectives can also appear in **comparative and superlative** forms (see chapter 11):
A *better* idea; a *nicer* cat; a *more beautiful* child; the dog is *friendlier* than the cat (comparative)
The *best* idea; the *nicest* cat; the *most beautiful* child; "Mirror, mirror on the wall, who is *the fairest* of them all?" (superlative)

Two verb forms (**present participles**—*singing, climbing*—and **past participles**—stolen, admired) can be used as adjectives *if* they appear directly before a noun (usually after an article):

They gazed at the *dancing* bear.
The *frightened* elephant hid in the forest.

Adverbs (see Chapter 4)

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs:
He runs *quickly;* The *beautifully* singing woman is homely; He speaks German *quite fluently.*

Typical adverbs are; *mostly, usually, perhaps, moreover, especially, thus, therefore, still, yet, certainly, consequently, very, however, quite, really, also, now, only, soon, then, just, even, rather, indeed, probably, immediately, yesterday, too, here, there, tomorrow, often. rarely, nearly, always, never, not*

A noun and an adjective, or a prepositional phrase can also have an adverbial function in a sentence: *to be sure; last week; some day; for years; to the right; first of all*

Like adjectives, adverbs can also have comparative and superlative forms: She runs *more quickly* than he does. He is the *least likely* to succeed. The most beautiful grapes hang *the highest.*

Prepositions (See Chapter 5)

Prepositions indicate the relation of a noun or pronoun to another word in the sentence. A prepositional phrase consists of the preposition, the noun or pronoun that follows it, and any modifiers of the noun:
She walks *through* the park. She walks *around* the beautiful park *with* the red geraniums. She walks *across* the park, which is *in* the center *of* the city. He is upset *with* her.

There are also some compound prepositions, those consisting of more than one word: *because of; instead of; with regard to:*
She walks *outside of the* park.

Common prepositions are: *for, to, of, through, between, on, from, beside, against, without, by.* There will *not* be a one-to-one correlation between German and English prepositions.

Pronouns (See Chapter 7)

Pronouns take the place of nouns. They also have cases.
Nominative (subjective): *He* is rich.
Accusative (objective): The wolf devours *him.*
Dative (indirect object): The woman gives *him* a big smile.

Pronouns in front of nouns are possessive adjectives:

His friends are nice.
Her cat seems playful.
Our goals are difficult to attain.

Note that *her* can be both a personal pronoun and a possessive adjective:
He likes *her.* (*her* is merely a pronoun.)
He likes *her* friends. (*her* is a possessive adjective)
Although he likes *her (pronoun),* he dislikes *her* iguana (*possessive adjective*).

Pronouns are:

Personal (I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they): *I* am happy. (Chapter 2)

Interrogative (who, whom, which, what, or whose): *Who* loves him? (Chapter 6

Indefinite (such as: one, someone, many, everyone, some, nobody, everything nothing, something): *Everyone* likes her; *Something* is missing. (Chapter 3)

Demonstrative (this, that, these, those): *This* is wonderful. (Chapter 3)

Relative (who, whom, whose, what, which, that [Chapter 25]:
Everyone *who* knows her likes her
Everyone *whom* she knows is brilliant.
Everything *that* she said was interesting.
The anecdote, *which* she had heard many times, still amused her.

Note that *that* has a variety of functions in English.

1. It can be a demonstrative pronoun: I know *that.*
2. It can be a relative pronoun: He recommended the book *that* helped him learn German quickly.

It can also be a subordinating conjunction: I know *that* he is trustworthy. (Chapter 23)

Reflexive: He looked at *himself* in the mirror. (Chapter 26)

Verbs (Chapter 2)

A verb is a word or group of words stating something about the subject of the sentence. This statement can describe an action or an identity or a state of being:

The mouse *roared* (action).
The elephant *is* enormous (state of being).

Verbs can be either *transitive* or *intransitive.*

They are *transitive* when they are followed by a direct object:
He loves *the woman.*
The obese man ate *the entire pizza.*

They are *intransitive* when they cannot be followed by a direct object, and instead are followed by a preposition or an adverb or another clause:

The child *dives* into the swimming pool.
He *sleeps* restlessly.
The tired student *yawned,* much to his professor's annoyance.

Verbs are *conjugated,* their conjugation depending on the subject:

The wolf *kills* the sheep.
The bears *dance* in a circle.
I *am* hungry.
He *is singing* loudly.
She *does* not *know* German yet.
Does he *want* to go with us?

Verbs have the following forms: present, past, present perfect, past perfect. (Chapters 14 and 15)

He *stares* at the spectacle. (present)
He *stared* at the spectacle. (past, also called preterite)
He *has stared* at the spectacle. (present perfect)
He *had stared* at the spectacle. (past perfect)

Note that the present and past perfect are formed by using an auxiliary (*have, had*) with a participle. A *participle* is a verb form that always requires an auxiliary: He *has helped* her; He *is helped* by her.

When the three main forms of the verb are given, they are listed as the infinitive (the form that appears in the dictionary), the past, and the perfect form. Verbs in English, as well as in German, can be either "strong" or "weak."

They are weak (easy to determine) when *-ed* is added to their past and perfect forms: look, look*ed,* has look*ed;* ask, ask*ed,* has ask*ed;* hope, hop*ed,* has hop*ed*

They are strong (their pattern can be hard to determine) when their past and perfect forms do not end in *-ed;* often a vowel change is involved. Many strong participles will end in *-n, -en, -d,* or *-t:*

write, wrote, has written; bring, brought, has brought; cut, cut, has cut; lose, lost, has lost; find, found, has found; fall, fell, has fallen; do, did, has done; sing, sang, has sung

Verbs will sometimes require *auxiliary* (i.e. *helping)* verbs. Here are examples:

Present perfect: They *have* gone to the zoo.
Past perfect: They *had* gone to the zoo.

Future: They *will* go to the zoo. (Chapter 10)
Future perfect: They *will have* gone to the zoo.

Modals, words that change the *aspect* of the verb, are also auxiliaries (Chapter 19):

He *must* learn German.
He *wants to* learn German.
He *should* learn German.
He *can* learn German
They *should be able to* learn German.
A modal with the future tense:
She *will be able to learn* German.

The **passive** voice is formed by using the verb "to be" as an auxiliary along with the main verb in its participial form (Chapter 28):

The man *is eaten* by the wolf. (Cf. active: The wolf *eats* the man.)
The apple *was stolen* by a child. (Cf. active: The child *stole* the apple.)
The song *has been sung* by thousands of people.
The window *had been opened* by a visitor.
The film *will be seen* by millions.
The dancing bear *must be fed* often.

Although English-speaking students are taught to use the passive minimally, Germans use the passive often.

The **subjunctive** is used with conditions contrary to the fact, and with conjectures or desires. (Chapters 30–32)

Here are some examples (Chapter 30):

Long *live* the King!
God *protect* me from my friends!

In German, the following sentence is considered subjunctive because the activity in the second clause is not immediately verifiable:

The dean of students thinks that he *is* extremely insightful.

Here are examples of the subjunctive used as a conditional or a conjecture (Chapters 31–32):

If he *were* wise, he *would save* his money.
If he *had been* wise, he *would have saved* his money.
If he *had saved* his money, he *would have been* rich.
The dancing bear looks as if it *were* hungry.
He wished he *had* learned German sooner.

Conjunctions (Chapters 21, 23–25)

Conjunctions can be either co-ordinating or subordinating. They are extremely important in German grammar, because they link together clauses, some of which occasionally seem interminable.

Co-ordinating conjunctions join words, phrases, and clauses of equal importance in the same sentence. (Chapter 21) Common co-ordinating conjunctions are: *and, or, either . . . or, neither . . . nor, but, however:*

She studies philosophy *and* music.
She studies philosophy *and* ponders various theories.
She studies philosophy, *and* she enjoys it.
She is beautiful, *but* she doesn't know it.
Neither the student *nor* the teacher wants to read the boring book.

Subordinating conjunctions change clauses into *dependent* clauses, which means they are unable to exist without the help of independent clauses. They *still* need to have a subject and a verb, however. They generally begin the clause (Chapters 23–25):

Because he was happy, he hugged her.
If he has any sense, he will marry her.
When she was in Switzerland, she saw thousands of cows.
He was not happy *until* he saw her again.
Although she had many friends, she was still sometimes lonely.
He suffered a great deal *when* he was young.
After she had learned German, she felt as if she could do anything.

Note that *until* and *after* can be either a preposition or a subordinating conjunction:

Until now, he did not want to learn German. (preposition)
He did not want to learn German *until* he met a beautiful Austrian woman. (subordinating conjunction)

After many years of intense effort, he could speak German like a native. (preposition)
After he had lived in Germany, he became more interested in German culture. (subordinating conjunction.)

Relative pronouns are forms of subordinating conjunctions. (Chapter 25)
When the relative pronoun is the subject of the clause, the verb follows it immediately:

I know the man *who loves* her.

When the relative pronoun is the object of the clause, the verb follows the subject:

The man *whom* she *loves* is quite intense.

Note that *who* is also an interrogative pronoun:

Who wants to go to the movies with me?

Punctuation (Chapter 35)

You will find that German uses commas more frequently than English does. Commas have two main uses:

1. To show sequences:

Men, women, and children are all fascinated by the mysteries of the universe.
Roses, geraniums, irises, marigolds, and begonias grew in her garden.

2. To show how sentences should be parsed:

He had many children, and he was always quite busy.
Whenever he went to Germany, he bought liqueur-filled chocolates.
He sent her flowers, which pleased her.
My wife, Roger, is a complex woman. (If there were no commas, it would seem as if the man's wife's name were Roger!)

APPENDIX D

Summary of German Grammar

I. Declensions of the definite (der) and indefinite (ein) articles (For a review of case endings, see Chapter 3, parts I and II, and 5.16.)

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	der	das	die	die
	ein	**ein**	eine	—
accusative	den	das	die	die
	einen	**ein**	eine	—
genitive	des	des	der	der
	eines	eines	einer	—
dative	dem	dem	der	den
	einem	einem	einer	—

Except for masculine and neuter nominative and neuter accusative, the ***der*** article and the ***ein*** article have the same endings.

Note: ***dieser*** *(this one),* ***jener*** *(that, that one),* ***jeder*** *(each, every),* ***mancher*** *(some, many a),* ***solcher*** *(such),* and ***welcher*** *(what, which)* follow the paradigm for ***der*** words.

Kein and the possessive adjectives ***mein*** *(my),* ***dein*** *(your),* ***sein*** *(his, its),* ***ihr*** *(her, their),* ***unser*** *(our),* ***euer*** *(your),* and ***Ihr*** *(your)* follow the paradigm for ***ein*** words.

II. Adjective endings (For a review of adjectives, see Chapter 4)

A. Strong adjective endings

	neuter	**masculine**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	gut**er** Wein	gut**es** Brot	gut**e** Milch	gut**e** Tage
accusative	gut**en** Wein	gut**es** Brot	gut**e** Milch	gut**e** Tage
genitive	gut**en** Weins	gut**en** Brots	gut**er** Milch	gut**er** Tage
dative	gut**em** Wein	gut**em** Brot	gut**er** Milch	gut**en** Tagen

Adjectives are more likely to be strong when preceding plural nouns: *schöne* Blumen *guter* Gärtner – beautiful flowers *of good* gardners

B. Weak adjective endings (after *der* or a similar article)

1. **nominative** masculine, neuter, and feminine; **accusative** neuter and feminine weak adjectives will end in *-e*: der gut**e** Wein, das gut**e** Brot, die gut**e** Milch
2. **All other weak adjectives** (masculine accusative, **all** genitives, **all** datives, and **all** plurals) will end in *-en:* den gut**en** Wein, des gut**en** Brots, dem gut**en** Mann, die gut**en** Ideen, etc.)

C. Adjectives following *ein* words in nominative masculine and neuter and accusative neuter will be strong: ein gut**er** Mann, ein gut**es** Kind

D. Possessive adjectives (See Chapter 7)

mein	*(my)*	unser	*(our)*
dein	*(your)*	euer	*(your)*
sein	*(his, its)*	ihr	*(their)*
ihr	*(her)*	Ihr	*(your—formal)*

III. Pronouns

A. Personal pronouns (See Chapter 7)

nominative		**accusative**		**dative**	
I	ich	mich	*(you)*	mir	*(to me, me)*
you (informal)	du	dich	*(thee, you)*	dir	*(to thee, you)*
he	er	ihn	*(him)*	ihm	*(to him)*
it	es	es	*(it)*	ihm	*(to it)*
she	sie	sie	*(her)*	ihr	*(to her)*

we	wir	uns	*(us)*	uns	*(to us)*
you (informal)	ihr	euch	*(you)*	euch	*(to you)*
they	sie	sie	*(them)*	ihnen	*(to them)*
you (formal)	Sie	Sie	*(you)*	Ihnen	*(to you)*

Do not worry about pronouns that take the genitive, as they appear rarely, and you will know how to deal with them if you should come upon them. Here are examples: Sie tut das um *seinet*willen—She does that for *his* sake; Er ist hier um *ihret*willen—He is here for *her* (or *their*) sake.

B. Relative pronouns (See Chapter 25)

	masculine	**neuter**	**feminine**	**plural**
nominative	der	das	die	die
accusative	den	das	die	die
genitive	**dessen**	**dessen**	**deren**	**deren**
dative	dem	dem	der	**denen**

C. Reflexive pronouns (See Chapter 26)

singular (I, you, he, it, she)			**plural** (we, you, they)		
accusative	***mich***	*(myself)*	accusative	***uns***	*(ourselves)*
dative	***mir***	*(myself)*	dative	***uns***	*(ourselves)*
accusative	***dich***	*(yourself)*	accusative	***euch***	*(yourselves)*
dative	***dir***	*(yourself)*	dative	***euch***	*(yourselves)*
accusative and dative	***sich***	*(himself, itself, herself)*	accusative and dative	***sich***	*(themselves, each other)*

sich is also the accusative and dative for the formal *you (Sie).*

IV. Prepositions (For more definitions, see also listings in Appendix K, the General and Humanities Vocabulary.) **Prepositions can also be dictated by the verb they are connected with:** *sitzen an*—to sit *at; glauben an*—to believe *in.*

A. Prepositions taking the accusative (cf. 5.7)

bis*—until, as far as*
durch*—through, by means of, as far as*

für*—for, instead of;* ***halten für****—to consider;* ***was für****—what kind of*
gegen*—against, towards;* ***gegen*** *acht* Uhr*—around* 8:00
ohne*—without*
um*—at, around;* ***um*** sechs Uhr*—at* 6:00; ***es geht um***—it is a matter of
wider*—against, contrary to*
entlang*—along;* den Fluß ***entlang****—along* the river

B. Prepositions taking the dative (cf. 5.9)

aus*—out of, of, from;* ***aus*** Berlin*—from* Berlin; ***aus*** diesem Buch*—from* this book; ***aus*** der Tür—out of the door
außer*—out of, except (for), aside from, in addition to*
bei*—near, with, among, at the house of, at;* ***beim—bei + dem*** ; (*bei* rarely means *by*)
mit*—with, by, at*
nach*—after, according to, to* (with regard to direction); ***nach*** der Vorlesung*—after* class; meiner Meinung ***nach****—in* my opinion; fragen ***nach***—to ask *about;* fahren ***nach***—to go *to*
seit*—since, for;* ***seit*** Jahren studiert sie deutsche Philosophie*—for* years, she *has been studying* German philosophy
von*—from, of, by, about;* ***vom—von + dem***
zu*—to, at, in addition to;* ***zum*** Beispiel*—for* example; ***zu*** Hause*—at* home; ***zur—zu + der; zum—zu + dem***
gegenüber*—vis-à-vis, opposite, in relation to;* dem Nächsten ***gegenüber****—vis-à-vis* the neighbor

C. Prepositions taking either dative or accusative (cf. 5.11)

an*—at, on, to, in, near to;* denken ***an***—to think *of,* ***an*** dem Tisch sitzen—to sit *at* the table; ***am—an + dem***
auf*—on, upon, on top of, in, at, to;* warten ***auf***—to wait *for*
hinter*—behind;* ***hinterm—hinter + dem***
in*—in, into;* ***ins—in + das; im—in + dem***
neben*—beside, near, next to*
über*—above, over, about, across;* sprechen ***über***—to speak *about*
unter*—under, beneath, among, below;* ***unter*** den Blinden*—among* the blind
vor*—before, in front of, ago;* ***vor*** sechs Stunden—six hours ***ago! vor allem****—above all;* ***vor*** Freude*—with* joy
zwischen*—between*

D. Prepositions taking the genitive (cf. 5.13)

trotz—*in spite of*
statt—*instead of*
während—*during*
wegen—*because of*
um . . . willen—*for the sake of*

V. Conjunctions

A. Co-ordinating conjunctions (See Chapter 21)

aber—*but, however*
denn—*for, because*
oder—*or*
sondern—*rather, on the contrary*
und—*and*
entweder . . . oder—*either . . . or*
weder . . . noch—*neither . . . nor*

B. Subordinating conjunctions (See Chapter 23)

als—*when* (always in the past tense)
auch wenn—*even if*
bevor—*before*
bis—*until*
da—*since, because*
damit—*so that*
daß *(or dass)*—*that*
ehe—*before*
nachdem—*after*
ob—*if, whether*
obschon, obwohl—*although*
sobald—*as soon as*
solange – as long as
während—*while*
weil—*because*
wenn—*when, if*

C. Subordinating relative pronouns (See Chapter 24)

wer—*he who, whoever*
was—*what, whatever, which, that which, that*
wie—*how, as*
wo—*where, when*
warum—*why*

VI. Verb conjugations—present, past, and present perfect (For a review, see Chapters 14 and 15.)

A. Conjugation of a weak/easy verb and of a strong/hard verb; present, past, present perfect, and subjunctive II

1. **a weak/easy verb: *lachen*** *(to laugh)*

	present	**past**	**present perfect**	**subjunctive II**
ich	lache	lachte	habe gelacht	lachte
du	lachst	lachtest	hast gelacht	lachtest
er	lacht	lachte	hat gelacht	lachte
wir	lachen	lachten	haben gelacht	lachten
ihr	lacht	lachtet	habt gelacht	lachtet
sie	lachen	lachten	haben gelacht	lachten
Sie	lachen	lachten	haben gelacht	lachten

2. **a strong/hard verb: *finden*** *(to find)*

	present	**past**	**present perfect**	**subjunctive II**
ich	finde	fand	habe gefunden	fände
du	findest	fandest	hast gefunden	fändest
er	findet	fand	hat gefunden	fände
wir	finden	fanden	haben gefunden	fänden
ihr	findet	fandet	habt gefunden	fändet
sie	finden	fanden	haben gefunden	fänden
Sie	finden	fanden	haben gefunden	fänden

B. Conjugation of *sein* *(to be)*

	present	**past**	**present perfect**	**subjunctive II**
ich	bin	war	bin gewesen	wäre
du	bist	warst	bist gewesen	wärest
er	ist	war	ist gewesen	wäre

wir	sind	waren	sind gewesen	wären
ihr	seid	wart	seid gewesen	wäret
sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	wären
Sie	sind	waren	sind gewesen	wären

C. Conjugation of *haben* *(to have)*

ich	habe	hatte	habe gehabt	hätte
du	hast	hattest	hast gehabt	hättest
er	hat	hatte	hat gehabt	hätte
wir	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hätten
ihr	habt	hattet	habt gehabt	hättet
sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hätten
Sie	haben	hatten	haben gehabt	hätten

D. Conjugation of *werden* *(to become; to be)*

ich	werde	wurde	bin geworden	würde
du	wirst	wurdest	bist geworden	würdest
er	wird	wurde	ist geworden	würde
wir	werden	wurden	sind geworden	würden
ihr	werdet	wurdet	seid geworden	würdet
sie	werden	wurden	sind geworden	würden
Sie	werden	wurden	sind geworden	würden

VII. Modals (for a review, see Chapter 19)

	to be permitted	**can**	**may, like to**	**must**	**should, is to**	**want to**
	dürfen	*können*	*mögen*	*müssen*	*sollen*	*wollen*
ich	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
du	darfst	kannst	magst	mußt	sollst	willst
er	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
wir	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr	dürft	könnt	mögt	müßt	sollt	wollt
sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
Sie	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

VIII. *Werden* (See Chapters 10 and 28, especially 28.10).

(A) When *werden* appears with a participle, it will mean *is* (passive): Es *wird* selten *getan*—It *is* seldom *done*. ***This is the most common use of werden!!!***

Die Alten *werden* selten ernst *genommen*—The old people *are* seldom *taken* seriously.

(B) When *werden* appears with an infinitive, it will mean *will* (future): Er *wird* nicht *gehen*—He *will* not *go.*

(C) When *werden* appears alone in a sentence, it will mean *to become, to grow:* Er *wird* alt—He *is growing* old.

IX. Verb placement (See Chapters 6, 22, 23–25, 33)

(A) When there is only one verb in the clause:

(1) In a standard main clause, the verb will appear in "second" place:
Er *kennt* Fräulein Meier—He knows Fräulein Meier.
Heute *geht* er mit uns ins Theater—Today he is going to the theater with us.
Den Freund *erkennt* man in der Not—One recognizes a (true) friend (when one is) in need.
Auf dem Fußpfad *wächst* kein Gras—No grass grows on the footpath.

(2) If the clause begins with a verb,

1. It may be a question:
Kennt er den Briefträger?—*Does* he *know* the mailman?
Schreibt sie eine E-mail an ihn? - *Is* she *writing* him an e-mail?

2. It may be a command:
Tue das sofort!—*Do* that immediately!
Vergessen Sie ihren Geburtstag *nicht*!—*Do not forget* her birthday!

3. When the verb appears in the subjunctive I form and is followed by *wir,* it will be translated *let us:*
Seien wir tapfer!—*Let* us *be* brave!

4. It can signal an "if . . . then" construction:
Fehlt es dir an Bier, so *trinke* Wein—If you *lack* beer, then *drink* wine
Fällt das Brot, so *fällt* es auf die Butterseite - If the bread falls, it falls on the buttered side.
Wäre er reich, so *arbeitete* er nicht—If he *were* rich, he *would* not *work.*

(3) If the clause is a subordinate clause, the verb will appear at the end:
Es ist wahr, daß sie viel studiert—it is true that she studies a lot.

(B) When the verb appears with an auxiliary (such as a form *of sein* or *haben* or *werden* or a modal), the auxiliary will be conjugated, and it will appear in "second" place in the clause (if it is a standard main clause—cf. A-l), while the other verb infinitive or participle will appear at the end of the clause:
Er *kann* nicht *gehen*—He *cannot go*
Sie *hat* das oft *gesagt*—She *has* often *said* that.
Hoffnung *ist* in den Brunnen *gefallen*—Hope *has fallen* into the well.

The auxiliary will appear at the beginning of the clause if the clause is a question, or if it is an "if . . . then" construction (cf. A-2), while the other verb infinitive or participle will appear at the end of the clause:
Darf er das *tun*—Is he permitted to do that?
Hätte sie das *gewußt,* so hätte sie darüber gelacht—If she *had known* that, she would have laughed about it.

In dependent clauses, the auxiliary will appear at the end (cf. A-3), while the other verb infinitive or participle will be the penultimate word in the clause: Ich glaube, daß wir *gehen werden*—I believe that we will go
Nachdem der Briefträger Fräulein Meier einen Ring *geschenkt hatte,* war sie sehr glücklich—After the mailman had given Fräulein Meier a ring, she was very happy.

(C) **Whenever there are three or more verbs in a clause,** the conjugated verb will be translated first, the verb at the end of the clause will be translated next, the penultimate verb will be translated third, and any other possible verb will be translated last: Er wird das getan haben—He will have done that.
1 3 2

Man hat mich oft tanzen sehen können (Nietzsche)—One was often able to see me
1 4 3 2
dance.

In dependent clauses that have three or more verbs, the conjugated verb will precede the other two verbs:
Er war glücklich, weil er oft hat tanzen können—He was happy because he was
1 3 2
often able to dance.

X. Verb tenses: here are some verb combinations of the infinitives *sagen (to say)* and *singen (to sing):*

(Note some of the possibilities are extremely confusing; don't worry about them. I am omitting many possibilities because they are simply too rare and too difficult)

present	er sagt—he says
past	er sagte—he said
present perfect	er hat gesagt—he said or has said
past perfect	er hatte gesagt—he had said
future	er wird sagen—he will say
present (with a modal)	er will sagen—he wants to say
past (with a modal)	er wollte sagen—he wanted to say
present perfect (+ a modal)	er hat sagen wollen—he (has) wanted to say
past perfect (+ a modal)	er hatte sagen wollen—he had wanted to say
future (+ a modal)	er wird sagen wollen-he will want to say
present passive	es wird gesagt—it is said
past passive	es wurde gesagt—it was said
present perfect passive	es ist gesagt worden—it has been said
past perfect passive	es war gesagt worden—it had been said
future passive	es wird gesagt werden—it will be said
present passive (+ modal)	es will gesagt werden—it wants to be said
past passive (+ modal)	es wollte gesagt werden—it wanted to be said
present perfect passive (+ modal)	es hat gesagt werden wollen—it has wanted to be said
past perfect passive (+ modal)	es hatte gesagt werden wollen—it had wanted to be said
present and past subj. I	er sage—he may say, says, said
present and past subj. II	er sagte—he would say, he had said, if he were to say

present	er singt—he sings
past	er sang—he sang
present perfect	er hat gesungen—he has sung
past perfect	er hatte gesungen—he had sung
future	er wird singen—he will sing
present (with a modal)	er kann singen—he can sing

past (with a modal)	er konnte singen—he could sing
present perfect (+ a modal)	er hat singen können—he could (or: has been able) to sing
past perfect (+ a modal)	er hatte singen können—he had been able to sing
future (+ a modal)	er wird singen können—he will be able to sing
present passive	es wird gesungen—it is sung
past passive	es wurde gesungen—it was sung
present perfect passive	es ist gesungen worden—it has been sung
past perfect passive	es war gesungen worden—it had been sung
future passive	es wird gesungen werden—it will be sung
present passive (+ modal)	es kann gesungen werden—it can be sung
past passive (+ modal)	es konnte gesungen werden—it could be sung
present perfect passive (+ modal)	es hat gesungen werden können—it is able to have been sung
past perfect passive (+ modal)	es hatte gesungen werden können—it was able to have been sung
present and past subj. I	er singe—he may sing, sings, sang
present and past subj. II	er sänge—he sang, he would sing, if he were to sing

APPENDIX E

I. Patterns for Strong/Hard Verbs

(If you say these repeatedly, you may become more familiar with the ways in which verbs change.)

infinitive (and irregular third singular person	**past** (first and third person singular	**participle**	**definition**
group I: *ei–ie-ie* or *ei–i-i*			
bleiben	blieb	geblieben	stay, remain
scheiden	schied	geschieden	part, depart
scheinen	schien	geschienen	shine, seem
schreiben	schrieb	geschrieben	write
steigen	stieg	gestiegen	climb
weisen	wies	gewiesen	point
greifen	griff	gegriffen	grasp
leiden	litt	gelitten	suffer
reißen	riß	gerissen	tear
schneiden	schnitt	geschnitten	cut
streiten	stritt	gestritten	fight

infinitive (and irregular third person singular)		**past** (first and third person singular)	**participle**	**definition**
group II: *ie-o-o*				
biegen		bog	gebogen	bend
fliegen		flog	geflogen	fly
fliehen		floh	geflohen	flee
fließen		floß	geflossen	flow
genießen		genoß	genossen	enjoy
riechen		roch	gerochen	smell
schließen		schloß	geschlossen	close
verlieren		verlor	verloren	lose
ziehen		zog	gezogen	pull
group III: *i- a- u* or *i-a-o*				
binden		band	gebunden	bind
finden		fand	gefunden	find
beginnen		begann	begonnen	begin
gelingen		gelang	gelungen	succeed
gewinnen		gewann	gewonnen	win, gain
liegen		lag	gelegen	lie
schwimmen		schwamm	geschwommen	swim
singen		sang	gesungen	sing
trinken		trank	getrunken	drink
verschwinden		verschwand	verschwunden	vanish
zwingen		zwang	gezwungen	force
group IV: *e-a-o*				
befehlen	befiehlt	befahl	befohlen	command
brechen	bricht	brach	gebrochen	break
gelten	gilt	galt	gegolten	be valid
helfen	hilft	half	geholfen	help
kommen		kam	gekommen	come
nehmen	nimmt	nahm	genommen	take
sprechen	spricht	sprach	gesprochen	speak
stehlen	stiehlt	stahl	gestohlen	steal

infinitive (and first and third person singular)		**past** (first and third person singular	**participle**	**definition**
group V: *e-a-e* (note that *sitzen* is somewhat different)				
essen	ißt	aß	gegessen	eat
geben	gibt	gab	gegeben	give
geschehen	geschieht	geschah	geschehen	happen
lesen	liest	las	gelesen	read
sehen	sieht	sah	gesehen	see
treten	tritt	trat	getreten	enter, step
sitzen		saß	gesessen	sit
group VI: *a-u-a*				
erfahren	erfährt	erfuhr	erfahren	experience
fahren	fährt	fuhr	gefahren	go, travel
schlagen	schlägt	schlug	geschlagen	hit
tragen	trägt	trug	getragen	carry, wear
wachsen	wächst	wuchs	gewachsen	grow
group VII: *a-ie-a* (note that *heißen, laufen,* and *rufen* vary)				
blasen	bläst	blies	geblasen	blow
fallen	fällt	fiel	gefallen	fall
fangen	fängt	fing	gefangen	catch
gefallen	gefällt	gefiel	gefallen	please
halten	hält	hielt	gehalten	hold
lassen	läßt	ließ	gelassen	let, permit
raten	rät	riet	geraten	advise
heißen		hieß	geheißen	be called
laufen	läuft	lief	gelaufen	run
rufen		rief	gerufen	call
irregular strong verbs				
gehen		ging	gegangen	go
sein	ist	war	gewesen	be
stehen		stand	gestanden	stand
tun	tut	tat	getan	do

infinitive		**past**	**participle**	**definition**
irregular weak or "mixed" or "curve ball" verbs				
brennen		brannte	gebrannt	burn
kennen		kannte	gekannt	know
nennen		nannte	genannt	name
senden		sandte	gesandt	send
bringen		brachte	gebracht	bring
denken		dachte	gedacht	think
wissen	weiß	wußte	gewußt	know

verbs with an umlaut in their stem, which are strong (note that they do not have umlauts in their past or participial forms):

infinitive	**past**	**participle**	**definition**
betrügen	betrog	betrogen	cheat, defraud
gebären	gebor	geboren	bear
hängen	hing	gehangen	hang
lügen	log	gelogen	lie, fib
schwören	schwor	geschworen	swear
trügen	trog	getrogen	to be deceptive
wägen	wog	gewogen	weigh

II. Strong/hard verbs and some troublesome weak verbs (always double check definitions in your dictionaries)

backen (bäckt), buk (or backte), gebacken—*to bake*
bedürfen (bedarf), bedurfte, bedurft (with genitive)—*to require*
befehlen (befielt), befahl, befohlen—*to command*
begehen, beging, begangen—*to commit*
beginnen, begann, begonnen—*to begin*
begraben, begrub, begraben—*to bury*
begreifen, begriff, begriffen—*to comprehend*
beißen, biß/biss, gebissen—*to bite*
bekommen, bekam, bekommen—*to receive*
benehmen (benimmt), benahm, benommen (vr.)—*to behave*
bergen, borg, geborgen—*to conceal*
beschreiben, beschrieb, beschrieben—*to describe*
bestehen, bestand, bestanden—*to exist, consist, insist*
betragen (beträgt), betrug, betragen—*to amount to*
betrügen, betrog, betrogen—*to deceive*
bewegen, bewog, bewogen—*to move*
biegen, bog, gebogen—*to bend*
bieten, bot, geboten—*to offer*
binden, band, gebunden—*to bind*
bitten, bat, gebeten—*to ask*
blasen (bläst), blies, geblasen—*to blow*
bleiben, blieb, ist geblieben—*to remain*
brauchen, brauchte, gebraucht—*to need*
brechen (bricht), brach, gebrochen—*to break*
brennen, brannte, gebrannt—*to burn*
bringen, brachte, gebracht—*to bring*
denken, dachte, gedacht—*to think*
dringen, drang, ist gedrungen—*to press*
dürfen (darf), durfte, gedurft—*to be permitted to*
empfangen (empfängt), empfing, empfangen—*to receive*
empfehlen, empfahl, empfohlen—*to recommend*
empfinden, empfand, empfunden—*to perceive*
enthalten (enthält), enthielt, enthalten—*to contain*
entnehmen (entnimmt), ennahm, entnommen—*to take away from*
ergreifen, ergriff, ergriffen—*to seize*
erhalten, erhielt, erhalten—*to receive*
erkennen, erkannte, erkannt—*to recognize*
erschrecken, erschrack, erschrocken—*to be shocked*

entstehen, entstand, ist entstanden—*to originate*
erwachsen (erwächst), erwuchs, ist erwachsen—*to grow*
essen (ißt), aß, gegessen—*to eat*
fahren (fährt), fuhr, ist gefahren—*to travel*
fallen (fällt), fiel, ist gefallen—*to fall*
fangen (fängt), fing, gefangen—*to catch*
finden, fand, gefunden—*to find*
fliegen, flog, ist geflogen—*to fly*
fliehen, floh, ist geflohen—*to flee*
fließen, floß/floss, ist geflossen—*to flow*
fressen, fraß, gefressen—*to eat like an animal*
frieren, fror, gefroren—*to freeze*
gebären, gebar, ist geboren -*to bear* (geboren-born)
geben (gibt), gab, gegeben—*to give*
gebrauchen, gebrauchte, gebraucht—*to use*
gedeihen, gedieh, ist gediehen—*to thrive*
gefallen, gefiel, hat gefallen—*to please*
gehen, ging, ist gegangen—*to go*
gehören, gehörte, gehört—*to belong to*
gelangen, gelangte, gelangt—*to reach*
gelingen, gelang, ist gelungen—*to succeed*
gelten (gilt), galt, gegolten—*to be valid*
genießen, genoß/genoss, genossen—*to enjoy*
geraten (gerät), geriet, ist geraten—*to fall, land*
geschehen, geschah, ist geschehen—*to happen*
gestehen, gestand, gestanden—*to confess*
gewinnen, gewann, gewonnen—*to win*
gewöhnen, gewöhnte, gewöhnt (r.)—*to accustom oneself to*
gießen, goß, gegossen—*to pour*
gleichen, glich, geglichen—*to compare*
graben (gräbt), grub, gegraben—*to dig*
greifen, griff, gegriffen—*to seize*
haben (hat), hatte, gehabt—*to have*
halten (hält), hielt, gehalten—*to hold, consider, stop*
hängen, hing, gehangen—*to hang*
heben, hob, gehoben—*to lift*
heißen, hieß, gehießen—*to be called, to command*
helfen (hilft), half, geholfen—*to help*
kennen, kannte, gekannt—*to know (a person)*
kommen, kam, ist gekommen—*to come, to go*
können (kann), konnte, gekonnt—*to be able to*

kriechen, krach, ist gekrochen—*to crawl*
laden, lud, geladen—*to invite*
lassen, ließ, gelassen—*to let, to leave; sich lassen—can be*
laufen (läuft), lief, ist gelaufen—*to run*
leiden, litt, gelitten—*to suffer*
leihen, lieh, geliehen—*to lend*
lesen (liest), las, gelesen—*to read*
liegen, lag, ist gelegen—*to lie*
löschen, losch, geloschen—*to extinguish*
lügen, log, gelogen—*to fib*
meiden, mied, gemieden—*to avoid*
messen (mißt), maß, gemessen—*to measure*
mißlingen, mißlang, mißlungen—*to fail*
mögen, mochte, gemocht—*to like, may*
müssen (muß/muss), mußte/musste, gemußt/gemusst—*have to, must*
nehmen (nimmt), nahm, genommen—*to take*
nennen, nannte, genannt—*to name, call*
preisen, pries, gepriesen—*to praise*
raten (rät), riet, geraten—*to advise, counsel*
reißen, riß/riss, ist gerissen—*to rip, tear*
reiten, ritt, ist geritten—*to ride*
rennen, rannte, ist gerannt—*to run*
riechen, roch, gerochen—*to smell*
ringen, rang, gerungen—*to struggle*
rufen, rief, gerufen—*to call*
schaffen, schuf, geschaffen—*to create*
scheiden, schied, ist geschieden—*to separate*
scheinen, schien, geschienen—*to seem*
schießen, schoß, geschossen—*to shoot*
schlafen (schläft), schlief, geschlafen—*to sleep*
schlagen (schlägt), schlug, geschlagen—*to hit*
schleichen, schlich, ist geschlichen—*to creep*
schließen, schloß, geschlossen—*to close*
schneiden, schnitt, geschnitten—*to cut*
schrecken, schrack, geschrocken—*to shock*
schreiben, schrieb, geschrieben—*to write*
schreien, schrie, geschrie(e)n—*to cry, to call*
schreiten, schritt, ist geschritten—to step
schweigen, schwieg, geschwiegen—*to be silent*
schwellen, schwoll, geschwollen—*to swell*
schwimmen, schwamm, ist geschwommen—*to swim*

schwinden, schwand, ist geschwunden—*to vanish*
sehen (sieht), sah, gesehen—*to see*
sein (ist), war, ist gewesen—*to be*
senden, sandte, gesandt—*to send*
singen, sang, gesungen—*to sing*
sinken, sank, ist gesunken—*to sink*
sinnen, sann, gesonnen—*to ponder*
sitzen, saß, ist gesessen—*to sit*
sollen, sollte, gesollt—*should, is to*
sprechen (spricht), sprach, gesprochen—*to speak*
stehen, stand, ist or hat gestanden—*to stand*
stehlen (stiehlt), stahl, gestohlen—*to steal*
steigen, stieg, ist gestiegen—*to rise*
sterben (stirbt), starb, ist gestorben—*to die*
stoßen, stieß, gestossen—*push, shove*
streichen, strich, gestrichen—*to stroke, to spread, to cancel*
streiten, stritt, gestritten—*to quarrel*
tragen (trägt), trug, getragen—*to wear, to carry*
treffen (trifft), traf, getroffen—*to hit; (v.r.) to meet*
treiben, trieb, getrieben—*to drive (with haben); to drift (with sein)*
treten (tritt), trat, hat or ist getreten—*to step, enter, tread*
trinken, trank, getrunken—*to drink*
trügen, trog, getrogen—*to be deceptive*
tun, tat, getan—*to do*
üben, übte, geübt—*to practice*
unternehmen (unternimmt), unternahm, unternommen—*to undertake*
verbinden, verband, verbunden—*to combine*
verbringen, verbrachte, verbracht—*to spend*
verderben (verdirbt), verdarb, verdorben—*to spoil*
vergessen (vergißt), vergaß, vergessen—*to forget*
verlieren, verlor, verloren—*to lose*
vermögen (vermag), vermochte, vermocht—*to be able to*
verschwinden, verschwand, ist verschwunden—*to vanish*
verzeihen, verzieh, verziehen—*to excuse*
wachsen (wächst), wuchs, ist gewachsen—*to grow*
wägen, wog, gewogen—*to weigh*
waschen (wäscht), wusch, gewaschen—*to wash*
weisen, wies, gewiesen—*to show*
wenden, wandte, gewandt—*to turn*
werden, wurde, ist geworden—*to become*
werden, wurde, ist worden—*to be* (passive)

werfen (wirft), warf, geworfen—*to throw*
wiegen, wog, gewogen—*to weigh*
wissen, wußte, gewußt—*to know (a fact)*
wollen (will), wollte, gewollt—*to want*
zeihen, zog, hat or ist gezogen—*to pull, to draw*
zwingen, zwang, gezwungen—*to force*

APPENDIX F

Days of the Week, the Months, and Numbers

1. Days of the week

Sonntag	Sunday	Donnerstag	Thursday
Montag	Monday	Freitag	Friday
Dienstag	Tuesday	Sonnabend	Saturday
Mittwoch	Wednesday	Samstag	Saturday

Heute in acht Tagen—a *week* from today

II. Names of the month

Januar	January	Juli	July
Februar	February	August	August
März	March	September	September
April	April	Oktober	October
Mai	May	November	November
Juni	June	Dezember	December

III. The cardinal numbers

1	eins	9	neun	17	siebzehn	40	vierzig
2	zwei	10	zehn	18	achtzehn	50	fünfzig
3	drei	11	elf	19	neunzehn	60	sechzig
4	vier	12	zwölf	20	zwanzig	70	siebzig
5	fünf	13	dreizehn	21	einundzwanzig	80	achtzig
6	sechs	14	vierzehn	22	zweiundzwanzig	90	neunzig
7	sieben	15	fünfzehn	23	dreiundzwanzig	100	hundert
8	acht	16	sechzehn	30	dreißig	1000	tausend

Also: *null*—zero; die *Million*—million; die ***Milliarde***—billion; die Billion—trillion

IV. The ordinal numbers

1. Numbers 1–19 will have a te added to the cardinal number: der *zweite,* der *fünfte,* der *achtzehnte,* etc.
   Exceptions are: der *erste* (first), der *dritte* (third), and der *achte* (eighth).
   The seventh can be either der *siebte* or der *siebente.*

2. Numbers 20 and above will have a **-ste** added to the cardinal number:
   der *zwanzigste* (twentieth), der *einundfünfzigste* (fifty-first), der *hundertste* (hundredth), etc.

APPENDIX G

Time Phrases

German idioms for time are a nuisance because few of them correspond to English idioms. Here are some of the most common time phrases.

I. Times of day

um acht Uhr—*at* eight o'clock; ***um halb acht***—at *seven thirty*
gegen acht Uhr—*around* eight o'clock
zu Mittag—*at* noon; ***zu*** dieser Zeit—*at* this time

II. Note how dates are expressed

am 4. Juli—*on the* 4th of July
Novalis starb *1801*—Novalis died *in 1801*
die ***sechziger*** Jahre—the *sixties*

III. Two prepositions relating to time

vor drei Jahren—three years *ago*
Seit drei Jahren ***studiert*** (present tense) sie Erdkunde—*For* three years she *has been studying* (present perfect progressive) geography.

IV. Other time phrases to watch for
drei Jahre ***lang***—*for* three years

in acht Tagen—*in* a week
am ***anderen*** Tag—on the *next* day
Erst gestern bekam er den wichtigen Brief—*Not until* yesterday did he get the important letter.

V. Note also

1. When definite time is being expressed, the *accusative* case is used when there is no preceding preposition: *Jeden Tag* liest er eine Zeitung—He reads a newspaper *every day.*

2. But when indefinite time is being expressed, the *genitive* is used:

   Eines Tages müssen wir ein geregeltes Leben anfangen—*One day* we must get organized (literally: begin a well-ordered life).

3. Adverbial expressions of time end in ***-s*** and are not capitalized. Examples are: *morgens, abends, freitags,* etc.
   Er will *sonntags* nicht arbeiten—He does not want to work *Sundays.*

APPENDIX H

Genitive and Plural Endings

ending	gender	genitive	plural
-chen (Mädchen)	n.	-s (des Mädchens)	—(die Mädchen)
-e (Blume)	f.	-	-n (die Blumen)
-e (Junge)	m.	-n (des Jungen)	-n (die Jungen)
-el (Regel)	f.	-	-n (die Regeln)
-el (Titel)	m.	-s (des Titels)	—(die Titel) **
-er (Dichter)	m.	-s (des Dichters)	—(die Dichter)*
-heit (Wahrheit)	f.	-	-n (die Wahrheiten)
-ion (Situation)	f.	-	-en (die Situationen)
-ist (Novellist)	m.	-en (des Novellisten)	-en (die Novellisten)
-ium (Studium)	n.	-s (des Studiums)	-ien (die Studien)
-keit (Möglichkeit)	f.	-	-en (die Möglichkeiten)
-lein (Häuslein)	n.	-s (des Häusleins)	- (die Häuslein)
-ling (Liebling)	m.	-s (des Lieblings)	-e (die Lieblinge)
-nis (Kenntnis)	f.	-	-se (die Kenntnisse)
-nis (Verhältnis)	n.	-ses (des Verhältnisses)	-se (die Verhältnisse)
-schaft (Gemeinschaft)	f.	-	-en (die Gemeinschaften)
-tät (Universität)	f.	-	-en (die Universitäten)
-ung (Übung)	f.	-	-en (die Übungen)

* While this is not the only possible ending, it is definitely the most common ending.
** The plural may or may not have an umlaut over the medial vowel (der Apfel—singular; die Äpfel—plural).

APPENDIX I

Specific German Dictionaries

The following is a list of various German dictionaries as of 2002, and the information may change as other dictionaries are published or revised after this date. It is not complete, but it does include the most commonly used dictionaries. More current information can be found on Amazon.com, although the reviews should not be the only factor in making a final decision about buying a dictionary. Unfortunately (but logically enough), there is no perfect dictionary. In order to translate German competently, you will need a hardback dictionary such as the **Harper Collins** or the **Oxford Duden** or, the **Langenscheidts.** But, if you have never had German before, you will find that using only a large dictionary will slow down your reading/translation time. Therefore, I would recommend that you use two dictionaries—a hardback dictionary for compound or obscure words, or for a more precise definition of a word, and a paperback dictionary for more common words that you tend to look up over and over again. There are also several mid-size dictionaries, which work as good compromise dictionaries, such as the Harper Collins College Dictionary.

Because each German dictionary has a slightly different layout, I would advise you to check out the introductions of your particular dictionaries to discover the specific abbreviations used and the rationales of their formats. Note that it is difficult to determine how many words are actually in the dictionary, as each dictionary lists the number of entries differently. Oddly, the Harper Collins boasts of 800,000 entries, while the Langenscheidts notes that it has 220,000 references, yet the Langenscheidts seems to have more words than the Harper Collins College Edition with 380,000 entries. Evidently, an "entry" is shorter than a "reference."

The Harper Collins

The Collins German Dictionary, with 800,000 entries, has more words and definitions than any of the other dictionaries mentioned in this appendix. It also gives complete grammar explanations in the preface, and it includes a list of regular German noun endings, their genders, genitives, and plurals. There is also a handy reference of all the abbreviations, field labels, and style labels on the inside cover. It also includes the past and participial forms for all strong verbs, and it gives past subjunctives within the text. Like many large dictionaries, the Collins gives declensions for pronouns such as *wer* and *jemand,* and it lists proper nouns within the text. Verbs that differ from the stem of the infinitive are listed in their imperative singular form *(hilf, sprich,* etc.). The traditional orthography is given in the body of the dictionary, with a symbol indicating words that have changed on account of the spelling reform of 1996.

However, in some ways, the Collins contains almost too much information for a beginning student. While both the Cassells and the Langenscheidts have about fifty entries under the word *Auge,* the Collins has about seventy-five entries; yet because there are so many entries, some of which are redundant, it is quite time-consuming to wade through all of them. Moreover, some of the German words need not be listed because they are so obvious. Examples are: *Kleptomanin* (female kleptomaniac) when *Kleptomane* is already given; *Gin-Fizz; Herzpatient.* Because it is so large, the binding tends to collapse with frequent use, even though it is a hardback.

While abbreviations are listed in alphabetical order in the text, their definitions are not given to you immediately. For example, if you look up *usf.,* you are told that it is an abbreviation of *und so fort;* then you must look up *fort* to discover that *usf.* means *and so forth.* The Collins listing of German verbs is at the very end of the dictionary, which makes it hard to find.

Nevertheless, I consider the Collins to be the best dictionary available if you need to read specialized texts. Fortunately, the Collins is revised often, so you can assume that its information is current.

Note that there are a variety of Collins dictionaries. The unabridged version has 800,000 entries, while the College Edition has 380,000 entries, and the Concise edition has 195,000 entries. Some of the smaller dictionaries have entries listed in red or in blue, which is helpful for finding words more quickly.

The Harper Collins Beginner's Dictionary

This dictionary looks more helpful than it is because it has all entries listed in blue so that they are easy to find, and grammar explanations are also shaded in blue. Information about German daily life and places is listed in the body of the text in

boxes, which can be informative for students interested in learning more about Germany. There is also useful information in the middle of the dictionary, giving false cognate warnings, verb tables, numbers, and games. In the beginning of the dictionary, there is also a summary of German grammar and a caution not to overuse one's dictionary. The post 1996 orthography is used, so that readers have to know that *daß* can be found only under *dass*, or that they should consult the German spelling reform list at the back of the dictionary. This dictionary has disappointingly few words, and oddly leaves out words such as *Gemeinschaft* (community), *Abschnitt* (section), *Haupt* (head) and several meanings of *wohl*, although some of them can be intuited in examples. Moreover, the definitions of *können* and *sollen* are incomplete. It is probably a handy dictionary for people more interested in going to Germany than it is for people interested in reading scholarly German. Thus *Bildungsroman* (a novel in which the hero develops from childhood to maturity) is omitted, while *Bierzelt* (beer tent) is listed.

The Oxford Duden

The Oxford Duden, first published in 1990 and revised about every two years, is an acceptable German-English dictionary. It is quite comprehensive (although currently not quite as comprehensive as the Harper Collins). It also has an abundance of information in the back, including grammar explanations, orthography and punctuation, guides to writing letters, useful phrases (for saying thank you, and even for expressing amazement, disappointment, hope and fear), weights and measures, temperature conversion, numbers, and times of day. Its word definitions tend to be more explicitly laid out than those of other German dictionaries. For example, nouns are listed with the appropriate articles **der, das, die,** rather than as m., n., or f., and definitions are often given in order of frequency of usage rather than by automatically listing transitive verb definitions before intransitive verb definitions.

Slight (but minor) disadvantages are that the Duden has such an abundance of material that finding words and their precise definitions can be more time-consuming (but ultimately more rewarding) than using the large Cassells. Moreover, the grammar explanations and synonyms of German words are listed in German, as is also the case with the Collins, which can be inconvenient for a beginner with a limited vocabulary. For example, *sein* as a possessive pronoun is listed as follows: sein *Possessivpron.* a) *(vor Substantiven) (bei Männern)* his; *(bei Mädchen)* her; *(bei Dingen, Abstrakta)* its; *(bei Tieren)* its; *(bei Männchen auch)* his; *(bei Weibchen auch)* her; *(bei Ländern)* its; her; *(bei Städten)* its; *(bei Schiffen)* her; its; *(nach man)* one's; his *(Amer.)* . . . Like the Langenscheidts, it has three columns of entries rather than two, so entries are somewhat harder to find quickly.

The large Cassells

A large Cassells has a clearer layout than the other large dictionaries, as it has separate entries for most words, rather than listing *Gleichnis* under the basic heading *gleich.* It also lists idioms in bold face type, which makes them relatively easy to find. It also has several aids for people not totally familiar with German grammar. For example, it lists the third person singular for all verbs which differ from the stem of the infinitive (such as *tritt, liest,* and *läßt),* and it also lists the past and participal forms for all irregular verbs in the text, as well as having a separate irregular verb chart. It also gives the past subjunctives within the text, and it gives the declensions for prounouns such as *wer* and *jemand.*

However, the large Cassells has some major disadvantages. It does not list the plural for nouns when it considers the plural obvious. (For example, it does not tell you that the plural of *Pflanze* is *Pflanzen,* or that the plural of *Übung* is *Übungen)*

But, more seriously, the large Cassells does not contain as many words as the other large dictionaries. The large Cassells has not been revised since 1978, which is disgraceful for a dictionary. Although it claims it has been revised in 2002, its current definition of *Email* is *enamel!* Moreover, although it has a list of specialized dictionaries, the most recent dictionary listed in the *various dictionary* section has a copyright of 1970. When I called their 800 number, I was unable to reach anyone who knew anything about this dictionary, much less whether it would ever be revised.

The pocket Cassells has not been revised since 1969! It is inexpensive, but you are getting what you pay for.

The large Langenscheidts

The large Langenscheidts is a good dictionary for a student who has mastered German grammar thoroughly because it has more words and more precise definitions than the large Cassells, and it is not as unwieldy as the Duden or the Collins. However, for a beginning student, the layout is confusing, as nouns often are listed under root verbs, and the reverse (although the 1995 edition is not as confusing as earlier editions). Because the large Langenscheidts has three columns per page rather than two, students find it difficult to locate specific definitions unless they already have a general idea of what they are looking for. Reflexive verbs are particularly poorly indicated. The large Langenscheidts also does not include the third person singular of some verbs, nor does it include past subjunctives.

However, the large Langenscheidts does include more abbreviations than some other dictionaries, and its lists of Geographical names, Historical, Biblical and Mythical names, and Musical Works probably would be quite helpful for students who are unfamiliar with German culture. Perhaps the list of Musical Works means

that it has an emphasis that students interested in music would find especially helpful. The large Langenscheidts was revised in 1995. If students are working with scholarly materials prior to this time, it might be a good dictionary to have on hand, but it also needs to be revised. Although the spelling reform took place in 1996, the Langenscheidts at least refers to this at the very end of the dictionary.

The Bantam "New" College German & English Dictionary

With approximately 75,000 entries, the Bantam paperback dictionary contains more words than other paperback dictionaries; therefore it is a useful resource when you do not have a large dictionary handy, or when you don't want to go wading through the numerous definitions contained in a larger dictionary. Proper nouns are included in the text rather than in a separate section. In the middle of the dictionary, there is a brief summary of German grammar, as well as a verb table. Numbers after strong verb entries refer you to the verb table in the middle of the book. The key to the abbreviations (*h., coll., fig.*, etc.) can be found in the back of the dictionary.

Previously, I had believed that the Bantam was probably the best paperback German dictionary to have, but because it has not been revised since 1981, I no longer recommend it. In addition to its not being updated, it has some other drawbacks. Occasionally, definitions are misleading. For example, *Christ* seldom means *Christ,* and yet that is the first definition given. While *alle* means *everyone,* this definition cannot be found. Prepositions are not too well defined, and when words have an adverbial as well as a prepositional meaning, the less common adverbial meaning is given first. Moreover, there is no list of common German abbreviations.

The pocket Oxford Duden Dictionary

This dictionary is frequently revised, and there are varying sizes of it. The second edition has 90,000 entries and a relatively clear layout. Some of the editions have entries listed in blue, which is helpful.

Oddly enough, the revisions have omitted many of the nicest features which were included in previous editions until 1991. It no longer has a summary of German grammar in the front, and the chart of strong verbs no longer includes their English definitions. An etymology for some words has been eliminated, as well as the symbol indicating that a word is a false cognate. Also, in some versions, the German/English section of the dictionary is now located *after* the English/ German section, which makes it slightly less handy for translation purposes. Moreover, some of the more colorful idioms are omitted in the new revision. Examples are: *durch die Blume sprechen*—"to speak in a roundabout way" and *um die Ecke bringen*—"to murder".

APPENDIX J

Partial Answer Key

Definitions of the words in the pronunciation guide:

Paar–pair, Haar–hair, Schnee–snow
sehen–to see, Jahr–year, Ohrring–ear ring
gut–good, rot–red
Bett–bed, Mann–man, hoffen–to hope
sitzen–to sit, ernst–earnest
Vater–father, haben–to have, sagen–to say
Wasser–water, Hand, alt–old
See–sea, geben–to give
Ende–end, Henne–hen
Tiger, Universität–university
ist–is, dick–thick (fat), Mitte–middle, Mittag–noon, Mittwoch–Wednesday
Bier–beer, hier–here, fliegen–to fly, liegen–to lie
Sohn–son, Brot–bread, Segelboot–sail boat
Sonne–sun, Sommer–summer
Blume–flower, Pudel–poodle, Handschuh–glove
Mutter–mother, und–and, unter–under
Mädchen–girl, Väter–fathers, Waschbär–raccoon
Männer–men, Länder–countries, Rotkäppchen–Little Red Riding Hood
Söhne–sons
öffnen–to open, östlich–easterly
kühl–cool, grün–green, Bücherwurm–bookworm

Hütte–hut, küssen–to kiss
spät–late; Öl–oil; Büffel–buffalo
Wein–wine, Mai–May
Maus–mouse, Haus–house
neu–new, Fräulein–Miss, Nachteule–night owl, Feuer–fire
bevor–before, Baumwolle–cotton
halb–half, Grab–grave
ich–I, mich–me, Licht–light
Nacht–night, Macht–might, power
Christus–Christ, Charakter–character
sechs–six, Lachs–lox
Donnerstag–Thursday
Hund–dog, Gesundheit–health
Goldfisch–goldfish: Regen–rain
Tag–day, Weg–way
König–king, hungrig–hungry, durstig–thirsty
Königin–queen, hungriger–hungrier, durstiger–thirstier
hören–to hear, helfen–to help, harmlos–harmless, aha–aha
jung–young, ja–yes, Jahrhundert–century
laut–loud, Lippe–lip
länger–longer, Fingerhut–thimble
Apfel–apple, Pfund–pound, pfui–pfooey
Quecksilber–quicksilver, mercury; Qualität–quality
studieren–to study, reparieren–to repair, klar–clear
senden–to send, Suppe–soup, Sanduhr–hourglass
Gast–guest, Fledermaus–bat
Klasse–class, besser–better
Kuß–kiss, muß–must
Erdnuß–peanut, barfuß–barefoot
spanisch–Spanish, Spinne–spider, Staat–state, Stinktier–skunk
Theologie–theology
Volk–folk, Vorwort–foreword, vier–four, Vergißmeinnicht–forget-me-not
Wald–woods, Wörterbuch–dictionary, Wassermelone–watermelon
Axt–axe, Vexierbild–jigsaw puzzle
Zickzack–zig zag, Zigarre–cigar; Quecksilber Zigarre–thermometer

Chapter 2—The present tense of verbs and the personal pronouns

2.8. er nimmt—he takes *(nehmen);* sie sieht—she sees *(sehen);* es bricht—it breaks *(brechen);* du ißt—you eat *(essen);* du wächst—you grow *(wachsen);* sie wäscht—she washes *(waschen).*

2.9. Sentence translations:

1. Man is what he eats.
6. Beautiful faces have many judges.
7. A new doctor needs a new graveyard.
10. A burned child avoids the fire.
11. It is raining sausages.

2.10. Vocabulary aid:

5. I do not know.
7. Often they say (or speak) the truth.
8. He eats the *bratwurst* (sing.).

2.11. Geographical names

Mittelamerika—Central America
Wien—Vienna
Venedig—Venice

Chapter 3—The case endings

Chapter 3, part I

3.5. Sentence translations—the accusative:

3. A beginning (mas. nom.) is no masterpiece (neut. nom.).
4. Effort (mas. nom.) *breaks* the ice (neut. acc.) (The infinitive of *bricht* is *brechen.)*
5 Truth (fem, nom.) has a beautiful face (neut. acc.), but torn clothing (acc. pl.)
6. A dwarf (mas. nom.) always remains a dwarf (mas. nom.).
11. The farmer (mas. nom.) kills the wolf (masc. acc.)

3.9. Sentence translations—the genitive:

1. The lion (mas. nom.) is the king (pred. nom.) of the animals (pl. gen.)
2. The will (mas. nom.) is the soul (fem, nom.) of work (neut. gen.).
3. Self-knowledge (fem. nom.) is the beginning (mas. nom.) of self-improvement (fem. gen.).
6. The goat (fem, nom.) is the cow (fem, nom.) of the *small man* (mas. gen.). (Do not confuse *klein*—small with *kein*—no)
8. The disorderly life (neut. nom.) of the people (pl. gen.) is the well-being (neut. nom.) of the doctors (pl. gen.).
9. The shadow (mas. nom.) of virtue (fem, gen.) is honor (fem. nom.).
11. Rest is the daily reward (mas. nom.) of the workers (gen. pl.) (singular would have been *des Arbeiters*)

Chapter 3 (continued)

3.14. Sentence translations—the dative:

2. Patience (fem. nom.) is a shield (mas. nom.) for the soul (dat. fem.).
3. The work (fem. nom.) is difficult *for* the woman (dat. fem.)
5. The meaning (fem. nom.) of the drama (neut. gen.) remains a riddle (neut. *nom.)* to the viewers (pl. dat.).
8. The professor (mas. nom.) explains the problem (neut. acc.) to the students (pl. dat.).
9. The work (fem. nom.) *of* the woman (gen. fem.) is difficult.
10. The learning (neut. nom.) of the German language (fem. gen.) ideally pleases the students (dat. pl.).

3.18. More sentence translations:

1. The friend of the engaged couple sends an e-mail to the bride's mother.
4. The wife (fem. nom.) of the doctor (mas. gen.) doubts the truth (fem. acc.) of the proverb (neut. gen.).
7. The mailman (mas. nom.) gives FM (fem. dat.) a red rose (fem. acc.)

3.21. Translate these sentences, indicating the gender and case of each noun:

2. The earth (fem. nom.) covers the mistakes (pl. acc.) *of the doctors* (pl. gen.).
3. The sun (fem. nom.) illuminates the entire world (fem. dat.)
5. The blessing (mas. nom.) of the parents (pl. gen.) builds houses (pl. acc.) *for the children* (pl. dat.).

8. Perhaps one avoids punishment (fem, dat.), but one does not avoid the conscience (neut. dat.).
12. The stolen bread (neut. nom.) tastes good to the man (mas. dat.); but finally he has *a* mouth full of pebbles (pl. gen.).
13. We are the children (pred. nom.) *of* God (mas. gen.)
14. What flies (pl. nom.) are *to idle knaves* (pl. dat.), that (neut. nom.) are we *to the gods* (pl. dat.).

3.22. Vocabulary aid:

2. This proverb (neut. nom.) is not true.
3. The meaning of this proverb (neut. gen.) is unclear.
10. The mother sends the son an e-mail.

Chapter 4—Adjectives and adverbs

4.12. Translate these sentences:

2. Old churches (pl. nom.) have dark windows (pl. acc.).
3. Thin (adj.) gnats (pl. nom.) sting wickedly (adv.).
6. Poverty is the inventor of all things (pl. gen.).
7. Mute (adj.) dogs (pl. nom.) and still (adj.) waters (pl. nom.) are dangerous (pred. adj.). Compare: stille**s** Wasser (sing.) with still**e** Wasser (pl.)
9. Dark thoughts (pl. nom.) are the children (pl. nom.) of a melancholy head (mas. gen.). Note that Kopf**es** is singular!
11. Children are the wealth of poor people (pl. gen.).
14. Death is the doctor of the poor man (gen. masc.).
16. The historian looks backwards (adv.); finally he also believes (or thinks) backwards (adv.).
18. A foolish son (mas. nom.) is his father's (mas. gen.) suffering (neut. nom.), and a cranky wife *(neut.* nom.) is like a constantly (adv.) dripping (adj.) roof (neut. nom.). *Ständig* must be an adverb because it does not have an adjectival *-es* ending.

4.13. Vocabulary aid:

3. The children of old people (pl. gen.) often have problems (pl. acc.).
5. Many people like to drink wine.
7. The work (fem, nom.) of the historian (mas. gen.) interests the professor (mas. acc.).

8. The collected works (pl. nom.) of the American historians (pl. gen.) are also in a library in Berlin. (If *Historiker* had been singular, it would have been *des Historikers.*)

Chapter 5 (part I)—Prepositions

5.8. Prepositions—accusative:

2. Misfortune, nails and hair grow through the entire year (neut. acc.).
4. Fear *considers* all food poison.
5. *For* five years the professor (mas. nom.) fought against windmills (pl. acc.).
6. Fräulein Meier (fem. nom.) wraps the mailman (mas. acc.) around *her* little finger (mas. acc.).
8. The health fanatic (mas. nom.) swims against the stream (mas. acc.) every morning *at* (not *around*) six o'clock.

5.10. Prepositions—dative

2. Laziness (fem. nom.) is the key to proverty (fem. dat.).
6. For three years, the student *has been reading* Kant's philosophy.
8. Pride (mas. nom.) breakfasts with abundance (mas. dat.), eats at noon (or lunches) with poverty (fem, dat.) and eats in the evening with shame (fem. dat.).
10. From "thrift-mountain" one easily (adv.) gets to "fat city."
12. With regard to God (mas. dat.) the Christian (mas. nom.) has the heart (neut. acc.) of a child (neut. gen.); with regard to the neighbor (mas. dat.) he has the heart (neut. acc.) of a mother (fem, gen.); and with regard to himself he has the heart of a judge (mas. gen.).

Chapter 5

5.12. Prepositions—accusative or dative:

2. An old fox (mas. nom.) *never* goes into the trap (fem. acc.).
3. Virtue (fem, nom.) does not sit at the tables (pl. dat.) of great lords (pl. gen.).
5. Many years *ago* (dat. pl.) the mailman studied the philosophy of Schopenhauer.
10. The mailman (mas. nom.) hits (present tense) the nail (mas. acc.) on the head (mas. acc.) with his observations (pl. dat.) about Fräulein Meier (fem. acc.).

11. Old friends (pl. nom.), old wine (mas. nom.) and old money (neut. nom.) have value (mas. acc.) in all the world (fem. dat.).
12. FM lives like God in France. *Wie Gott in Frankreich leben* means "to lead a wonderful life" because it originated at the time of atheism in France, when it was good to be God because you could be omnisicent, yet you had no responsibility because people did not believe in you!

5.14. Prepositions—genitive:

1. One suffers (puts up with) the smoke (mas. acc.) on account of the fire (neut. gen.).
5. In spite of the present (neut. gen.) of the mailman (mas. gen.), Fräulein Meier is somewhat sad.

5.15. Vocabulary aid:

1. Behind, next to, between, before (or: in front of),
   on, upon, over, under, in –
   everyone wants to go to Aberdeen.
   At the, on the, in the, with the, from the—
   all roads lead to Rome.
2. *For* his whole life the mailman lived in Germany.
5. For a year, Fräulein Meier *has been working* part-time.
7. Almost every evening *at* 7:30 (literally: half of *eight),* Fräulein Meier receives a letter (mas. acc.) by special delivery.

Reading Selection: Fräulein Meier

Paragraph 2: Fräulein Meier likes to read proverbs, but the purposes of these proverbs are unclear to this woman (neut. dat.). The proverbs portray the good, happy people (pl. acc.) in the following way (fem, dat.): they work a lot, they fear God, and they distrust the easy life. But Fräulein Meier works little, she does what she wants to, and she is happy, nevertheless. Perhaps she has a better idea (mas. acc.) of reality (fem. dat.) than the proverb-tellers.

Chapter 6—Verb placement (part 1)

6.5. Translate these sentences:

2. No one (nom.) knows poor people (pl. acc.).
4. The wind (mas. nom.) chases the prayers (pl. acc.) of beggars (pl. gen.).

6. No goal (neut. nom.) is too high for virtue (fem. dat.).
8. One does not find poison in the kitchens of poor people (pl. gen.) (Or: poison is not found . . . .)
10. God likes a cheerful giver (mas. acc.).
11. No plow (mas. nom.) is good enough *for* a lazy farmer (mas. dat.).
13. On earth, nothing (nom.) is without fear.
14. *Whom* (acc.) does the old woman know?

6.7. Translate—questions and commands:

1. Peacock, *look at* your legs!
2. Ask no questions, and you will hear no lies.
3. Be a snail in advice, a bird in deeds.
5. Don't take your worries with you into the bath.
8. Do not be a friend (*to* or *of*—both fem. dat. and gen. are acceptable) all the world.
10. Learn German!
11. Are you learning Russian?
13. Drink, drink, little brother drink/Just leave your worries at home . . .

6.9. Vocabulary aid:

1. For the sake of the whole truth (fem. gen.), Fräulein Meier lets the cat (fem. acc.) out of the bag.
3. In a summer garden, a romantic young man with an inclination for idealism picks a flower.
4. At five o'clock, a nice friend of the mailman visits an interesting woman with many cats.
6. In the neighborhood of the old university with great libraries and strange professors, an insightful student writes a very interesting book.
9. Always be friendly with good people.

Reading Selection: Meeresstrand (Seashore)

The seagull now flies to the lagoon,
And twilight arrives;
The evening glow reflects
Over the damp shoals.

Grey fowl scurries forth *(her)*
Next to the water;

The islands lie like dreams
In the fog, upon the sea.

I hear the secret sound
Of the swirling sand.
Lonely birdcall—
It was always like that.

Once again the wind shudders
Softly and then is silent;
The voices (which are) over the depth
Are becoming clear.

Note: this is quite a literal translation. If you feel like it, you may make it more poetic.

Chapter 7—The pronouns

7.4. Replace all the nouns:

3. *Es* ist glücklich mit *ihr* (dat. fem.).
4. *Er* sieht *sie* mit *ihnen* (dat. pl.).
5. Außer *ihnen* sind *sie* nicht hungrig.
6. *Sie* sitzt *ihm* nicht gegenüber.
8. *Es* trinkt *sie.* (Even though this is improbable, it is correct because *Mädchen* is neuter and *Milch* is feminine.)

7.6. Translate the following sentences:

3. When do *they* speak with *her*?
4. *She* knows *him.*
6. Promises are like pie crust; one breaks *them.* (or: they are broken)
7. When the daughter sings a song, the mother likes to hear *it* (the song).

7.11. Translate these sentences:

1. Follow my words (pl. dat.), not my deeds (pl. dat.).
3. Learn order, practice *it;* order saves *you* (dat.) time and effort.
5. A wise son makes joy (fem. acc.) *for his father* (mas. dat.), a foolish one makes trouble *for his mother* (fem. dat.).
7. The listener *by/at* the wall hears his own disgrace (fem. acc).

8. When the mailman sees FM, he asks her about her basket-weaving course. (It is going well.)
12. The mailman is the favorite son *of his parents* (pl. gen.).
17. God sends us (dat.) poor guests (pl. acc.)
18. Thy shepherd's crook and staff, they are my comfort
    —You set for me a table in the face of my *enemies* (pl. gen.)
    You anoint my head with oil
    My cup is overflowing. (From the twenty-third psalm)

7.12. Vocabulary aid:

2. It is a joy *to her.*
3. It does not please *them.*
5. Where are *they*?
6. She tells the story *to her* friend (mas. dat.).
7. The laziness of the child is inexplicable to his father, and he does not understand *it* (the laziness) at all.
10. *They* help her often.
11. Is that clear *to you* (formal you, dative)?
15. Where do *you* (informal you, nom.) find the answer?
17. *They* believe *him.*
18. He does not understand *their, her,* or *your* answer.

Chapter 8—Weak nouns and adjectives used as nouns

8.4. Translate (weak nouns):

1. The eye is the indicator of the heart (neut. gen.).
2. One recognizes the lion (mas. acc.) by *his/its* claws.
5. The wish is often the father (mas. nom.) of the thought (neut. gen.).
6. *Man's* (mas. gen.) will is his kingdom of heaven.
7. Sometimes the professor (fem. nom.) speaks with her students (dat. pl.).
8. The mailman often has a letter for the nice student (masc. acc.).

8.7. case ending review:

ein Guter—masc. nom.
den Guten—masc. acc. or dat. pl.
der Guten—gen. pl. or gen. or dat. fem.

8.9. Translate

1. The new is always interesting to modern (trendy) people.
2. Nothing (nom.) is agreeable to the sick one (mas. dat.).
3. The world belongs to the bold *one* (mas. dat.).
4. It is always a holiday in the house of a lazy person.
5. Other people have saints; the [Ancient] Greeks have sages.
6. No wise one (mas. nom.) despises [i.e. underestimates] small enemies and small wounds.
9. The lazy one's work day is tomorrow; his day of rest is today.
10. New saints throw the old ones into the junk pile. (If *die alten* had been capitalized—*die Alten,* the sentence would have been translated: New saints throw old *people* into the junk pile!)
11. *Everything* (nom.) is pure to the pure one (mas. dat.).

8.10. Proper names:

Richard Löwenherz—Richard the Lionheart
Hiob—Job

Chapter 9—The various uses of *es*

9.4. Translate these sentences:

1. There *are* no rules without exceptions.
8. No apples (pl. nom.) fall far from the tree.
10. There are no ugly little loved ones and no beautiful prisons.
12. No one now dies of deathly truths; there are too many antidotes.
13. Even among thieves there is honor.
14. No scholar falls from heaven.

Reading Selection: Das Sprichwort

Paragraph 4: One often finds a personification *of the animal* (neut. gen.) in the animal proverbs. Here are some recurring themes *of* such proverbs. (1) One is [always] what one is: "If the donkey wears a lionskin, the ears peek out from under it;" "A poodle that one has sheared so that it has a mane is still no lion." (2) A handicapped creature sometimes has luck (or is lucky): "Even a blind sow finds an acorn." (3) To err is "human:" "Even the best horse stumbles once (or sometimes);" "Even clever hens sometimes lay (eggs) in nettles." (4) Bragging amounts to nothing: "Hens who cackle a lot lay no eggs."

Paragraph 5: The small animals (for example the lamb and the calf) for the most part symbolize human children: "The wolf eats an impertinent little sheep;" "A good cow sometimes has a bad calf;" "Whoever goes abroad as a calf comes home as a cow." (In proverbs, only some animals are capable of spiritual growth. The goose, the donkey, and the ape always remain fools while the cow can develop spiritually.)

Chapter 10—The future tense

10.4. Translate these sentences:

3. Tomorrow morning a Bible salesman will visit Fräulein Meier.
5. The first will be the last, and the last will be the first.
6. The error of a moment becomes the worry of a lifetime.
8. No sorrow will happen to *the just person* (dat.); but the godless will be filled with misfortune. (Do not translate the "pay attention" *es* at the beginning of the sentence.)
9. Who will neglect the sowing (neut. acc.) *because* of the sparrows (gen. pl.)?
11. Over all mountains peaks/ Is rest (or peace)/ In all the tree tops you (can)feel/ Barely a breath:/ The little birds are silent in the woods./ Just wait, soon/ You also will rest.

10.5. Vocabulary aid:

1. I will never understand the dramas *of* Georg Kaiser.
5. No one among these students will read the entire book.
6. Tomorrow *they will fly* to Europe.
8. Tell me with whom you associate, and I'll tell you who you are.

Chapter 11—Comparison of adjectives and adverbs

11.11. Translate these sentences:

4. *More people* drown in wine than in the Rhine.
5. One dumb person finds ten dumber ones.
6. There is no sweeter suffering than hope.
7. The love *of the citizens* (pl. gen.) is the country's strongest wall.
8. The cows *of other people* (pl. gen.) have larger udders.
9. The most mud (masc. nom.) always belongs to the laziest sow (dat. fem.) Note that *der größte Dreck* has to be the subject because *Dreck* is masculine. Also, *der faulsten* . . . can *never* be nominative.

10. Experience is a *long* way. (*Weg* is mas. nom.; thus *langer* is *not* comparative.)
14. Convictions are more dangerous enemies *of truth* (fem, gen.) than lies.

11.12. Vocabulary aid:

1. Old friends and *old* wine (mas. nom.) are best.
2. A hand full of gold is heavier than a sack full of justice and truth.
6. An ounce of (a) good example is worth more than a pound of words.
7. [It is] better to be alone than in bad company (fem. dat.).
9. The chain is not stronger than its weakest link.

11.13. Comparative (or superlative) or not exercise: the following are regular: ein armer Mann; die Freunde schöner Leute; ein freundlicher Briefträger; Tom ist bei schlechter Laune; ein großer Hund; teuerer Wein (comparative would have been: *teuererer* Wein); die Eltern kleiner Kinder. If you are still having problems identifying case endings, I would advise you to review chapters 3, 4, and 5.16.

Chapter 12—*Da-* and wo-compounds

12.2. Translate the following:

2. Do *you* believe in it?
4. Do *they* write about it?
5. We help *her* with it.
6. Don't *they* have any time for it?
8. She hopes for it.
9. There is no water in it.

12.6. Translate these sentences:

1. Wealth resembles sea water; the more one drinks (of) it, the thirstier one becomes.
3. The hen *likes to* lay (eggs) in the nest, in which eggs already are.
5. The mouth says it, but the heart knows *nothing of it.*
6. Whoever strives for a wreath *gets* a flower from it.
7. Hear (or heed) what others say, and reflect before you speak.
8. Fear of the Lord is a blessed garden; the *most beautiful* flowers grow in it.
10. *For what* is Fräulein Meier waiting? *For whom* is the mailman waiting?

Reading Selection: Der Elefant

Paragraph 2: The zoo lies in a small village, and it lacks some *of the most important* animals. For example, it lacks an elephant. (Three thousand rabbits are not a good substitute for it!) But finally the zoo gets the money for the purchase of an elephant. All the inhabitants of the village await the arrival of the elephant with joy.

Paragraph 7: But during the lecture of the teacher, something happens. The wind sets the elephant in motion, and so it rises (springs) *higher and higher* into the air. *For a while* the schoolchildren observe the four circles of the feet, the bulging belly and the trunk. But then the animal vanishes over the tree tops. Even the apes are astonished *by it.*

Paragraph 9: The schoolchildren of the village now do no more schoolwork. And they become scoundrels. Probably they now drink vodka, and they smash windows. And now they no longer believe in elephants.

Chapter 13—Verb prefixes

13.8. Translate these sentences (separable verbs):

1. The stupid ones never die out. *(aussterben)*
4. Where one sows love, there joy grows forth *(hervorwachsen)*
5. This picture portrays a woman with two cats.
7. *Close your* mouth and *open your* eyes (*zumachen* and *aufmachen)*
11. The evil wolf (mas. nom.) kills the poor child (neut. acc.). *(umbringen)*
13. Bad news always comes *too* soon.
14. No one finishes/stops learning until the grave is his home.

13.10. Translate these sentences (inseparable verb prefixes):

1. The father of the mailman complains about the behavior of his son.
2. Good swimmers drown first of all.
5. The mouse frightens *the elephant* (mas. acc.).
7. The fear magnifies the danger. (Because both nouns could be in either nominative or accusative case, the first noun has to be nominative.)
8. The father of the mailman distrusts FM. (Note that *der Vater* will *always* be nominative.)
10. The student stomps on the cockroach.

Chapter 14—Verb tenses (part I)

14.12. Translate these sentences:

1 Poverty has built many cities.
3. Whoever trusts in hope has built on [thin] ice.
7. Fräulein Meier *did* not expect the mailman's answer.
8. After the student had lived in Germany, he studied the novels of Grimmelshausen.
9. Pussycat, pussycat, what did you do there? I frightened a little mouse under her chair.
11. Previously, a nice woman waited on you the whole time. (Note that *Sie* cannot be the subject because the verb *hat* is singular.)
12. I have now, alas/ thoroughly studied, with ardent effort/ philosophy, law and medicine/ and unfortunately even theology./ Thus stand I now, I poor fool/ and am none the wiser . . .

14.21. State the infinitives of the following strong verbs:

bleiben, fliegen, lesen, stehlen, versprechen, nehmen, erfinden, trinken, tragen, beschreiben, fallen, erscheinen, fliegen, essen, kommen, mißverstehen.

Chapter 15—Verb tenses (part II)

15.5. Give the infinitive of the following separable verbs:

ausholen (weak), aufstehen (strong), absteigen (strong), zumachen (weak), aufbauen (weak), niederschreiben (strong), einbrechen (strong), umdeuten (weak), umbringen (irr. weak), mitgehen (strong), vorweisen (strong), ausflippen (weak), ausdeutschen (weak).

15.6. Translate these sentences:

2. Thankfulness *has climbed (steigen)* to heaven and *has taken* the ladder *with it (mitnehmen).*
3. When the day *broke (anbrechen),* still before the sun *had risen (aufgehen),* the mailman *wrote (schreiben)* a long, romantic poem.
4. A wolf in sleep never captured *(fangen)* a sheep.
6. A *sweet* song *has deceived (betrügen)* many a bird.
8. *No fool* (mas. nom.) has invented learning. (If "fool" had been accusative, the form would have been: *keinen Narren.*)

9. When he became angry, the father of the mailman presented an image *of strong wrath* (mas. gen.), and he frightened Fräulein Meier.

15.9. Translate these sentences:

2. A tamed tongue is a rare bird.
5. With each *newly* learned language, you gain a new soul.

15.10 Verb practice:

9. Did she say the truth?
10. She did not say the truth.
16. Why didn't she go there?
19. He has often been here.
20. He will be here.
21. He needed (*brauchen*) his laptop.
22. He broke (*brechen*) the vase.
23. She brought (*brachte*) him a glass of water.
25. The poem pleased (*gefallen*) her.

Chapter 16—The plurals

16.4. Translate these sentences:

3. The dumbest farmers have/harvest the largest potatoes.
4. Dogs, farmers, and nobles close no doors.
6. The errors *of others* (pl. gen.) are good teachers.
9. The worm sees *the most beautiful apples* first.
15. Fleas get even into the fur of an aristocrat's dog.

Chapter 17—How to use a German dictionary

17.4. Adjectives and adverbs

1. The student was *just* here.
2. Half a loaf is better than no bread at all.
3. Fräulein Meier nevertheless looks happily at the mailman.
4. The *gentle* breezes are agreeable *to her. (angenehm* cannot be a participle because it doesn't end in either *-en* or *-t*)

17.6. Nouns

1. Fräulein Meier has problems with her *Venetian blinds.* (Be wary of false cognates!)
2. A large tree grows from a small twig.
3. The book *consists of* three volumes.
4. By no means will Fräulein Meier give up her cats.
5. Idleness is the beginning of all vices. (*Laster* is *vice,* while *Last* is burden, load.)
6. The early bird gets the worm. (literally: The morning hour has gold in its mouth.)

17.8. Compound nouns

die Unabhängigkeit/s/erklärung—Declaration of Independence; die Erd/-entstehung/s/lehre—doctrine of the origin of the earth; die Sein/s/erfahrung—experience of being; die Form/veränderung—change of form; die Wasser/versorgung/s/gesellschaft—the society for the procurement of water; der Leben/s/erhaltung/s/trieb—the drive for the preservation of life (or: survival instinct); das Liebling/s/tier- favorite animal; der Liebling/s/stier—favorite bull; die Einwanderung/s/politik—immigration policy; der Ausdruck/s/tanz—dance of expression; die Automobil/s/eile—haste of an automobile; die Sättigung/s/punkt/s/bestimmung—designation of the saturation point.

17.11. Prepositions

1. During the tug of war three children died.
2. The mailman insists on the truth.
3. Kant had an important influence on Kleist.
4. Nicholas brought Recha tea in an aluminum cup and looked at her hair while she drank.

17.13. Verbs

1. Last night, the sensitive professor gave a speech about the origin of pacifism.
2. Suddenly it occurred to the soldier that he didn't have any money.
3. It *was a matter of* the honor of the famous professor. *(gehen* with the preposition *um* means *to be a matter of, to concern.* Although it is hard to find in dictionaries, it is often used in scholarly writings.)
4. Blessed are the peaceful, for they will be called the children of God.

Chapter 18—Common suffixes

18.2. Translate these sentences:

1. *Everything* is fleeting, only *the eternal* is important.
2. Money comes in *(eingehen)* limping and goes away *(fortgehen)* dancing.
3. Build a golden bridge *for the* fleeing enemy.
6. If one bends justice (then) *it (*nom.) breaks. If *sie* had been accusative, the clause would have been: *so bricht man sie*—then one breaks it.
10. Poets are *shameless* with regard to their experiences; they exploit *(ausbeuten)* them. (*Schamlos* cannot modify *Erlebnisse* because it is not right in front of the noun, but rather at the end of the sentence.

Chapter 19—The modal auxiliaries

19.10. Translate these sentences:

1. One must believe the old *ones* (pl. dat.).
5. *On account of a/one rotten* branch, one must not cut down the tree.
6. One man who wants to (do something) can do more than ten who have to.
8. Need teaches the ape (masc. acc.: *Affe* is a weak noun—see Chapter 8) to fiddle.
12. A critic pointed out to H that the historical facts did not correspond with his philosophy. H is reputed to have said: "All the worse for the facts."
14. The mailman *had to* help Fräulein Meier with her homework.
16. Do you *want to roam farther and farther?*
    See, the good lies so near.
    Only learn to grasp fortune.
    For fortune is always there.

19.11. A nursery rhyme:

"Should I or shouldn't I?"
the boy asks the girl.
"What do you or don't you want?"
the girl asks the boy.
"Now, however, stop,"
says the boy to the girl.
"Now, you will get a kiss." (It is all right to omit *doch*.)

Reading Selection: November

Paragraph 1: He was afraid, and when he said to someone: "It *has become colder*" he expected comfort.

Paragraph 7: One does not notice how the trees let the leaves fall. Suddenly they have no more. In April, they will have leaves again, perhaps already in March. One will see how they get leaves.

Paragraph 9: There will be no snow, there is no longer snow.

Paragraph 11: "One must accustom oneself to the snow," he said, "one must breathe *more deeply* and go *more quickly.*"—"What should I buy the children for Christmas?" he asked.

Chapter 20—The *zu*-construction

20.10. Translate these sentences:

1. In the house *of a thief it* is difficult to steal.
3. *No prophet* can look at the other without laughing (Do not translate the "pay attention" *es.)*
4. The wolf pressed on the latch, the door (fem. nom.) opened (*aufgehen* is intransitive), and without speaking a word, he went straight to the bed of the grandmother and swallowed her.
6. Things which have happened *can not be changed.* (This *must* be translated passively.)
8. Three things *cannot be stopped:* water, fire, the crowd.
9. The origin of music *cannot be separated* from the origin of humanity.
11. The journalist loved to caricature the weaknesses of others maliciously and accurately.
14. Curt put out his cigarette, and Nikolaus used the moment to get on (the bus) before him and to give Recha his hand, and without insistent haste to take the seat next to her.
15. Not when it is dangerous to speak the truth does it find adherents most rarely, but when it is boring.

Chapter 21—Co-ordinating conjunctions

21.6. Translate these sentences:

3. Hear and *be* not deaf, but believe slowly.
4. After his release, the student had lost 45 pounds and several political illusions.
7. An old god must be able to help and harm.
9. The life story of Immanuel Kant is difficult to describe. For he had neither life, nor story.
10. Psychology had discovered unknown depths and abysses of the soul, but had also dissolved the firm, unerring self-awareness.
13. The golden hair of the grandmother perhaps had not always been so golden, but the blue eyes were definitely genuine.
14. The King of France is a king of donkeys; for his subjects must do what he imposes on them; the King in England is a king of the people; for they consent to *that which* he imposes to them; but the Kaiser is a king of princes, for they do what pleases them.

Chapter 22—Basic verb placement (part II)

22.5. Translate these sentences:

1. But it takes *(dazugehören)* more courage to make an end than (to make) a new verse: all doctors and poets know that.
7. Like no other artist of his epoch, Paul Klee dealt with a harsh intimacy of our interior and outer world.
8. Only God sees the *most secret* thoughts, but why should these be so important? Some are important, not all. And must all people consider them important?
9. In this respect, the Dionysian man has a similarity to Hamlet: both have at one point taken a true look into the essence of things, they have recognized [what the essence of these things is], and it disgusts them to act; for their action can change *nothing* of the eternal essence of things, they consider it laughable or humiliating that it is expected of them to set right again the world that is out of joint. Recognition kills action (for) the veil by means of illusion belongs to action—that is the lesson of Hamlet.

22.6. Verb placement practice

1. In a park a friend of the woman with many cats heard the beautiful songs of the birds.
2. In a park a friend heard the beautiful songs of the woman with many cats.

3. In a park a friend of the woman gave a bon bon to the child.
4. In a park a friend gave a woman some bon bons.
8. In a park a woman gave a child one of her sweets.
9. In a park a woman gave a bon bon to one of her friends.
13. In a park, only two women can be seen. (Review 20.9 if you have problems with this sentence.)
16. For three years, a student with many books lived in a large city.

Chapter 23—Dependent clauses (part I)

23.7. Translate these sentences:

1. Of what use is it if the cow gives a lot of milk if she knocks over the milk jug afterwards?
4. If/when force comes, then justice goes on crutches.
5. Do not throw away the old shoes before you have new ones.
6. After the father of the mailman had known Fräulein Meier for an entire year, he *had to* admit *(gestehen)* that she was at least amusing and good-natured.
10. For it was Rilke's painful experience, that in this present reality *the powers of the heart* (nom.) *no longer* animate the things, that world and life become more and more negligible.
11. Wittgenstein used the term, "That is terrible" when he was in [the state of] greatest excitement, [when he] buried his fingernails into his forehead, or bit his handkerchief.

Chapter 24—Dependent clauses (part II), wer, was, wie, wo warum

24.6. Translate these sentences:

4. The *healthy one* does not know how rich he is.
8. *Everything that* is against the conscience has hard thorns.
9. One retains that which one has learned in youth the longest.
15. Wisdom is better than pearls, and everything that one may wish can not compare with it.
16. Whoever digs a grave for others (dat. pl.) falls into it himself.
17. Whoever fights with monsters might see to it that in so doing he does not become a monster. And if you look into an abyss for a long time, the abyss also looks back into you.
18. Perhaps I know best why *man alone* laughs: he alone suffers so deeply that he *had to* invent laughter. (You know that it is *man alone laughing* rather than *man laughing alone* because of common sense. Also, the *er allein* in the

second clause lets you know that *allein* is connected with the *man* rather than the verb.

Chapter 25—Dependent clauses (part III), relative clauses

25.15. Translate, noting the gender and case of each relative pronoun:

2. They were friends *to whom* (dat. pl.) one could say the truth.
5. Honor follows the person (mas. dat.) who flees it, and flees him, who hunts it.
6. There are no more wicked deaf ones than those who do not want to hear.
7. The electric light illuminated the face of a woman whose broad features were covered with a layer of cheap make-up.
8. The first half of the 19th century stands strongly under the impression of the disappointment of the political independence movement since 1815, *which* (acc.) *the unsuccessful revolutions of 1830 and 1848* (nom.) still intensified.
10. Woe to the country whose (neut. gen.) king (mas. nom.) is a child.
12. E. T. A. Hoffmann was an artiste of the uncanny, who consciously enjoyed his visions to the fullest and at the same time ironically reflected *them* (pl. acc.)
14. Nicholas experienced for the first time the reaction of a young artist who gives over his work to a critical public, and perhaps it was harder for him because this public consisted of three young workers who had never before gone through an art gallery.
15. Herzog Wilhelm von Breisach, who (mas. nom.) since his secret alliance with a countess named Katharina von Heersbruck from the house of Alt-Hüningen—who (fem. nom.) seemed to be beneath his rank—lived in animosity with his half-brother, the count Jacob the Redbeard, *returned (zurück-kommen)* from a meeting towards the end of the 14th century when the night of Saint Remigius began to grow dark.

25.16. More verb placement practice:

1. When the cat who is now sleeping becomes hungry, she will perhaps go to the kitchen.
3. In a park, a mailman, who had a loved one, gave an little piece of bread to a bird.
4. In a park, a man who had many bon bons gave his beloved one of his sweets.
5. In a park, in which many children played, there were beautiful flowers and trees.
9. In a room, a cat can be seen who is sleeping happily on a sofa.

Reading Selection: Aus dem Erdbeben in Chili

I. It was at the Corpus Christi Festival, and the solemn procession of nuns, which the novices followed, had just begun, when the unfortunate Josephe, at the time of the ringing of the bells, collapsed in birth-pangs on the steps of the cathedral.

II. In order to translate this sentence, place the main verb *(stand)* immediately *after* the subject (ein junger Spanier namens Jeronimo Rugera). Otherwise, keep the word order essentially as it is.

III. Jeronimo stood by a pilaster and fortified the rope that was to tear him/from this sorrowful world (fem. dat.) onto an iron clamp, when suddenly the largest part of the city sank with a crash and *buried everything* that breathed under its ruins.

Chapter 26—The reflexive

26.6. Translate these sentences:

2. *Even* an expert has his master.
5. Luck fell into *his* lap.
6. Whoever robs the other *person* of his good name makes *him* poor and *himself not* rich (or: does not enrich himself).
7. Whoever wants to warm himself at the house of a miser must bring the fire with him.
9. The last straw breaks the camel's back.

26.10. Translate these sentences:

1. When an earthworm and a hedgehog mate, what do you get? Answer: Ten meters of barbed wire.
3. *Be on guard against* those whom God has marked.
4. Since mankind has existed, man has rejoiced *too little:* that alone is our original sin.
5. Nietzsche's writings *appeared (sich darstellen)* as a powerful collection *of boldest* aphorisms, which through a unique artistic use of words maintain(a) fascinating precision.
6. Misfortunes occur, even in the most organized families.
8. God spoils this life for us so that we long for the holy quitting time (i.e., death).

26.12. Translate this joke (common mistakes are indicated by italics):

An old inhabitant of Munich gets into a conversation at the marketplace with a nice pigeon. Both get along excellently and would like to continue the acquaintance, and so the old man *invites (einladen)* the pigeon for the next afternoon for coffee at his place. The hour has arrived, he has set the table *nicely* and *specially* gotten *a few* flowers, but the one who does not appear is the pigeon (or: but the pigeon does not appear). Have I so erred in my pigeon-knowledge? the old man *asks* himself, while he sits with his coffee, which slowly grows cold. *Restlessly* he looks at his watch *more and more* frequently—finally, an hour later, the doorbell rings. The pigeon [a young chick!] stands in front of the door and says with a charmingly embarrassed *smile:* "I beg you, excuse me that I have come so late. But it was such a glorious afternoon, and so I decided to walk!"

Reading Selection: The Frog King

Finally, the frog spoke: "I have eaten and am tired; now carry me into your little room and make up your silk little bed, than we can lie [down] to sleep." The king's daughter/princess began to cry and was afraid of the cold frog, whom she dared not to touch and who now was to sleep in her beautiful, pure little bed. The King grew angry, however, and spoke: "Whoever has helped you when you were in need you should not despise afterwards." Then she took him with two fingers, picked him up and placed him into a corner. When she lay in bed, however, he came crawling and spoke: "I am tired, I want to sleep, just like [as well as] you—lift me up, or I'll tell your father." Then she became bitterly angry, picked him up and with all her strength she threw him against the wall. "Now you will have peace, you nasty frog!"

But when he fell down, he was not a frog, but rather a prince with beautiful and friendly eyes.

Chapter 27—The overloaded adjective construction

27.14. Translate these sentences:

1. Josephe found her loved one in a dark (1) valley (2) shaded (3) by pines (4).
3. An old (1) castle (2) belonging to (3) a marquis (4) *was located* at the foot of the alps, near Locarno, in upper Italy.
6. Secretly, she looked at the (1) woman (2) sitting (3) opposite her (4).
8. Such (1) thoughts (2) which were quite useless (3) in his current situation (4) went through his head. (Note that *nutzlose* modifies "in his current situation" rather than "thoughts.")

11. In spite of *its* pessimism, the novel became an agreeable (1) book (2) depicting (3) the charm of the old middle-class way of life with love and humor, patient prolixity and exquisite detail (4).
12. The fat child went to the library on a Friday or a Saturday, in any case, not on the (1) day (2) designated (3) for lending. (4)
13. E. T. A. Hoffmann was a (1) sketcher (2) feared (3) because of his malicious caricatures (4) and a writer who was not able to work without many drinks.
16. Opposite the door, a large (1) chalk drawing (2) executed (3) in bold strokes (4) was shown in the candlelight, which represented Napoleon,as he, in an awkward and despotic demeanor warmed by a fireplace his (1) feet (2) clad (3) in gun-boots (4). (Note: in order to avoid a misplaced modifier, you may put the verb elsewhere in the sentence.)
17. The beautiful LP sat by the narrow bay window of a cell that looked out towards the gray (1) castle tower of Riedberg (2) illuminated (3) now by morning light. (4)

Reading Selection: The Wolf and the Seven Little Goats

(Paragraph 3) Then the (1) wolf (2) living (3) entirely alone in the woods (4) went away and bought a piece of chalk; he ate it and made his voice fine (high) with that. He returned, knocked at the door of the little house and called, "Open up, dear children, your mother is here!" But the wolf had placed his black *foot (singular!)* in the window; the children saw it and called, "We won't open up, our mother does not have a black foot, as you do; you are the wolf." So the wolf went to the (1) miller (2) living (3) in the vicinity of the forest (4) and asked him if he would sprinkle some flour on his foot. The miller thought, "The wolf wants to deceive someone," and did not want to do it. But the wolf said, "If you don't do it, I'll eat you." So the miller was afraid and made the wolf's foot white. Indeed, people are like that.

Now the (1) wolf (2) feared (3) by all creatures of the world (4) went to the door again, knocked . . . . .Then he placed the [his] (1) foot (2) covered (3) with flour (4) in the window, and when they saw that it was white, they believed that everything he said was true . . . .

After the wolf had eaten the six, he went away, lay outside under one of the many trees in front of the (1) house (2) shaded (3) by pines (4) and began to sleep. So *you* can imagine how she wept for her poor (1) children (2) eaten (3) by the wolf (4).

Chapter 28—The passive

28.11. Translate these sentences:

1. The tree *is recognized* by its fruit.
3. Donkeys are invited to the wedding only in order to carry water.

4. Innocence *is murdered* at the dance; on the way home, it (or she) *is buried.*
7. No murder *is committed among* thieves.
8. Whoever does not sow in the spring will reap nothing in the fall.
10. A (1) justice (2) driven (3) to the extreme (4) can under some circumstances *become* (do not translate the *zu*) a great injustice.
11. When the stone is out of the hand and the word is out of the mouth, they can no longer be brought back.
12. The door *was opened* and a stout man who had a long beard appeared in the doorway.
14. Memory is the only paradise from which we can not *be driven out.*
15. Revenge is a dish [food] that should be eaten cold.
16. But the German revolutionaries (around 1830), who were erroneously and involuntarily combined under the collective name "young Germany" were *more strongly* bound up with the past *(dat.)* than they themselves suspected and ever wanted to admit.
17. The ones dancing are considered mad by those who do not hear the music.
18. W was once sick. Because a specific medicine wasn't in the medicine cabinet, my father, who was a merchant, was requested to bring the medicine from N. I, myself, was commissioned to deliver the little package to W. At that time, he lived in a small room at the R's. When I came in, W was lying in bed. He thanked me repeatedly and said, "I can't give you anything now, but I will play for you something on my clarinet." It was rather embarrassing for me.

28.12. Practice with forms of werden

10. It is promised.
11. She will understand the problem.
12. The problem is not understood by her.
13. The problem was understood.
15. The students are expected.
16. The students can be helped.
19. Eight years ago, the critic was often read.
23. Is the song ever sung?
24. A man living with many dogs will meet a woman living with many cats.

28.13. Only the following are infinitives: gehen, sehen, machen

Chapter 29—Constructions to be translated passively in English

29.7. Translate these sentences:

1. Whoever *is afraid* sees ghosts.
4. Fish are caught with the hook, people are caught with words.
5. Loving and praying cannot be forced.
7. Expressionism cannot be understood without Nietzsche' s precedence.
8. Whatever is of straw must be on guard against the fire.
9. A cranky wife and a dripping roof when it rains a lot can be compared with one another.
10. Old trees cannot *be* bent.
11. Leopards break into the temple and drink the sacrificial vessels (*plural*) empty. This is repeated again and again. Finally, it can be calculated in advance, and it becomes part of the ceremony.

29.8. Translate these sentences (the fake passive):

1. Engaged is *not yet* married.
3. After the cow is stolen the stable is locked.
4. As long as one nourishes, he is honored, and as long as one gives, he is loved.
5. Power is given to death over everything finite. . . . But it is given no power over love.

Reading Selection: Zwei Chassidische Geschichten

I. A poor lady apple dealer, whose stand was near the house of Rabbi *Chaim* of Zans, once came complaining to him: "Our Rabbi, I still have no money in order to buy for the Sabbath." "And your apple stand?" asked the Zaddik. "The people say," she answered, "my apples are bad, and they don't want to buy any." Immediately, the Rabbi ran to the street and called: "Who wants to buy good apples?" Immediately the crowd *was gathered* around him, the coins flew past *(herbeifliegen)* unseen and uncounted, and soon all the fruits were sold at double and triple the price. "Just see," he said to the woman *when* he turned to go, "your apples were good, the people just didn't know it."

Chapter 30—The subjunctive I

30.11. Translate these sentences (subjunctive I):

2. The fox believes that everyone (mas. nom.) steals hens (pl. acc.) as he does.
4. When everyone says to you, you are drunk, go to sleep.
5. Children *believe,* when it rains in the village, it is raining in the whole world. (*Meinen* can *not* be an adjective because it does not precede *Kinder,* it *must* be a verb, because otherwise the clause would be without one and because it has a plural verb ending.)
6. The *prophets* remind us: *Let us* not forget the future.
7. A thirsty one believes that he is drinking, but when he wakes up, his tongue is still dry.
9. [May] God protect me from my friends!
11. The mailman believed he had learned a lot from Fräulein Meier.
12. The scholars are good clocks: only *let one take care* to wind *them* correctly! Then they indicate *(anzeigen)* the hour without error and in so doing make a modest noise.

Chapter 31—The subjunctive II:

31.7. Translate these sentences (subjunctive II):

2. A donkey remains a donkey, *even if he came* (or: were to come) to Rome.
4. If truth *were* a brook, people *would have* hydrophobia.
5. When he thinks about Fräulein Meier's former sweetheart, the mailman looks *as if he had eaten* a crabapple.
6. If it *had* a mouth, it *would bite* you.
8. I *would not know* how to live, were I not still a seer *of that (dessen)* which must come.
10. Snow White told the seven dwarfs that her stepmother had wanted to have her killed, [that] the hunter had saved her life [literally: had given her life to her], than then she had gone the entire day until she finally had found their little house.
11. No one except for the mailman *would have expected* that the insightful (1) essay (2) treating (3) the future of the earth (4) *had been written* by Fräulein Meier.
12. Why can the dog experience fear, but not repentance? Would it be correct to say, "Because he cannot speak?"
13. Jeronimo was rigid *with* horror; and immediately, as if his entire consciousness *had been shattered,* he now held onto the column on which he had wanted to die, in order not to fall off.

14. *Had* he only remained in the desert and far from the good and the just! Perhaps he would have learned to live and would have learned to love the earth—and laughter besides. He died too early: he himself would have renounced his teaching, *had* he reached my age.

31.8. Subjunctive practice:

1. If he were here, he would go with us.
2. If he *had been* here, he *would have gone* with us.
6. She believes she is friendly.
7. She believe*d* she *was* friendly.
8. She *should be* friendly.
16. That can be said. (This is not subjunctive because the verb ends in *-t*)
17. That could be said if it were true.
19. It would be nice to be able to read German.
20. According to police reports, the robbers had committed the murder.
22. If the youngest little goat had not hidden so well, it would have been found and eaten by the wolf.

Chapter 32—Other subjunctive forms

32.6. Translate these sentences (modals):

1. If all liars ate (or: were to eat) oats, the horses would have to starve.
2. The historian reports what has happened; the poet [reports] what could happen.
5. The lazy one says: There is a lion outside; I could be killed on the street.
6. The German language has a great wealth of proverbs. Nevertheless, it might not be bad to borrow proverbs from other languages as well, which can be translated briefly and emphatically (i.e. which prove a point).

32.9. Translate these sentences (conditional):

1. Zarathustra said, "I would only believe in a God who knew how to dance."
3. If God wanted to punish a country, he would take the wisdom from the rulers.
5. If it were not for the sake of [or: because of] hope, one's heart would break.
6. If wishes were horses, beggars would ride.
7. A Hasidic Tale: Rabbi Chaim of Krosno, a disciple of the Baalschem, once *watched (zusehen)* a tightrope-walker with his disciples. He was so deeply absorbed in the spectacle that they asked him, what it *was* that attracted his eyes (acc.) to the foolish exhibition. "This man," he answered, "gambles with his life, I could not say on what account. But certainly, while he goes on the rope, he cannot think about

the fact that he is earning a hundred guilders with his action, for as soon as he thought this, he would fall off."

Reading Selection: The Swan

Paragraph 3: This one was an old (1) man (2) who had been lonely (3) for years (4). When he took his position, it already began to become cold in the evenings. No one else came to the park. The old man went around the park, paid attention to the swan and sometimes looked at the stars. He was freezing. He wanted to just go to the small inn in the vicinity of the park. He was just ready to go when he remembered the swan. He was afraid it could be stolen during his absence. Then he would lose his job. Therefore he gave up his plan.

Paragraph 4: But the cold tormented him more and more and deepened his loneliness. Finally he decided to go to the inn together with the swan. Even if someone came to the park in order to enjoy the beautiful nature, he would not immediately notice the absence of the swan. "The night is starlit, but without moonlight, and we will return immediately," he thought and took the swan with him.

Paragraph 5: When he consumed his mutton with pleasure and contentment, it occurred to him that the swan looked at him quite strangely. He was sorry for the bird. As long as the latter reproachful glance rested on him, he couldn't eat. He called the waiter and ordered for the swan a (1) roll (2) dipped (3) in warm, sugared strong beer (4). The swan became joyous, and after they had ended their meal, both returned to their *post* (sing.) cheerful and satisfied.

Paragraph 8: With the thought of what a shudder must penetrate each one who in such a night came into contact with water, the old man became quite (emotionally) moved. Should the poor swan have nothing at all of life? Certainly he would rather sit in a warm corner and eat something.

Paragraph 11: When he sat by the shore and looked at the sky or at the empty, *bitingly* cold park, he suddenly felt a timid tug on his trouser leg. The swan had swum to the shore in order to remind him of something. So they went.

Chapter 33—When the sentence starts with a verb

33.4. Translate these sentences:

1. If an old man dances, he makes a lot of dust.
2. If the cat does not want to mouse, let her out.

4. If the bread falls, then it falls on the buttered side. (*Fällt* is *not* subjunctive because it ends in a *-t*.)
5. If a blind man leads *the other*, both will not wander far.
8. If you lack wine, then drink beer.
10. If I have no *cows*, then I have no effort.
11. If there were no fools, then there would be no wise ones.
12. The world is a drunken farmer; if one helps him into the saddle on the right, he falls off on the left.
13. If the poor person gets a piece of bread, then the dog tears it from his hand.
15. If your enemy is even only like an ant, then consider (or rank) him among the elephants, nevertheless.
16. T K went the way that he had to go, a little carelessly and irregularly, and if he went astray it happened because for many there is absolutely no right way. If one asked him what in all the world he intended to become, then he imparted changing information, for he was in the habit of saying that he carried within himself the possibilities for a thousand forms of existence, together with the secret awareness, that fundamentally they were nothing but impossibilities.

Chapter 34—Other pronouns

34.7. Translate these sentences:

1. Whoever in his thirtieth year knows nothing, at forty is nothing, at fifty has nothing, learns nothing, becomes nothing, and comes to nothing.
3. Whoever wants to go further than his horse can [go] should dismount and go on foot.
7. Everything is possible to the one who wants.
8. Many would be cowards if they had enough courage.
9. No crow pecks out the eyes of the other.
11. When Hegel explained everything real as reasonable, he supported a realism *that* (mas. nom.) no longer perceived literature, philosophy and religion as first life's works, but pushed political, economic and scientific interests (acc.) into the foreground.
12. Everything *could be* performed excellently, if one could do things twice.

Reading Selection: Nietzsche

Passage II: Assuming that we say yes to a single moment, then we have with that said yes not only to ourselves but to all existence. For nothing stands for itself alone, neither in ourselves nor in things: and if only a single time our soul has trembled and

sounded with joy like a lyre, then all *eternities* (pl.) were necessary in order to bring about this One occurrence—and in this single moment of our affirmation (or: saying yes) all eternity was redeemed, justified and affirmed. (So if you have had even *one* good moment while reading *German Quickly*, all your hard work was worth it!)

Chapter 35—Placement of Commas

1. School tears children during their most precious time of development from the circle of the family, robs them of the joy of freedom and makes out of the child a worn out, oppressed creature *to whom* (dat.) an expression of exhaustion, fear and boredom clings while he repeats with his lips foreign words in a foreign language.
2. In the higher Parisian circles it was considered an exclusive pleasure to attend the performances of the M d S in the "hiding place for the moral scum of bourgeois society."
3. If one at one point believes to have found a rule that offers firm ground to rest for a moment in the general confusion and tumult of the ten parts of speech. then one perceives in the grammar: The student should pay attention to the following exceptions.
4. The scholar was a small, shabbily clothed man whose eyes constantly looked around in the classroom, but never looked at the student with whom he spoke.
5. The opening of space could overcome our provincialism that makes the earth the standard and [it could] give us a new vision of the greatness of creation, namely the insight that earth and humanity, their space and time are only a part of the whole.
6. Moral judgment, like the religious, belongs (note: *zugehören*) to a stage of uncertainty to which even the concept of the real, the differentiation of the real and the imaginary is still missing, so that "truth" at such a stage designates nothing but things that we today call "illusions."

Chapter 36—Troublesome words

36.29. Translate these sentences:

2. If luck comes once, then five ill winds come after it.
4. A dog bites whomever has bad luck even if he is riding a camel.
5. On a (1) note (2) written (3) by the mailman to Fräulein Meier (4) is written, "I love you."
7. It is better to ask twice than to go astray once.
8. One values health *only* after one has lost it.

9. Under the bridge, the weather-browned, white-bearded head of an oarsman *had appeared,* who—to infer from his awkward movements—was not familiar with the lagoon.
10. And in fact, in the middle of these horrible moments in which all earthly goods of people perished and all of nature threatened to be buried, *the human spirit itself* (nom.) *seemed to rise* (schien . . .aufzugehen) like a beautiful flower.

36.30. Final sentences:

1. Is each end as hard as every beginning?
3. At the wedding celebration, much champagne *is* drunk.
4. In my experience, one needs 30 hours for the learning of English, 30 days for French, 30 years for German. Either one should therefore reform this language, or one should place it among the dead languages, for nowadays only the dead have time enough to learn it. (But if you have gotten this far, you have obviously learned German. *Congratulations!!!*)



APPENDIX K

General and Humanities Vocabulary

The General and Humanities Vocabulary consists of about 3,325 entries, excluding the abbreviations following the vocabulary. In addition to the vocabulary words found in the exercise sentences and reading selections it includes several words you are likely to encounter in scholarly readings as well as the definitions most appropriate for such readings. Many of the words (especially those marked **) have been chosen because (1) they have a wide range of radically different meanings **(absetzen, zugehen)**, (2) they are easily confused with other words **(fordern, fördern)**, or (3) they are false cognates **(konkurrieren, Prägnanz, sensibel)**. While it is not necessary to memorize such words, you may wish to mark them in your dictionary. Also, take special note of words **(bringen, gehen, stellen, Zeit)** that you know already, but which have a variety of idioms associated with them. Words marked * are on my important word list. The post 1996 orthography is often noted in parentheses.

Note the following abbreviations:

adj. — adjective
adv. — adverb
aux.s. — auxiliary is *sein*
conj. — conjunction
pref. — prefix
prep. — preposition
suff. — suffix
v.i. — verb, intransitive
v.r. — verb, reflexive
v.t. — verb, transitive

For most nouns, the genitive and the plural endings are given in parentheses. When verbs are separable, the prefix is hyphenated. Strong verbs are conjugated. Note that all verbs with *sein* as an auxiliary are intransitive.

ab (adv.) — off, down, from; (sep. prefix) — downward motion, attrition, etc.

* der **Abend** (-s, -e) — evening

* **aber** (conj.) — but, however, yet; (emphasis) — indeed

ab-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to depart, leave; deviate, diverge

der **Abgrund** (-s, ⸚e) — abyss

ab-halten—to hold (a meeting)

** **ab-hängen (von)** — (irr. v.i.) — to depend on

abhetzen—to wear out

** **ab-laufen** (irr. v.i.) — to elapse, lapse, expire; flow or run off, ebb

ab-lehnen (v.t.) — to decline, refuse; reject remove, take off; (v.i.) — to decrease

ab-nehmen (irr. v.t.) — to diminish, decline

** der **Absatz** (-es, ⸚e) — pause, paragraph

ab-schließen (irr. v.t.) — to conclude, to settle

** der **Abschnitt** (-s, -e) — paragraph

** **ab-setzen** (v.t.) — to put down; to dismiss; to delete; (v.i.) — to pause, stop; (v.r.) — to settle, contrast

die **Absicht** (-en) — intention, purpose;

mit Absicht—on purpose, deliberately

ab-sitzen—to get down, dismount

ab-sondern (v.t.) — to separate, isolate

ab-stürzen (i.) — to fall off

ab-weichen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to deviate, digress, depart

die **Abwesenheit**—absence

ab-ziehen (irr. v.t.) — to take off, remove; (v.i.) — to go away, leave, depart

ach — alas

acht geben — to take care, heed

achten (v.t.) — to consider; respect; (v.i.) (auf) — to pay attention or regard or heed to, take notice of

der **Advokat** (-en, -en) — lawyer

der **Affe** (-n, -n) — ape

ähneln (v.i.) (dat.) — to resemble

ahnen (v.t.) — to suspect, surmise

ähnlich (adj.) — alike

* **aktuell** (adj.) — relevant, up-to-date

* **all** — all, every

* **alle** (pn.) — everyone

* **allein** (indecl. pred. adj.) — alone; (adv.) — only, merely, solely; (conj.) — but, however, nevertheless

allerdings (adv.) — to be sure

* **alles**—everything

allgemein (adj.) — general

allzu — all too

die **Alpen**—alps

* **als** (conj.) — than; when; as;

* **als ob** — as if

* **also**—so, thus

* **alt** — old

das **Alter (-s, -)** — age

das **Altertum** (-s,⸚er)—antiquity

die **Ameise** (-n) — ant

amüsant—amusing

* **an** (prep.) — with dat. or acc. (dat.)

am 4. Juli—on the 4th of July;
an sich—in itself; (acc.)—on, onto
an-beten—to worship
an-bieten—to offer
der **Anblick** (-s, -e)—sight, view
an-brechen—to begin, start
* **ander** (adj., pron.)—other;
am anderen Morgen—on the next morning;
nichts anderes als—nothing else but
* **ändern**—to alter, change
anders (adv.)—differently
der **Anfang** (-s, ¨-e)—beginning
* **an-fangen** (irr. v.t.)—to begin, to do
der **Angeklagte** (-n, -n)—accused
die **Angel** (-n)—fishhook
angenehm—agreeable
das **Angesicht**—face, countenance
** **an-führen** (v.t.)—to lead, to quote; deceive
** **an-gehen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.) to commence; (v.t.)—to concern
an-greifen (irr. v.t. & i.)—to seize, grasp; undertake; attack
die **Angst** (¨-e)—fear, anxiety
an-haben—to have on
anhaften—to cling
der **Anhang** (-s, ¨-e)—appendix, addendum; supporters
an-klopfen (i.)—to knock
** **an-kommen** (irr. v.i. aux.s.)—to arrive; (auf)—to depend on, be a matter of; come upon
die **Anlage** (-n)—structure; outline; predisposition
der **Anlaß** (or **Anlass**) (-sses, ¨-sse)—cause
an-legen (irr. v.t.)—to apply; to invest; to use; to arrange, establish
** **an-nehmen** (irr. v.t.)—to adopt; to take; to assume, suppose
die **Anrede** (-n)—speech, form of address
** der **Anschlag** (-es, ¨-e)—stroke; plan; estimate
der **Anschluß** (-sses, ¨-sse)—connection, contact
* **an-sehen**—to look at
an-setzen (v.t.)—to attach, estimate; (v.i.)—to start
der **Anspruch** (-s, ¨-e)—claim, demand
anständig—decent, respectable
* **anstatt** (prep., gen.)—instead of
an-stecken—to contaminate, be catching
die **Antike**—antiquity
der **Antrag** (-s,¨-e) —proposition, proposal, petition
der **Antrieb** (-s, -e)—impulse, drive
* die **Antwort** (-en)—answer
antworten (tr. & i.)—to answer
an-wenden—to use
die **Anzeige** (-n)—notice; announcement; review
an-zeigen—to show
an-ziehen—to pull; to attract
der **Apfel** (-s, ¨)—apple
* die **Arbeit** (-en)—work
der **Arbeiter** (-s, -)—worker
arg—wicked
der **Arm** (-es, -¨e)—arm
***arm**— poor
die **Armut**—poverty
* die **Art** (-en)—species; class, type, kind; behavior
** **-artig** (suff.)—like, sembling
* der **Arzt** (-es, ¨-e)—doctor, physician
der **Ast** (-es, ¨-e)—branch

der **Atem** (-s, -)—breath
atmen—to breathe
***auch** (adv.)—also, too; (emph.); even; **auch wenn**—even if
* **auf** (prep.) with dat. or acc—on, onto, on top of; **auf diese Weise**—in this way;
auf jeden Fall—in any event
auf (pref.)—up, upward, opening; end something; sudden or brief action
auf-bauen (v.i.)—to erect, construct; (v.r.)—to be based on
auf-bewahren—to protect
auf-blasen—to inflate
auf-brechen—(i., aux.s.)—to leave
** **auf-bringen** (irr. v.t.)—to raise, bring up; procure, summon; enrage
auf-erlegen (i.)—to impose
** **auf-fallen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to attract notice or attention; to strike
auf-fassen (v.t.)—grasp, view, comprehend, regard, interpret
** **auf-führen** (v.t.)—present, perform; quote
die **Aufgabe** (-n)—task; giving up
auf-geben (irr. v.t.)—to give; to give up, surrender
auf-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to rise; to open; to become apparent
auf-halten—to delay, to stop
** **auf-heben** (irr. v.t.)—to lift or raise up; to terminate, to repeal
auf-hören (v.i.)—to stop
die **Aufklärung**—the Enlightenment
die **Auflage** (-n)—edition
auf-lösen (v.t.)—to dissolve, resolve; (v.r.)—to disperse
* **auf-machen** —to open

die **Aufnahme** (-n)—adoption, acceptance; inclusion
auf-passen (v.i.)—to pay attention to
auf-prägen (v.t.)—to impress
auf-räumen (v.t.)—to do away with
** der **Aufriß** (-sses, -sse)—outline, summary
der **Aufsatz** (-es, ¨-e)—essay, article, treatise
auf-schauen (i.)—to look up
auf-schieben (irr. v.t.)—to delay
der **Aufstand** (-es, ¨-e)—revolt, rebellion
* **auf-stehen** (i., aux.s.)—to get up
auf-stellen (v.t.)—to erect, assemble; (v.r.)—place or position oneself; to nominate
** **auf-treten** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to tread; to appear; to occur
auf-tun—to open
auf-wärmen—to warm up
auf-wecken—to wake up
auf-weichen—to soften
auf-ziehen—to wind
aufs Spiel setzen—to gamble
das **Auge** (-s, -n)—eye
* der **Augenblick** (-es, -e)—moment
* **aus** (prep.) with dat. out of, from; **aus Berlin kommen**—to come from Berlin; **aus Erfahrung lernen**—to learn by or from experience; **aus verschiedenen Gründen**—for various reasons; **von Grund aus**—thoroughly
aus (pref.)—movement away from; movement forward; completion; choice from several possibilities
aus-beuten—to exploit
aus-breiten—to stretch (v.r.)—to extend

aus-drücken (v.r.) — to express oneself
** **auseinander-setzen** (v.t.) — to explain; (v.r.) — to come to terms with; to argue
** der **Ausfall**—result, outcome; attack
aus-führen—to carry out, execute; to explain
ausführlich — detailed
** die **Ausgabe** (-n) — giving out, distribution; edition (of a book)
** **aus-gehen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to go out; to end;... auf— to aim at; ... von — to start with
ausgezeichnet (adj.) — excellent
aus-hacken—to peck out
aus-kosten—to experience
die **Auskunft** (¨-e) — information
das **Ausland** (-s) — foreign countries
aus-legen (v.t.) — to lay out; to explain, interpret
aus-lernen (i.) — to finish learning
aus-machen (v.t.) — to make up, form; decide, determine, agree on; to make a difference
die **Ausnahme** (-n) — exception
aus-reichen (i.) — to be enough
aus-reißen—to pull out
der **Ausruf** (-s, -e)—exclamation; proclamation
ausruhen — to rest, relax
der **Ausschnitt** (-s, -e) — extract, excerpt, detail (from an illustration)
* **aus-sehen** (irr. v.i.) — to appear
* **außer** (prep.) with dat. — out of, outside, except
* **außerdem** (adv.) — besides, moreover
das **Äußere**—outward appearance
äußern (v.t.) — to express; (v.r.) to express oneself
äußerst (attrib., adj.) — farthest, utmost, extreme; (adv.) extremely
aus-sprechen (irr. v.r.) — to speak one's mind; to grant
aus-stehen (irr. v.t.) — to endure, bear; (v.i.) — to be overdue
aus-strecken—to extend
aus-teilen—to distribute, share
der **Austritt** (-s, -e) — escape, resignation, withdrawal
aus-üben (v.t.) — to practice, carry out; to exert
der **Ausweg** (-s, -e) — way out, solution
der **Auswurf** — scum

B

der **Bach** (-es, ¨-e) — brook
backen, bäckt, backte, hat gebacken—to bake
das **Bad** (-es, ¨-er) — bath
die **Bahn** (-en) — path; arena; train, course
* **bald** (adv.) — soon; almost
** der **Band** (es, ¨-e) — volume
das **Band** (-es, ¨-e) — tie, bond
** **bannen** (v.t.) — to banish; to charm; to captivate; to excommunicate
der **Bär** (-en, -en) — bear
barfuß—barefoot
der **Bart** (es, ¨-e) — beard
der **Bauch** (-es, -e) — stomach
* **bauen** (v.t.) — to build, construct; (v.i.) — to build; to depend on
der **Bauer** (-n or -s; -n)—farmer, peasant
die **Baukunst** (¨-e) — architecture

* der **Baum** (-es, ¨-e)—tree
die **Baumkrone** (-n)—treetop
be- (pref.)—turns v.i. into v.t.; completion; around, on all sides; supply
beachten—to notice, regard, heed
beanspruchen (v.t.)—to claim, have a claim to
der **Becher** (-s, -)—cup, mug
bedauerlich—deplorable
bedenken (irr. v.t.)—to consider, remember (v.r.)—to reflect
bedeuten (v.t.)—to mean, signify
* die **Bedeutung** (-en)—meaning, significance; importance
bedingen (v.t.)—to cause, determine, condition; to demand
bedürfen (v.i.)—to need, want, require (with gen.)
beeilen (t. & r.)—to hurry
beenden—to end
befassen (v.r.)—to occupy or concern oneself with, engage in
befehlen, befiehlt, befahl, hat befohlen—to command
* **befinden** (irr. v.t.)—to find, deem, consider; (v.r.)—to be, to be situated
befürchten—to fear
begeben—to negotiate (v.r.)— to proceed; es **begab sich, daß**—it happened ...
begegnen (v.i. aux.s.) with dat. —to meet; to occur; (v.r.)—to concur
begleiten—to accompany
begraben, begräbt, begrub, hat begraben—to bury
* **begreifen, begriff, hat begriffen** (v.t.)—to understand, grasp
der **Begriff** (-s, -e)—idea, notion; concept, understanding
begründen (v.t.)—to found, establish; to substantiate

behaglich—comfortable, cozy
behalten, behält, behielt, hat behalten—to retain
behandeln (v.t.)—to treat, deal with
behaupten (v.t.)—to maintain, assert
die **Behauptung** (-en)—assertion
beherrschen (v.t.)—to rule over, to control, govern, dominate
behindert—handicapped
* **bei** (prep.) with dat.—at, while, during
bei (pref.)—beside, additional; nearness; tendency toward; add something in addition
* **beide**—(adj. & pron.) both;
die beiden—the two
der **Beifall** (-s)—approval, applause
bei-legen (v.t.)—to add, join; to attribute, ascribe, bestow
beinah (e) (adv.)—almost
beisammen—together
beiseite (adv.)—aside
* das **Beispiel** (-s, -e)—example;
zum Beispiel (z.B.)—for example
beißen, biss, hat gebissen—to bite
der **Beitrag** (-s, ¨-e)—contribution; article
bejahen—to affirm
bekannt (adj.)—known, familiar
bekennen (irr. v.t.)—to admit, confess
beklagen—to lament, complain about
* **bekommen** (irr. v.t.)—to receive, get
bekümmern (v.t.)—to worry; (v.r.)—to concern oneself with
bekunden (v.t.)—to express, state; (v.r.)—to become evident
belasten (v.t.)—to burden
beleben—to animate

belegen (v.t.)—to occupy, impose; to take, enroll in
beleuchten (v.t.)—to light; to illuminate, to elucidate
beliebt (-s, -e)—popular
bellen (i.)—to bark
bemächtigen (v.r.)—to seize
bemerken (v.t.)—to notice
bemühen (v.t.)—to trouble; (v.r.) to concern oneself
benachbart—neighboring
benehmen (v.r.)—to behave
das **Benehmen** (-s)—conduct, agreement
beneiden—to envy
benutzen (v.t.)—to use
beobachten (v.t.)—to observe; to adhere to
die **Beobachtung** (-en)—observation
berechnen (v.t.)—to calculate; to mean, intend
der **Bereich** (-s, -e)—district, region; field, range, extent
bereit (adj.)—willing, prepared
bereiten (v.t.)—to make ready, to prepare; to give, offer, cause
bereits—already
der **Berg** (-es, -e)—mountain
der **Bericht** (-es, -e)—report, survey, commentary
berücksichtigen (v.t.)—to consider, take into account
der **Beruf** (-es, -e)—vocation, calling, profession
beruhen (v.i.)—to be based or founded on
berühmt (adj.)—famous
berühren (v.t.)—to touch, allude or refer to; concern; (v.r.)—to touch; to be in accord with
die **Berührung** (-en)—touch, contact

beschäftigen (v.t. or r.)—to occupy
beschatten—to shade
der **Bescheid** (-es, -e)—information, answer
bescheiden—modest
beschließen (r.)—to conclude
* **beschreiben** (irr. v.t.)—to describe
beschwerlich (adj.)—troublesome
besinnen (irr. v.t.)—to think about, consider
besitzen, besaß, hat besessen—to possess
besonder—particular, special
* **besonders** (adv.)—especially
besorgen—to procure
besprechen (irr. v.t.)—to discuss; to review; (v.r.)—to confer
bessern—to improve
die **Besserung** (-en)—improvement
beständig (adj.)—constant, invariable, lasting
bestätigen (v.t.)—to confirm
** **bestehen** (irr. v.t.)—to encounter, undergo; overcome (v.i.)— to be, exist, continue; **bestehen auf**—to insist on; **bestehen aus**—to consist of
bestellen (v.t.)—to order; to arrange, prepare
bestimmen (v.t.)—to determine; to grant; to designate; to allocate; to specify, define
bestimmt—definitely
besuchen—to visit
betätigen (v.t.)—to operate, bring about
betäuben—to daze
beten (i.)—to pray
betonen (v.t.)—to emphasize
** der **Betracht**—**in Betracht kommen**—to be possible;
außer Betracht lassen—to disregard;

in Betracht ziehen—to take into account
betrachten (v.t.)—to look at; to examine
betreffen (irr. v.t.)—to concern
der **Betrieb** (-es, -e)—business, work, operation
betrügen, betrog, hat betrogen—to deceive
der **Bettler** (-s, -)—beggar
beurteilen (v.t.)—to judge, assess
die **Bevölkerung** (-en)—population
* **bevor** (conj.)—before
bevorzugen (v.t.)—to prefer, to favor
** **bewahren** (v.t.)—to guard; to preserve; to keep, to protect
** **bewähren** (v.r.)—to prove one's ability; to prove effective
* die **Bewegung** (-en)—movement
der **Beweis** (-es, -e)—proof
bewilligen (v.t.)—to grant
bewußt (adj. & adv.)—conscious, deliberate, aware
das **Bewußtsein** (-s)—consciousness
bezahlen (v.t.)—to pay
bezeugen (v.t.)—to attest
bezeichnen—to mark, describe, denote
** **beziehen** (irr. v.t.)—to enter, to adopt; to get; **beziehen auf**—to relate to
die **Beziehung** (-en)—relationship
** der **Bezug** (-es, ¨-e)—reference
die **Bibel** (-n)—Bible
der **Bibelverkäufer** (-s, -)—Bible salesman
bieder (adj.)—honest, conventional, conservative
biegen, bog, hat gebogen—to bend
bieten (irr. v.t.)—to offer; to present
* das **Bild** (-es, -er)—picture, image; portrait; metaphor
bilden (v.t.)—to form, shape; to educate, develop; (v.r.)—to arise, be created
der **Bildhauer** (-s, -)—sculptor
* die **Bildung** (-en)—education, culture; form, organization; formation
der **Bildungsroman**—novel of someone's growth from childhood to maturity
billig (adj.)—just, fair; cheap, reasonable
binden, band, hat gebunden—to bind
binnen (prep.) with gen. or dat.—within
** der **Biograph** (-en, -en)—biographer
die **Biographie** (-n)—biography
* **bis** (prep.) with acc.—as far as; until; (conj.)—until
bisher (adv.)—until now
bisschen (adj.)—little bit
* **bitten** (irr. v.t.)—to ask (um) for
bitter—bitter
** **blank** (adj.)—shining, bright
das **Blatt** (-s, ¨-er)—page, leaf; newspaper
* **bleiben, blieb, ist geblieben** (v.i.) to remain, stay, continue; to be left over
bleich—pale
der Blick (-es, -e)—look, view, glance
* **blicken** (v.i.)—to view
blind—blind
der **Blitz** (-es, -e)—lightning
** **bloß** (adj.)—bare; (adv.)—merely, only, solely, simply
blühen (v.i.)— to blossom

die **Blume** (-n) — flower
das **Blut** (-es) — blood
bluten (v. i.) — to bleed
der **Boden** (-s, -) — ground, foundation; **zu Boden schlagen** — to strike down, to shatter
der **Bogen** (-s, -or ¨-) — sheet of paper; curve; arch
borgen — to borrow
* **böse** (adj.) — bad, evil, wicked, angry
boshaft—malicious
botanisch—botanic
der **Bote** (-n, -n) — messenger
die **Botschaft** (-en) — message; news
das **Brandopfer**—burnt offering, sacrifice
der **Bratenduft**—smell of cooking
die **Bratwurst** (¨-e) — sausage
* **brauchen** (v.t.) — to need, want, require; **brauchen nicht zu**—to not have to
der **Bräutigam** (-s, -e)—bridegroom
** **brav** (adj.) — honest, good
* **brechen, brach, hat gebrochen** — to break; (v.r.) — to refract
* **breit** (adj.) — broad, wide
die **Breite**—width, expanse
brennen, brannte, hat gebrannt — to burn
* der **Brief** (-es, -e) — letter, epistle, document
der **Briefträger** (-s, -) — mailman
die **Brille** (-n) — eyeglasses
* **bringen, brachte, hat gebracht** (v.t.) — to bring, to take; to produce; **an den Tag bringen** — to expose; **in Gang bringen** — to start; **in Verdacht bringen**—to cast suspicion on; **ihn um etwas bringen**—to deprive him of something; **zu Ende bringen**—to finish; **etwas zustande bringen** — to get something done
das **Brot** (-es, -e) — bread
die **Brücke** (-n) — bridge
brüllen (i.) — to roar
der **Brunnen** (-s, -) — spring, well
* das **Buch** (-es, ¨-er) — book
die **Bühne** (-n) — stage, scene, arena
der **Bund** (-es, ¨-e) — agreement, bond, alliance
Bundes- (in compounds) — federal
der **Bürger** (-s, -) — citizen, bourgeois
bügerlich (adj.) — civic, civil; middle class
die **Bürgerlichkeit**—conventionality, plainness
der **Bürgermeister** (-s, -) — mayor
der **Busch** (-es, ¨-e) — bush
die **Buße** (-n) — penitence

C

** der **Chef** (-s, -s) — boss, chief
** der **Christ** (-en, -en) — Christian
das **Christentum** (-s) — Christianity

D

* **da** (adv.) — there; here; then, in that, for that reason; (conj.) — since, because
* **dabei** (adv.) — near it, at the same time; in addition, moreover; yet
das **Dach** (-es, ¨-er) — roof
dafür (adv.) — for it or them; for that reason; in favor of
* **dagegen** (adv.) — against it or them; (conj.) — on the contrary
daher (adv.) — from that place; therefore; that is why

dahin (adv. and pref.) — there, to that place
dahinter-kommen (v.i., aux.s.) — to get at the truth of
damalig (adj.) — of that time, then
* **damals** (adv.) — then;
erst damals—only then;
schon damals—even then
die **Dame** (-n) — woman, lady
* **damit** (adv.) — with it or them; thereupon; (conj.) — so that
dämmern (i.) — to dawn; to grow dark
die **Dämmerung**—twilight
der **Dämon** (-s, -en)—demon
danach (adv.) — after that, towards it; accordingly
die **Dankbarkeit**—thankfulness
* **danken** (v.i.) — to thank; (v.t.) — to owe
* **dann** (adv.) — then, at that time, besides
dar-stellen (v.t.) — to represent, depict; (v.r.) — to appear, to be apparent or obvious
darum (adv.) — around it or them; (conj.) — therefore, on that account, that's why
* das **Dasein** (-s) — existence, being
die **Daseinsform** (-en) — form of existence
* **daß** or **dass** (conj.) — that; so that
dauern (v.i.) — to last;
lange dauern — to take a long time
dazu (adv.) — for it or them; besides, in addition
dazu-gehören—to take
decken (v.t.) — to cover
* **dein** — your
dementsprechend (adj.) — appropriate; (adv.) correspondingly
demnach (adv., conj.) — accordingly, consequently; therefore
* **denken, dachte, hat gedacht** (v.t. or i.) — to think; consider; imagine; mean; (v.r.) — to think, imagine, believe
* **denn** (conj.) — for, because;
es sei denn—unless, except
dennoch (conj.) — yet, still, however, nevertheless
* **der, das, die** -the
derart (adv.) — in such a way or manner
* **derselbe (dieselbe, dasselbe, dieselben)**—the same
* **deshalb** (adv.) — on this account; (conj.) — therefore
despotisch—despotic
desto (adv.) — all the (more); **je... desto** — the ... the
* **deren** — whose
* **dessen** -whose
deswegen—for that reason
deuten (v.t.) — to explain, interpret; (v.i.) — to point, indicate, signify
deutlich (adj.)—distinct, clear
* **deutsch** (adj.) — German
Deutschland — Germany
dicht (adj.) — dense, compact; (adv.) — near, close
der **Dichter** (-s, -) — poet, writer
* die **Dichtung** (-en) — poetry, literary works; fiction; imagination
dick —thick, fat
der **Dieb** (-es, -e) — thief
dienen (v.i.) — to serve
* **dieser (m.), diese (f.), dieses (n.)** (dem. adj.) — this;

diese (pl.) — these
** die **Diktatur**—dictatorship
* das **Ding** (-es, -e) — object, thing, matter
der **Direktor** (-s, -en)—director
der **Diskurs** (-es, -e) — discourse
* **doch** (conj.) — but, though, nevertheless; (adv.) — of course; (part.) — just; **wenn doch**—if only
der **Dom** (-s, -e) — cathedral, dome
der **Donner** (-s) — thunder
das **Donnerwetter**—scene
doppelt (adj.) — double; (adv.) — twice
das **Dorf** (-s, ¨-er) — village
der **Dorn** (-s, -en) — thorn
* **dort** (adv.) — there, over there
das **Drama** (-s, -men) — drama
der **Drang** (-es, ¨-e) — pressure; urge, craving draußen — outside
drehen (v.t.) — to turn; (v.r.)
es dreht sich um—it is a question of
* **drei**— three
dreifach—threefold
dreitägig—three day
** **dringen, drang, ist gedrungen** (v.i.) — to penetrate, enter; (aux.h.) — to beg, plead, insist on
drohen (i.) — to threaten
drücken (v.t.) — to press; to push stamp; (v.i.) — to be oppressive
der **Druckfehler** (-s, -) — misprint
* **du**— you (informal)
der **Duft** (-es, ¨-e) — scent, smell
dumm—dumb
die Dummheit (-en) — stupidity
dumpf (adj.) — dull; vague; stifling
* **dunkel** (adj.) — dark, dim,gloomy, sinister; vague; dubious
dünken (v.i.) — to seem, look, appear
* **durch** (prep.) — with acc. — through, throughout, as a result of, by means of; (adv.) — thoroughly
durch- (pref.) — through; across; thoroughness
durchaus (adv.) — throughout, thoroughly, by all means; quite;
durchaus nicht—by no means
durch-dringen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to penetrate; win accceptance; (v.t. insep.) — to permeate, pervade
durcheinander—at random; mixed up
durch-führen (v.t.) — accomplish, execute
durch-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to pass through;
durchgehen lassen—to let pass, to overlook; (v.t. sep.) — read over or through; to check
durchgehend (adj.) — continuous
durch-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to pass or get through; to appear, to reveal itself; to succeed
durch-lesen—to read through
durch-machen (v.t.) — to finish, accomplish; undergo, suffer
der **Durchschnitt** (-s, -e) — cross-section, profile
durchschnittlich — average
** **durch-setzen** (v.t.) — to accomplish; (insep.) — to permeate, pervade; (v.r. sep.) — to be successful
durchsichtig (adj.) — clear
* **dürfen** (modal v.) — may, might; be allowed or permitted to;
dürfte (subj. II) — (conjecture) — might, could
dürsten—to thirst; to be thirsty
durstig—thirsty

E

die **Ebbe** (-n) — ebb
* **eben** (adj.) — even, level; (adv.) — just, precisely, exactly;
eben erst—only just, just now
ebenso (adv.) — likewise, in the same way
echt (adj.) — genuine, authentic
die **Ecke** (-n) — corner
edel (adj.) — noble
die **Edelleute**—nobles, noblemen
egal (adj.) — equal, alike, all the same
die **Egalität**—equality
der **Elfenbeinturm** (-s ¨-e) — ivory tower
* **ehe** (conj.) — before
die **Ehe** — marriage
ehemalig—former
eher (adv.) — sooner; more likely; rather; **eher als** — rather than; more
die **Ehre** (-n) — honor
die **Ehrfurcht** — reverence
ehrlich (adj.) — honest
das **Ei** (-s, -er) — egg
die **Eiche** (-n) — oak
der **Eid** (-es, -e) — oath
der **Eifer** (-s) — eagerness, zeal
die **Eifersucht** — jealousy
* **eigen** (adj.) — own; peculiar, characteristic
eigen (suff.) — property of, belonging to
eigenartig—peculiar, odd
die **Eigenschaft** (-en) — quality, attribute
* **eigentlich** (adj.) — actual; (adv.) — actually, really
eigentümlich (adj.) — belonging to; peculiar to; strange
eignen (v.r.) — to be suitable; (v.i.) — to be characteristic of
ein- (pref.) — motion into
* **ein** — a, an, one;
ein so — such a
einander—one another; each other
ein-bilden (v.t.) — to imagine; to be conceited
die **Einbildung**—illusion, deception, imagination
ein-brechen—to break in
einbüßen—to lose, forfeit
eindeutig (adj.) — clear, plain; definite; unequivocal
** **ein-dringen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to penetrate; to study closely; to attack: to entreat
der **Eindruck** (-es ¨-e) — impression
* **einfach** (adj.) — simple; single
der **Einfall** (-s, ¨-e) — sudden idea
** **ein-fallen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to occur to; to collapse, to invade
ein-finden (r.) — to appear
der **Einfluß** (or **Einfluss**) (¨-sses, ¨-sse) — influence
ein-führen (v.t.) — to introduce; to insert in
die **Einführung**—introduction
der **Eingang** (-s, ¨-e) — entrance; introduction; beginning
** **ein-gehen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to understand; to arrive; to die; to be credible to; to consider carefully; (v.t.) — to enter into
ein-greifen (irr. v.i.) — to influence; to interfere in; to intrude
die **Einheit** (-en) — unity
ein-holen—to catch up with; to gather
einig (adj.) — united

* **einige** (adj.) — some, a few
ein-kaufen — to buy
der **Einklang**—harmony, agreement
ein-laden—to invite
ein-lassen (irr. v.t.) — to let in; (v.r.) — to become involved with
* **einmal** (adv.) — once; auf einmal — at once; **nicht einmal**—not even; **noch einmal**—once again
ein-nehmen, nahm ein, hat eingenommen (v.t.) — to take in; to seize, to take up
ein-ordnen (v.t.) — to arrange; to classify, fit in
ein-prägen (v.t.) — to imprint, to impress
ein-reißen—to pull down
ein-richten (v.t.) — to arrange, adjust; (v.r.) — to settle down, to establish oneself; to prepare for
einsam—lonely
die **Einsamkeit**—loneliness
ein-schlafen (i.) — to fall asleep
** **ein-schließen, schloß ein, hat eingeschlossen** (v.t.) — to lock up; to surround; to include, to contain
ein-sehen (irr. v.t.) — to realize, see
einsichtsvoll—insightful
ein-sperren—to lock up
** **ein-setzen** (v.t.) — to appoint; to use; (v.i.) — to start
einst (adv.) — once; some day
** **ein-stellen** (v.t.) — to stop, to discontinue; to adjust; (v.r.) — to appear; to adopt
einstimmig (adj.) — unanimous
ein-treten (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to occur, happen; to enter, step in; **eintreten für** to intercede for
der **Einwand** (-s, ¨-e) — objection
ein-wirken (v.i.) — influence, affect
** der **Einwurf** (-s, ¨-e) — objection; insertion
einzeln (adj.) — single, individual; isolated; (adv.) — separately, one at a time;
im einzelnen—in detail
* **einzig** (adj.) — only, absolute; (adv.) — only
das **Eis** (-es) — ice
ekeln—to disgust
der **Elefant** (-en, -en)—elephant
elend — miserable
die **Eltern** (pl.) — parents
empfänglich (adj.) — susceptible, receptive
empfehlen, empfahl, hat empfohlen (v.t.) — to recommend; (v.r.) to recommend oneself
empfinden, empfand, hat empfunden (v.t.) — to feel, perceive
* das **Ende** (-s, -n) — end, conclusion; **letzten Endes**—in the long run; **Ende der zwanziger Jahre**—in the late 20's
* **endlich** (adj.) — ultimate, final; (adv.) — finally
eng — narrow
engagiert (adj.) — committed, involved
der **Engel** (-s, -) — angel
ent- (pref.) — negation, reversal, removal; separation; emergence; initiation; intensification
entblößen (v.t.) — to uncover
entdecken (v.t.) — to discover
entfallen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to not apply; **jemandem entfallen**—to slip one's mind
entfalten (v.t.) — to unfold; to develop

entfernen (v.t.)—to move away; to remove; (v.r.)—to withdraw, to depart
entfremden (v.t.)—to alienate
entgegen (adv., prep.) with dat.—towards; against
entgegen- (pref.)—approach or opposition
entgegen-setzen (v.t.)—to oppose
entgegen-stellen (v.t.)—to contrast; (v.r.)—to oppose
entgegen-treten (irr. v.i. aux.s.)—to oppose, to confront
entgegnen (v.t. and v.i.)—to answer
entgehen, entging, ist entgangen (v.i.)—to escape, avoid, elude
enthalten (t.)—to contain; (r.) —to refrain (from)
entlang (adv. prep) with acc.—along
entlassen—to dismiss, fire
entnehmen, entnahm, hat entnommen (v.t.)—to deduce, infer; to take from
entreißen (with dat.)—to tear away from
entrinnen (i., aux.s.)—to escape
entsagen (v.i.)—to renounce
entscheiden (irr. v.t., i. & r.)—to decide
entschließen (irr. v.r.)—to decide
entschuldigen—to excuse
das **Entsetzen** (-s)—horror, terror
entsetzen (v.t.)—to horrify
entsprechen, entsprach, hat entsprochen (v.i.)—to agree, to correspond
* **entstehen, entstand, ist entstanden** (v.i.)—to originate; to result; to develop
die **Enttäuschung**—disappointment
* **entweder... oder**—either ... or
entwerten (v.t.)—to devalue
entwickeln (v.t.)—to develop, to evolve
entziehen, entzog, hat entzogen (v.t.)—to remove, withdraw, to deprive; (v.r.)—to elude
der **Epigone** (-n, -n)—undistinguished descendent or follower
er- (pref.)—to produce, bring about, die, kill
* **er**—he, it
erbauen—to build
der **Erbe** (-n, -n)—heir, successor
das **Erbe** (-s)—heritage, inheritance
erbleichen (i., aux.s.)—to turn pale
* die **Erde** (-n)—earth, ground, world
das **Ereignis** (-sses, -sse)—event
* **erfahren, erfuhr, hat erfahren** (v.t.)—to experience, discover, undergo, learn
die **Erfahrung** (-en)—experience; empirical knowledge
erfassen (v.t.)—to seize, grasp; to understand; to include
erfinden, erfand, hat erfunden (v.t.)—to invent
der **Erfolg** (-es, -e)—success, result, outcome, effect
erforderlich—necessary
erforschen (v.t.)—to investigate
erfreuen—to delight, (r) (with gen.) to enjoy
erfüllen (v.t.)—to fill; to fulfill (v.r.)—to come true
ergänzen (v.t.)—to complete, supplement
** **ergeben, ergab, hat ergeben** (v.t.)—to produce, yield; (v.r.)—to be result of, ensue; to surrender

das **Ergebnis** (-ses, -se)—result, outcome
ergreifen—to seize, to grasp
erhaben (adj.)—elevated, lofty
* **erhalten, erhielt, erhalten**—to preserve; to receive
erheben (irr. v.t.)—to raise, ascertain; (v.r.)—to rise up, revolt
erhöhen—to elevate
erholen (r)—recover, relax
* **erinnern** (v.t.)—to remind; (v.r.)—to remember
die **Erinnerung**—memory
erkaufen—to buy
* **erkennen, erkannte, hat erkannt** (v.t.)—to recognize; **erkennen lassen**—to make clear; **es läßt sich nicht erkennen**—one cannot tell
die **Erkenntnis** (-se)—knowledge; perception, realization
erklären (v.t.)—to explain, interpret; to declare, state
erkundigen (v.r.)—to inquire
erlauben (v.t.)—to permit
erläutern (v.t.)—to explain, comment
erleben (v.t.)—to experience
das **Erlebnis** (-sses, -sse)—occurrence, experience
erledigen (v.t.)—to deal with; settle
erlösen (v.t.)—to save, free, redeem; liberate
erniedrigen—to lower, humble
ernst (adj.)—earnest, serious
eröffnen (v.t.)—to open, to start; to disclose or make known
erregen (v.t.)—to excite, provoke
erreichen (v.t.)—to reach, attain
der **Ersatz** (-es)—substitute
ersaufen (i., aux.s.)—to drown
* **erscheinen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to seem, appear
die **Erscheinung** (-en)—phenomenon
erschlagen (past participle)—slain
erschließen (irr. v.i.)—to develop, infer
erschrecken (t. & i.)—to frighten
* **erst** (adj.)—first; (adv.)—not until, only; **eben erst**—just now
erstaunlich—astonishing
erstechen, erstach, hat erstochen—to stab
erstehen, erstand, ist erstanden (v.i.)—to arise, to result
erteilen (v.t.)—to give; impart
erwachsen, erwuchs, ist erwachsen (v.i.)—to grow up; to develop; to result; to arise
erwähnen (v.t.)—to mention
* **erwarten** (v.t.)—to expect, anticipate; await
erwecken—to wake
erweisen, erwies, hat erwiesen (v.t.)—to prove, establish; to show
erwerben, erwarb, erworben—to acquire
erwidern (v.t.)—to answer
erzählen (v.t.)—to tell, narrate
die **Erzählung** (-en)—story, tale
erzeugen (v.t.)—produce, beget
erziehen, erzog, hat erzogen (v.t.)—to bring up, educate
* **es**—it; **es gibt**—there is, there are
der **Esel** (-s, -)—donkey
* **essen, ißt, aß, hat gegessen**—to eat
die **Ethik** (-en)—ethics, moral philosophy
etlicher (m), etliche (f), etliches (n)—quite a few

* **etwa** (adv.)—approximately, perhaps; for instance
* **etwas** (pron.)—something; (adv.)—somewhat, a little
euer—your
das **Europa** (-s)—Europe
das **Euter** (-s, -)—udder
das **Evangelium** (-s)—gospel
** **eventuell** (adj.)—possible
ewig (adj.)—eternal; (adv.) — always
die **Ewigkeit**—eternity
das **Exemplar** (-s, -e)—copy (of a book), sample
existieren (i.)—to exist
der **Experte** (-n, -n)—expert
der **Expressionismus**—Expressionism
** **extra** (adj.)—extra; (adv.)—specially
die **Extrapost**—special delivery

F

** **das Fach** (-es, ¨er)—field, subject; division
-fach (suff.)—fold
das **Fachgebiet** (-s, -e)—specialty
das **Fachwort** (-s, ¨er)—technical term
die **Fachzeitschrift** (-en)—trade Journal
fähig (adj.)—able, capable
die **Fähigkeit** (-en)—ability
* **fahren, fährt, fuhr, ist gefahren** — to ride, drive, go
* der **Fall** (-es, ¨e)—case, instance, matter, affair; **auf jeden Fall**—in any case; fall, decline, ruin
* **fallen, fällt, fiel, ist gefallen**—to fall
fällen—to fell, chop down
das **Falsch**—error
fangen, fing, hat gefangen (v.t.) — to capture; (v.r.)—to get caught, to take hold
die **Farbe** (-n)—color
fassen (v.t.)—to grasp, seize, apprehend; include; understand
** die **Fassung** (-en)—draft, formulation; setting, frame; composure
* **fast**—almost, nearly
* **faul** (adj.)—lazy; rotten
die **Faulheit**—laziness
die **Feder** (-n)—feather, quill
* **fehlen** (v.i.)—to be missing or wanting; to be absent; **es fehlt ihm an**—he lacks
* der **Fehler** (-s, -)—fault, error
der **Feierabend** (-s, -e)—quitting time
feierlich—solemn, festive
der **Feiertag** (-s, -e)—holiday
fein (adj.)—fine, precise; acute
* der **Feind** (-es, -e)—enemy
die **Feindschaft**—animosity
das **Feld** (-es, -er)—field, area
felsig—rocky
das **Fenster** (-s, -)—window
* **fern** (adj.)—far, distant
fertig (adj.)—ready, finished
fest (adj. and adv.)—firm, solid; permanent
fest-stellen (v.t.)—to establish; to discover, to stress
fett—fat
feucht—damp
das **Feuer** (-s, -)—fire
der **Film** (-s, -e)—film, movie
* **finden, fand, hat gefunden** (v.t.) —to find; to think, to consider
finster (adj.)—dark, sinister; grim

der **Fisch** (-es, -e) — fish
der **Fischer** (-s, -) — fisherman
fix (adj.) — fixed, firm; quick
die **Fläche** (-n) — surface, area
flechten, flocht, hat geflochten — to weave
der **Fleck** (-es, -e and -en) — spot
das **Fleisch** (-es) — flesh, meat
der **Fleiß** (-sses) — diligence; **mit Fleiß** — intentionally
* **fleißig** — diligent
die **Fliege** (-n) — fly
fliegen, flog, ist geflogen — to fly
fliehen, floh, ist geflohen — to flee
fließen, floß, ist geflossen (v.i.) — to flow; **fließen aus** — to proceed or result from
fließend — flowing; fluent
der **Floh** (-es, ⸚e) — flea
der **Fluch** (-es, ⸚e) — curse
die **Flucht** (-en) — flight, escape
flüchtig — fleeting
flüssig (adj.) — flowing, fluid
die **Flut** (-en) — flood, flow
die **Folge** (-n) — sequence, series; consequence; **zur Folge haben** — to lead to
* **folgen** (v.i., aux.s.) — to follow, ensue; (aux.h.) — to obey, to listen to
folgend — following
folgerichtig (adj.) — consistent
der Folgeschluß (-sses, ⸚sse) — logical consequence
** **fordern** (v.t.) — to demand, challenge
** **fördern** (v.t.) — to further, promote
die **Formel** (-n) — formula
forschen (v.i.) — search, investigate, do research on
der **Forscher** — research worker, scholar
fort (adv.) — away, gone, forth
** **fort-fahren, fort-führen** — to go away; to continue
fort-gehen (i., aux.s.) — to go away
der **Fortschritt** (-s, -e) — progress
fort-setzen — to continue; **Fortsetzung folgt** — to be continued
fort-werfen — to throw away
* die **Frage** (-n) — question, problem, issue;
fragen (nach) — to ask about
die **Fraktur** — Gothic print
* **Frankreich** — France
der Franzose (-n, -n) — Frenchman
* die **Frau** (-en) — woman, Mrs.
* das **Fräulein** (-s, -s) — young woman, Miss
frei (adj.) — free, independent; die **freien Künste** — the liberal arts
* die **Freiheit** (-en) — freedom
die Freiheitsbewegung (-en) — freedom movement
freilich (adv.) — to be sure; indeed
fremd (adj.) — someone else's; strange; foreign
die **Fremde** — foreign country; **in der Fremde** — abroad
die **Fremdsprache** (-n) — foreign language
fressen — to eat like an animal
* die **Freude** (-n) — joy
* **freuen** (r) — to be pleased
der **Freund** (-es, -e) — friend
die **Freundschaft** (-en) — friendship
freveln (i.) — to violate, blaspheme
der **Friede** (-ns, -n) — peace
friedfertig — peaceable
friedlich — peaceful
frieren, fror, hat gefroren (i.) — to freeze
frisch (adj.) — fresh, bright

die **Frist** (-en)—period, deadline; extension
fröhlich —joyous
* die **Frucht** (¨-e)—fruit
fruchtbar (adj.)—fruitful, prolific
* **früh** (adj.)—early;
früher—former
der **Frühling**—spring
das **Frühstück** (-s)—breakfast
** **fügen** (v.t.)—to ordain; formulate; to add; (v.r.)—to comply; to be proper, to come to pass
* **fühlen** (v.t. & r.)—to perceive
* **führen** (v.t.)—to lead, direct
die **Fülle**—abundance, wealth
füllen—to fill
der **Fund** (-es, -e)—finding
fünf—five
* **für** (prep.) with acc.—for
die **Furcht**—fear (vor)—of
fürchten (v.t.)—to fear; (v.r.) —to be afraid
der **Fürst** (-en, -en)—prince; ruler
der **Fuß** (-es, ¨-e)—foot, base
die **Fußspur** (-en)—footprint
die **Fußnote**—footnote

G

die **Gabe** (-n)—gift
gackern (i.)—to cackle
der **Galgen** (-s, -)—gallows
** der **Gang** (-es, ¨-e)—motion; **im Gang bleiben**—to keep going; **in Gang setzen** or **bringen**—to set in motion; path, aisle, passage
die Gans (¨-e)—goose
* **ganz** (adj.)—whole, entire, complete; (adv.)—very, quite, entirely; **ganz anders**—quite different
gar (adv.)—entirely; even
gar nicht—not at all
der **Garten** (-s, ¨-)—garden
die **Gasse** (-n)—side street
der **Gast** (-es, ¨-e)—guest
der **Gaul** (-s, -e)—horse, nag
gebären, gebar, geboren (v.t.) —to bear, bring forth
das **Gebäude** (-s, -)—building, structure, framework
* **geben, gab, hat gegeben** (v.t.)—to give, impart, grant; **es gibt**—there is, there are; (v.r.)—to submit, yield, abate, to pass oneself off as
das **Gebet** (-s, -e)—prayer
das **Gebiet** (-es, -e)—district, territory, area; field
gebieten (irr. v.t.)—to demand (v.i.)—to govern, rule over
geboren (adj.)—born
das **Gebot** (-es, -e)—command
der **Gebrauch** (-es,¨-e)—use; custom
gebrauchen—to use
* die **Geburt** (-en)—birth
das **Gedächtnis** (-ses, -se)—memory
* der **Gedanke** (-ns, -n)—thought, conception, idea, notion
gedeihen, gedieh, ist gediehen (v.i.)—to develop; prosper
gedenken, gedachte, hat gedacht (v.i.)—to bear in mind; recall (with gen.)
das **Gedicht** (-es, -e)—poem
die **Geduld**—patience
geeignet (adj.)—suitable
die **Gefahr** (-en)—danger, risk
gefährlich—dangerous
* **gefallen, gefiel, hat gefallen** (v.i.)—to please; **es hat ihm gefallen**—it pleases him or he likes it
** **gefallen** (adj.)—killed in action
das **Gefängnis** (-sses, -sse)—prison

das **Gefühl** (-es, -e)—feeling, touch, instinct, intuitive grasp
* **gegen** (prep.) with acc.—towards; against; **gegen fünf Uhr**—around five o'clock
die **Gegend** (-en)—region, area, neighborhood
gegeneinander-stellen (v.t.)—to compare
der **Gegensatz** (-es, ⸚e)—antithesis; contrast
der **Gegenstand** (-s, ⸚e)—object, thing; subject (matter)
* **gegenüber** (prep.) with dat.—opposite, vis-à-vis; with regard to
* die **Gegenwart**—presence; the present (time);
gegenwärtig—present day
der **Gegner** (-s, -)—opponent
der **Gehalt** (-s, -e)—contents, capacity
geheim (adj.)—secret, confidential
der **Geheimrat** (-s, -e)—confident
* **gehen, ging, ist gegangen** (v.i.)—to go, walk, proceed; **in sich gehen**—to take stock of one's position; **es geht**—it is possible; **es geht um**—it is a matter of
* **gehören** (v.i.)—to belong to
gehörig (adj.)—belonging to; proper, requisite
gehorsam—obedient
die **Geiß**—goat
* der **Geist** (-es, -er)—spirit, wit, intellect, genius, essence, ghost
die **Geistesgeschichte**—history of ideas
geistig—spiritual, intellectual
geizig—avaricious, stingy
das **Gelände** (-s, no pl.)—tract of land, area, region
gelangen (v.i.)—to gain, acquire, reach, arrive at
* das **Geld** (es, -er)—money, capital
** **gelegen** (adj.)—situated, located; convenient, opportune
die **Gelegenheit** (-en)—opportunity
gelehrt—educated, scholarly
* **gelingen, gelang, ist gelungen** (v.i.)—to succeed, to be successful; **es gelingt ihr**—she succeeds
* **gelten, galt, hat gegolten** (v.i.)—to mean; be valid; count; **gelten für** or **als**—to be considered as; **das gilt nicht**—that is not allowed; (v.t.)—to be worth
gemäß (adj.)—appropriate; (prep.) with dat. according to
gemein (adj.)—common, general; low, vulgar, mean
die **Gemeinde** (-n)—community; municipality
gemeinhin (adv.)—generally
gemeinsam (adj.)—common
die **Gemeinschaft** (-en)—community
das **Gemüt** (-s, -er)—disposition, soul
gemütlich (adj.)—good-natured; agreeable; cosy, comfortable
genannt (adj.)—called
***genau** (adj.)—exact, precise, in detail; (adv.)—just, exactly, precisely; quite
genehmigen (v.t.)—to approve, to grant, authorize
geneigt (adj.)—inclined; willing
** **genial** (adj.)—gifted; brilliant
genießen, genoß, hat genossen (v.t.)—to enjoy
* **genug** (adv.)—enough

* **gerade** (adj.)—straight, direct, sincere; (adv.) —just, exactly, precisely
geradeaus (adv.)—straight ahead
geradezu (adv.)—immediately; virtually; frankly
das **Gerät** (-es, -e)—implement
geraten, geriet, ist geraten (v.i.)—to get, fall, land
gerecht (adj.) —just, fair
* die **Gerechtigkeit**—justice
das **Gericht** (-es, -e)—court of justice; law-court, judgement
gering (adj.)—small, petty
* **gern** (adv.)—with pleasure; **gern haben**—to like to
das **Gerücht** (-es, -e)—rumor
gesamt (adj.)—whole, entire
der **Gesang** (-s, ¨e)—song
das **Geschäft** (-es, -e)—business, trade, transaction; duty
die **Geschäftigkeit**—activity, industriousness
* **geschehen, geschah, ist geschehen** (v.i.)—to take place, happen, to occur; **es ist um uns geschehen**—we are doomed
das **Geschenk** (-s, -e)—gift
* die **Geschichte** (-en)—history, story
geschickt (adj.)—skillful
das **Geschlecht** (-es, -er)—sex, species, race, generation
geschlossen (adj.)—closed, united; unified
der **Geschmack** (-es, ¨er)—taste
das **Geschöpf** (-s, -e)—creature
das **Geschrei** (-s)—cry, scream
das **Geschwätz** (-es)—chatter
** **geschweige (denn)**—not to mention
gesegnet—blessed
gesellen (v.t.)—to join, ally
* die **Gesellschaft** (-en)—society, community
das **Gesetz** (-es, -e)—law, act, decree, principle
gesetzt (adj.)—fixed, established (conj.)—granted, supposing
* das **Gesicht** (-s, -er)—face, countenance, appearance
der **Gesichtspunkt** (-en)—viewpoint
die **Gesinnung** (-en)—disposition
gespannt (adj.)—strained; tense; **gespannt sein**—to be in suspense
das **Gespenst** (-es, -er)—ghost
das **Gespräch** (-es, -e)—conversation, discourse; discussion
die **Gestalt** (-en)—form, shape, figure; manner; character
das **Geständnis** (-ses, -se) —admission, confession
gestatten (v.t.)—to permit, allow
gestehen, gestand, hat gestanden (v.t.)—to confess
* **gestern** (adv.)—yesterday
gestohlen—stolen
* **gesund** (adj.)—healthy
die **Gesundheit**—health
das **Getränk** (-es, -e)—drink
gewähren (v.t.)—to grant, give
die **Gewalt** (-en)—power, authority, control, violence; force
das **Gewerbe** (-s, -)—trade, profession
* **gewesen**—been (see **sein**)
das **Gewicht** (-es, -e)—weight; gravity, importance
gewinnen, gewann, hat gewonnen (v.t.)—to win, gain, get
* **gewiß** (or **gewiss**) (adj.)—sure, certain; (adv.)—certainly, to be sure
das **Gewissen** (-s, -)—conscience

gewissermaßen (adv.)—to some extent
gewöhnen (v.t.)—to accustom; (v.r.)—to become accustomed (an) to
die **Gewohnheit** (-en)—habit, custom
* **gewöhnlich** - usual (adj.); usually (adv.)
das **Gift** (-es, -e)— poison, toxin
glänzen (v.t.)—to glisten, shine, to excel, to be outstanding
gläsern—glass
glatt (adj.)—smooth, even, flat; plain, clear; (adv.)—quite
der **Glaube** (-ns, -n)—faith, belief
* **glauben** (t. & i.)—to believe
• **gleich** (adj.)—same, like, equal; (adv.)—just; immediately, at once
* **gleichen** (v.i.)—to resemble, equal
das **Gleichgewicht** (-s, -e)—balance
gleichgültig—indifferent
das **Gleichnis** (-ses, -se)—image, simile, allegory, parable, metaphor
gleichviel (adv.)—nonetheless
gleichwohl (adv.)—nevertheless, yet
gleichzeitig (adj.)—simultaneous
die **Glocke** (-n)—bell, chime
das **Glück** (-es)—happiness, fortune, luck
glücken (v.i., aux.s.)—to succeed
• **glücklich**—happy, lucky
die **Gnade**—grace, mercy
gönnen (v.t.)—to grant
die **Gotik**—Gothic
• der **Gott** (-es, ¨er)—God, god
das **Götterbild** (-s, -er)—idol
die **Gottheit**—divinity; godhead
göttlich (adj.)—divine
gottlos—godless
der **Götze** (-n, -n)—idol

das **Grab** (-es, ¨er)—grave, tomb; end
graben, grub, hat gegraben (v.t.)—to dig, excavate
der **Grad** (-es, -e)—degree; extent
der **Graf** (-en, -en)—count
grau—grey
grausam (adj.)—cruel; dreadful
greifbar (adj.)—ready, on hand; tangible, obvious
greifen, griff, hat gegriffen (v.t.)—to seize, grasp; (v.i.)—to touch; be effective
die **Grenze** (-n)—boundary, limit, border
der **Grieche** (-n, -n)—Greek
das **Griechentum** (-s) —Hellenism
griechisch—Greek
grob (adj.)—rough, crude, coarse
* **groß** (adj.)—tall, high; large, great, immense; eminent
großartig (adj.)—great, grand, splendid
die **Größe**—height; stature
großenteils (adv.)—mainly, mostly
größtenteils (adv.)—mostly
der **Großvater** (-s, ¨)—grandfather
die **Grünanlage** (-n)—green area
* der **Grund** (-es, ¨e)—foundation, basis; ground, earth; land **im Grunde**—fundamentally; reason, cause; **aus diesem Grunde**—for this reason;
der **Grundbegriff** (-s, -e)—fundamental concept
gründen (v.t.)—to establish, set up; base; (v.r.)—rest, rely, be based on
die **Grundlage** (-n)—foundation
der **Grundsatz** (-es, ¨e)—principle
der **Grundzug** (-s, ¨e)—essential feature or characteristic

die **Gruppe** (-n)—group, category
der **Gruß** (-es, ¨-e)—greeting
grüßen (v.t.) —to greet
gültig (adj.)—valid, effective
der **Gummi** (-s)—rubber
die **Gunst**—favor; advantage
* **gut** (adj.—good; (adv.)—well
das **Gut** (-es, ¨-er)—property, possession, estate; good thing
die **Güte**—kindness, goodness
das **Gute**—good (thing or part)
die **Gutheißung**—approval
gutherzig—good-natured

H

das **Haar** (-s, -e)—hair
die **Habe**—property, goods
* **haben, hatte, hat gehabt** (v.t.)—to have
der **Hafen** (-s, -)—harbor; haven
* **haft** (suff.)—designates a type or quality; **wesenhaft**—essential
der **Hahn** (-s, ¨-e)—rooster
halb (adj.)—half; (adv.)—by halves
-halber (suff.)—on account of
halbstark—rowdy
die **Hälfte**—half
der **Hals** (-es, ¨-e)—neck, throat
* **halten, hielt, hat gehalten** (v.t.)—to hold, keep, retain; to think, deem, consider; (v.i.)—to stop, hold out; (v.r.)—to hold out, last; behave; follow; adhere to
die **Haltung**—bearing, attitude; behavior; position
das **Hammelfleisch**—mutton
die **Hand** (¨-e)—hand; handwriting; side; source; **mit der Hand**—by hand
der **Handel** (-s, -)—trade, transaction; deal; action
* **handeln** (v.i.)—to act; to bargain (um) for; (v.r.)—**es handelt sich um**—it is a question or matter of
die **Handlung**—action, deed; plot
hängen—to hang; caught
hart (adj.)—hard, difficult, troublesome; (adv.)—hard; (an)—close by
die **Härte**—harshness, severity
hartnäckig—stubborn; persistent
der **Hase** (-n, -n)—rabbit
* der **Haß** (or **Hass**) (-sses)—hatred:
hassen—to hate
häßlich (adj.)—ugly, hideous, repulsive; nasty
die **Haßliebe**—love-hate relationship
die **Hast**—haste, hurry
der **Hauch** (-es, -e)—breath; tinge. trace; aura
häufig (adj.)—frequent; (adv.)—frequently, often
* das **Haupt** (-es, ¨-er)—head, leader, chief, principal
die **Hauptabsicht** (-en)—main object
die **Hauptfigur** (-en)—main or central figure
die **Hauptsache** (-en)—main point or issue
die **Hauptstadt** (¨-e)—capital
das **Haus** (-es, ¨-er)—house
häuslich (adj.)—domestic
die **Hausmacht** (¨-e)—power base
die **Haut**—skin
heben, hob, hat gehoben (v.t.)—to lift; accentuate; (v.r.)—to improve
der **Hebräer**—Hebrew
das **Heer** (-es, -e)—army

** das **Heft** (-es, -e) — paperback book, pamphlet, brochure; handle
heftig (adj.) — violent, severe
heil (adj.) — whole, uninjured
das **Heil**—well-being, welfare, salvation
heilen—to heal
heilig (adj.) — holy, sacred
heim—home
die **Heimat** (-en) — home, native country
heimlich (adj.) — secret, hidden
heim-suchen (v.t.) — to afflict
der **Heimweg** (-s, -e) — way home
die **Heirat** (-en) — marriage
• **heiß** (adj.) — hot, ardent
• **heißen, hieß, hat geheißen** (v.t.) — to name, call; to command; (v.i.) — to be called; **es heißt, daß**— it is said that
heiter (adj.) — cheerful, clear
heizen (v.t.) — to heat
das **Heizöl**—heating oil
der **Held (-en, -en)—**hero
die **Heldendichtung**—heroic or epic poetry
• **helfen, half, hat geholfen** (v.i.) — to help, aid, support
hell (adj.) — clear, bright; light; **hellichter Tag** —broad daylight
henken—to hang
• **her** (adv.) — here, this way; **hin und her**—to and fro; **von weit her**— from afar; (time) — since, ago; **wie lange ist es her**—how long ago is it
herab (pref.) — movement downwards
herab-fallen (i., aux.s.) — to fall down
herab-schreien—to call down
herab-setzen (v.t.) — to lower, to reduce
herab-steigen (i., aux.s.) — to climb down, dismount
heran (adv. and pref.) — movement into the proximity of the speaker; near
heran-kommen (v.i.) — to draw or come near
** **heran-ziehen** (v.t.) — to draw near; to procure; to quote; to enlist; to attract; to raise, bring up; (v.i.) to approach, draw near
heraus (adv. and pref.) — movement from inside a place as seen by the person outside; out; forth
heraus-finden (v.t.) — to find out, to discover; (v.r.) — to extricate oneself
die **Herausforderung**—challenge, provocation
der **Herausgeber** (-s, -) — editor
heraus-holen (v.t.) — to get or take or draw out, to extract; to elicit; to gain
heraus-nehmen (v.t.) — to take out, to remove; (v.r.) — to presume
heraus-stellen (v.t.) — to expose, to set forth; (v.r.) — to appear, to turn out
herbei (adv., sep. pref.) — indicates a movement from a remoter place to a nearer one; near, here
herbei-führen (v.t.) — to bring about or produce
der **Herbst** (-es, -e) — autumn
die **Herde** (-n) — flock, herd; crowd
herein (adv. and pref.) — indicates movement into a place as seen by a person inside; in, in here
her-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) — to come here, to approach
das **Herkommen** (-s) — origin, extraction

die **Herkunft** (¨-e)—origin or descent; derivation (of a word)
* der **Herr** (-n, -en)—master, lord, God, ruler, gentleman, Mr.
der **Herrenhund** (-s, -e)—aristocrat's dog
herrlich (adj.)—magnificent
die **Herrschaft** (-en)—dominion, power; command, domination; manor; master and mistress
herrschen (v. & i.)—to rule, reign, prevail, be in vogue; dominate
der **Herrscher** (-s, -)—ruler, governor
her-stellen (v.t.)—to set up, establish, create; place here
herum (adv. and pref.)—indicates a movement around, or an approximate time or amount
herum-gehen (i. aux.s.)—to go around, associate
herunter-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to deteriorate, decay; to come down(stairs); to get over
hervor-bringen (irr. v.t.)—to bring forth, produce; utter
hervorragend (adj.)—prominent, protruding, outstanding
hervor-treten (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to come forward; stand out; to become evident; emerge from
* das **Herz** (-ens, -en)—heart, feeling, soul
das **Herzeleid**—suffering
herzlich (adj.)—hearty, cordial
der **Herzog** (-es, -e or -e)—duke
die **Heuchelei** (-en)—hypocrisy
* **heute** (adv.)—today; **heute abend**—this evening; **heute früh**—this morning
* **hier** (adv.)—here, present; on this occasion; now
hierher—to this place; **bis hierher** – up to now, so far
* der **Himmel** (-s, -)—heaven, sky
das **Himmelreich**—kingdom of heaven
* **hin** (adv.)—expresses motion away from the speaker; expresses duration of time into the future;
hin und her —to and fro; **hin und wieder** — now and then
hinab (adv. and pref.)—down
hinab-fallen (i., aux.s.)—to fall off
hinan-steigen (i., aux.s.)—to climb (up)
hinauf (adv. and pref.)—up
hinaus (adv. and pref.)—outside, forth
hinaus-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) —to surpass; to go out; **hinaus-gehen auf**—to aim at **hinaus-kommen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to come out; to go beyond; **hinauskommen auf** (acc.)—to come or amount to
hindern—to hinder
hinein (adv. and pref.)—into
hinein-passen (v. i.)—to fit in
hin-geben (irr. v.t.)—to give **up**, surrender, sacrifice
hin-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—**to** go to that place; to elapse, to pass
hinken (v. i.)—to limp
hinsichtlich (prep.)—with regard to, concerning
hinten (adv.)—behind
* **hinter** (prep, and pref.) with dat. or acc.—behind; after
hintereinander (adv.)—one after the other, in succession

der **Hintergrund** (-s, ¨-e) —background; (pl.) hidden difficulties
hinterlassen (irr. v.t.)—to leave, to leave behind, to bequeath
hinüber (adv., pref.)—over there, across, beyond
hinüber-laufen (i., aux.s.)—to walk past
hinweg (adv., pref.)—away, off
hin-weisen (irr. v.i.)—to point to, indicate; point out, allude to
hinzu (adv., pref.)—to, towards, besides, in addition
hinzu-fügen (v.t.)—to add, append; to enclose
der **Historiker** (-s, -)—historian
die **Hitze** (-n)—heat, ardor
• **hoch** (adj.)—high, tall, lofty, sublime; **hoher Genuß**—great enjoyment; (adv.)—highly
die **Hochachtung**—high esteem, admiration; deep respect
hochachtungsvoll—respectfully
hochgestellt (adj.)—high-ranking
der **Hochmut**—pride, arrogance
höchst (sup. adj.)—highest, utmost; (adv.)—extremely
die **Hochzeit** (-en)—wedding
hoffen (v.i.)—to hope (auf) for
die **Hoffnung** (-en)—hope, anticipation
höflich (adj.)—polite
die **Höhe**—height, loftiness, summit, level or price or volume, musical pitch
der **Höhepunkt** (-s, -e)—highest or culminating point, peak, climax
holen (v.t.)—to get, fetch;
holen lassen—to send for
die **Hölle**—hell
das **Holz** (-es, ¨-er)—wood
der **Holzapfel** (-s, ¨-)—crab apple
horchen (v.i.)—to listen (auf) to
* **hören** (v.t., v.i.)—to hear, to listen;
hören auf— to listen to, heed, obey
das **Hörensagen**—hearsay
das **Horn** (-s, ¨-er)—hörn
das **Hosenbein** (-s, -e)—pant leg
das **Hufeisen** (-s, -e)—horse shoe
das **Huhn** (-s, ¨-er)—hen, fowl
huldigen (v.i.)—to do homage
** **human** (adj.)—humane
der **Humanismus**—Humanism
der **Hund** (-es, -e)—dog
hundertjährig (adj.)—centenary
hundertprozentig (adj. and adv.)—hundred per cent; completely
der **Hunger**—hunger
das **Husten** (-s, -)—coughing
** der **Hut** (-es, ¨-e)—hat, cover, lid
** die **Hut**—protection, shelter; **auf der Hut sein**—to be on guard
hüten (v.t.)—to guard, take care of; (v.r.)—to watch out (vor) for
die **Hütte** (-n)—hut, cottage
die **Hypothese** (-n)—hypothesis

I

* **ich**—I; Ich—self, ego
die **Idee** (-n)—idea, notion; **fixe Idee**—obsession
die **Iden**—Ides
der **Ideologe** (-n, -n)—ideologist
* **ihr**—you, to her, her, their (its, when referring to a feminine noun)
* **immer** (adv.)—always, constantly; **noch immer**—even now; **immer wieder**—again and again; immer & comparative is an intensifier—

immer mehr—more and more; **immer höher**—higher and higher; (part.) in any case, after all; **er ist doch immerhin dein Bruder**—after all, he is your brother
imponieren (v.i.)—to be impressive or imposing
imstande (pred. adj.)—capable of
* **in** (prep.)—with dat. or acc. —in, into
der **Inbegriff**—perfect example
* **indem** (conj.)—as, while; by
der **Inder** (-s, -)—Hindu, Indian
indessen—meanwhile
das **Indien**—India
infolge (prep.) with gen.—as a result of; owing to
* der **Inhalt** (-s, -e)—contents, capacity, volume; subject, substance, gist
das **Inhaltsverzeichnis**—index
das **Inland** (-s)—inland; native country
inne (adv. pref.)—within
innehalten (tr. v.i.)—to pause; to stop
innen (within)—within
inner (adj.)—inner, ulterior, domestic, spiritual
innerhalb (adv., prep.)—within
innerlich (adj.)—mental, spiritual
innig (adj.)—hearty
der **Insasse** (-n, -n)—inmate
insbesondere (adv.)—in particular
die **Insel** (-n)—island
insofern (adv. and conj.)—(in) so far as; if
** die **Instanz** (-en)—authority
das **Interesse** (-s, -n)—interest
interessieren (v.t.)—to interest (für)—in; (v.r.)—to be interested
intim (adj.)—intimate
inzwischen (adv.)—meanwhile
der **Ire** (-n, -n)—Irishman
* **irgend** (adv.)—any, some; **irgendein**—someone, anyone; **irgendwann**—at some point; **irgendwo**—somewhere or another
ironisch—ironic
irr(e) (adj.)—in error; crazy
irre-gehen (i., aux.s.)—to go astray
irren (v.i.)—to go astray, to err, (v.r.)—to be mistaken
der **Irrtum** (-s, ¨er)—error
* das **Italien**—Italy

J

* **ja** (adv., part.)—yes; indeed, certainly, of course, after all
ja sagen—to affirm, say yes
jagen (v.t.)—to hunt, chase, pursue
* das **Jahr** (-es, -e)—year; **nach Jahren**—after many years; **seit Jahren**—for years; **vor einem Jahr**—a year ago
der **Jahrgang**—age-group, year of publication
* das **Jahrhundert** (-es, -e)—century
der **Jammer** (-s)—misery
* **je** (adv., conj.)—ever, at any time; **je nach** — according to; **je ... desto**—the ... the
* **jede** (adj.)—each, every; (pron.) each, everyone
jedenfalls (adv.)—in any case
jedesmal (adv.)—each or every time
jedoch (adv.)—however, still
* **jemand** (pron.)—someone
jene (adj.)—that, those; (pron.) that one, those people
jener—that, that one, the former

jenseits (prep.) with gen.—on the other side of

• **jetzt** (adv.)—now, at present; **für jetzt**—for the present

jeweilig (adj.)—at the moment, respective; or jeweils (adv.)—at times, from time to time

der **Jude** (-n, -n)—Jew

die **Jugend**—youth, young people

• **jung** (adj.)—young, new, recent

der **Junge** (-n, -n)—boy, youth

der **Jünger** (-s, -)—disciple, follower

die **Jungfrau** (-en)—virgin, maiden

•• **jüngst** (sup. adj.)—youngest, latest, (adv.) — recently, lately

Jura (no article)—law

K

kahl (adj.)—bald; bare, naked, empty; bleak

der **Kaiser** (-s, -)—emperor

kaiserlich (adj.)—imperial

das **Kalb** (-es, ¨er)—calf

der **Kalender** (-s, -)—calender

kalt —cold

das **Kamel** (-s, -e)—camel

der **Kamerad** (-en, -en)—companion, colleague, comrade

der **Kamin** (-s, -e)—fireplace

der **Kampf** (-es, ¨e)—battle, fight, struggle, contest

kämpfen (t. & i.)—to fight

die **Kanone** (-n)—cannon

die **Kanzlei** (-en)—chancellery

die **Kapelle** (-n)—chapel

das **Kapitel** (-s, -)—chapter; topic; period

die **Kappe** (-n)—cap

karg (adj.)—scanty, stingy, sparse

die **Karikatur** (-en)—caricature

Karl der Große—Charlemagne

die **Karriere** (-n)—career

die **Karte** (-n)—card, map, chart, ticket

die **Kartoffel** (-n)—potato

der **Kasten** (-s, -)—box, chest

die **Kathedrale** (-n)—cathedral

die **Katze** (-n)—cat

der **Kauf** (-s, -e)—purchase

kaufen (v.t.)—to buy, purchase

kaum (adv.)—hardly, scarcely

kehren (v.t.)—to turn (over); (v.r.)—to heed; (v.i.)—**in sich kehren**—to be lost in thought, meditate

der **Keim** (-es, -e)—germ, seed, origin

* **kein** (adj.)—no, not a; (pron.) — **keiner**—no one

keinesfalls, keineswegs (adv.)—by no means; under no circumstances

keinmal—no time

der **Kellner** (-s, -)—waiter

* **kennen, kannte, hat gekannt** (v.t.)—to know, be acquainted with, to understand

kennen-lernen (v.t.)—to become acquainted with

die **Kenntnis** (-se)—knowledge, cognizance, awareness

das **Kennzeichen** (-s)—distinguishing marks or features

der **Kern** (-es, -e)—kernel, core

die **Kernforschung**—nuclear science

die **Kernfrage**—central issue

die **Kette** (-n)—chain, series

der **Ketzer** (-s, -)—heretic

der **Kieselstein** (-s, -e)—pebble

das **Kind** (-es, -er)—child
kindisch (adj.)—childish
kindlich (adj.)—child-like
die **Kirche** (-n)—church
die **Kirchenglocke** (-n)—church bell
die **Kirchenlehre** (-n)—church doctrine
die **Kirchenmaus** (¨-e)—church mouse
der **Kirchhof** (¨-e)—churchyard, graveyard
kirchlich (adj.)—ecclesiastical, religious
die **Klage** (-n)—complaint,lament; action, suit
klagen—to complain; to sue; to wail
der **Klang** (-es, ¨-e)—sound
* **klar** (adj.)—clear, plain; **an sich klar**—self-evident
die **Klassenlage**—class position
die **Klassik**—classical period
die **Klaue** (-n)—claw
das **Kleid** (-es, -er)—dress, clothes
* **klein** (adj.)—little, small, tiny, short (size), insignificant, petty; exact; **die kleinen Leute** — the lower middle-class, the common people; (adv.) **klein denken** —to have narrow views; **im Kleinen**—on a small scale, in detail
der **Kleriker** (-s, -) —cleric, priest, clergyman
klingeln (i.)—to ring, chime
die **Klinke** (-n)—latch
die **Kluft** (¨-e)—crevice, crack, chasm
klug (adj.)—clever, intelligent
der **Knabe** (-n, -n)—lad, boy
knapp (adj.)—narrow; scant(y), scarce; accurate; (adv.)—barely, only just
knirschen (i.)—gnash
der **Koch** (-es,¨-e)—cook
kochen—to cook
der **Kohl**—cabbage
** die **Kombination**—surmise, inference; combination; scheme
komisch—funny
* **kommen, kam, ist gekommen** (v.i.)—to come, arrive, approach, occur, happen, arise; **mir kam der Gedanke**— it occured to me; **hinter die Wahrheit kommen**—to discover the truth; **kommen über** (acc)—to fall upon, to befall; **ums Leben kommen**—to die; **zu sich kommen**—to recover one's senses
die **Komödie**—comedy
komponieren (v.t.)—to compose
der **König** (-s, -e)—king
das **Königreich**—kingdom
** die **Konjunktur** (-en)—economy
** der **Konkurrent** (-en, -en) —competitor, rival
** **konkurrieren** (v.i.)—to compete
* **können** (modal)—to be able to; to be allowed to; **er kann nichts dafür**—he can't help it
** **konsequent** (adj.)—consistent
** **konstatieren** (v.t.)—to see, notice
konstruieren (v.t.)—to construct, design; **der konstruierte Fall**—hypothetical case
** der **Konvent** (-es, -e)—gathering, convention
** das **Konzept** (-es, -e)—draft; (pl.) notes
* der **Kopf** (-es, ¨-e)—head; top; heading; ability, sense
das **Kopfweh** (-s)—headache
der **Körper** (-s, -)—body; bulk; substance

kosten (v.t.)—to taste, enjoy; (v.i.)—to cost; require
köstlich (adj.)—exquisite, wonderful; priceless
• die **Kraft** (⸚e)—strength, power, force; energy, validity; **außer Kraft setzen**—to annul; **in Kraft treten**—to become effective
kraft (prep.) with gen.—by virtue of, on the strength of
die **Krähe** (-n)—crow
der **Krämer** (-s, -)—merchant
krank (adj.)—ill, sick, ailing
kränken (v.t.)—to offend
der **Kreis** (-es, -e)—circle, district, sphere
das **Kreuz** (-es, -e)—cross, crucifix, burden
• der **Krieg** (-es, -e)—war, warfare
kriegen—to get
die **Krankheit** (-en)—illness
der **Kranz** (-es, ⸚e)—wreath
die **Krise** (-n)—crisis, turning-point
die **Kritik** (-en)—criticism, review, critique
der **Kritiker** (-s, -)—critic
die **Krone** (-n)—crown
die **Krücke** (-n)—crutch
der **Krug** (-es, ⸚e)—jug
krumm (adj.)—crooked
die **Küche** (-n)—kitchen
die **Kuh** (⸚e)—cow
kühl— cool
kühn (adj.)—bold, brave, daring
die **Kultur** (-en)—culture, civilization
der **Kulturfilm**—documentary
kulturgeschichtlich (adj.)—referring to the history of civilization
kümmern (v.t.)—trouble; concern, worry; (v.r.)—to mind, to take care of, to worry (um) about
** **die Kunde** (-n)—information, news
** **der Kunde** (-n, -n)—customer, client
kundig (adj.)—versed, skilled, expert
künftig (adj.)—future, next
* die **Kunst** (⸚e)—art, skill; **die schönen Künste**—the fine arts
künstlerisch (adj.)—artistic
künstlich—artificial, synthetic
der **Kurs** (-es, ⸚e)—course; exchange rate
* **kurz** (adj., adv.)—short, brief, curt; **kurz und bündig**—briefly, concisely; **in kurzem**—soon, shortly; **seit kurzem**—lately, of late
kürzen (v.t.)—to shorten, condense
die **Kurzgeschichte** (-n)—short story
kürzlich (adv.)—lately, recently
küssen—to kiss
die **Küste** (-n)—coast, seashore

L

lächeln (v.i.)—to smile (über) at
* **lachen** (v.i.)—to laugh (über) at
lächerlich (adj.)—laughable, ridiculous, absurd
laden, lud, hat geladen (v.t.)—to load; to invite
die **Lage** (-n)—situation, position, site; outlook, circumstances; covering
der **Laib** (-es, -e) —loaf
der **Laie** (-n, -n)—layman, novice
* das **Land** (-es, ⸚er)—land, country, region, territory
die **Landschaft** (-en)—landscape, scenery, countryside

* **lang** (adj.)—long, tall, high; (adv.)—for, during; **vier Jahre lang**—for 4 years; **sein Leben lang**—all his life
* **lange** (adv.)—for a long time
die **Länge**—length; size; height
langen (v.i.)—to be sufficient; **langen nach**—to reach for
die **Langeweile**—boredom
* **langsam** (adj.)—slow
längst (adv.)—long ago; **längst nichts**—not by a long way
der **Lärm** (-s)—noise, din, uproar
* **lassen, ließ, hat gelassen** (v.t.)—to leave; let go; let (do), allow, permit; make (do), cause (to do), have (done); **sich lassen**—can be; **das läßt sich sagen**—that can be said
die **Last** (-en)—load, burden
das **Laster** (-s, -)—vice
das **Latein**—Latin
lauern (v.i.)—to lurk
der **Lauf** (-es, ¨-e)—run, circulation; course
* **laufen, lief, ist gelaufen** (v.i.) —to run, walk, work, extend, elapse; be in progress
laufend (adj.)—current, running, steady, consecutive
die **Laune**—mood; whim
die **Laus** (¨-e)—louse
laut (adj.)—loud; (adv.)—aloud; **laut werden**—to become public
** **laut** (prep.)—with gen. or dat. —according to
lauten (v.i.)—to sound; to be; to read; to go
* **lauter** (adj.)—clear, pure; (adv.) —nothing but
* **leben** (v.t.)—to live, exist, dwell, stay

das **Leben** (-s, -)—life, existence
lebendig (adj.)—living, animate, alive, lively
die **Lebensaufgabe** (-n)—life's task
die **Lebensgeschichte**—life history, story
der **Lebenslauf**—career, vitae
das **Lebensmittel**—food
lebhaft—lively, vivacious; vivid
leer (adj.)—empty, vacant
* **legen** (v.t.)—to lay, put, place; (v.r.)—to lie down, cease, die
legitim (adj.)—legitimate
die **Lehre** (-n)—doctrine, teaching
lehren—to teach
der **Lehrer** (-s, -)—teacher
der **Lehrsatz** (-es, ¨-e)—thesis, doctrine
der **Leib** (-es, -er)—body
* **leicht** (adj.)—easy, effortless; light; insignificant; (adv.) —easily; lightly
leichtfertig (adj.)—careless, irresponsible
leid—es tut mir leid—I am sorry
das **Leid** (-es)—suffering
leiden, litt, hat gelitten (v.t.) —to suffer, bear, tolerate; to allow, admit; **ich kann sie nicht leiden** —I can't stand her; (v.i.)
—**leiden (unter)**—to be afflicted (with)
die **Leidenschaft** (-en)—passion
leider (adv.)—unfortunately
leise (adj.)—low, soft, gentle
leisten (v.t.)—to do; accomplish
die **Leistung** (-en)—achievement
leiten (v.t.)—to lead
der **Leiter** (-s, -)—leader, conductor
die **Leiter** (-n) —ladder
lenken (v.t.)—to turn, guide, direct

* **lernen** (v.t.)—to learn, study
* **lesen, las, hat gelesen** (v.t. & v.i.)—to read; to lecture
* **letzt** (adj.)—last, final, extreme
letztens (adv.)—recently
leuchten (v.i.)—to shine, illuminate
* die **Leute** (pl.)—people, folk, public
das **Licht** (-es, -er)—light; genius
lieb (adj.)—dear; (when used as a pred.)—agreeable; **es ist ihr lieb**—she is glad ...; **der liebe Gott**—God (Almighty)
die **Liebe** (-n)—love, fondness
* **lieben**—to love
* **lieber** (adv. comp. of gern) —rather, preferably; sooner; better
liebevoll—affectionate
die **Lieblingsmeinung (-en)** —favorite opinion
das **Lied** (-es, -er)—song, poem, tune
liefern (v.t.)—to deliver; to supply; to yield
* **liegen, lag, hat gelegen** (v.i.)—to lie, be located, to be; **liegen (an)** —to be due to, to depend on
liieren (v.t.)—to bring together
lind—gentle
lindern (v.t.)—to mitigate, soften
die **Linie** (-n)—line; **in erster Linie**—in the first place
* **links** (adv.)—to the left;
linksgerichtet (adj.)—leftist
** die **List** (-en)—cunning, craft
die **Liste** (-n)—list, catalogue
die **Literatur** (-en)—literature, bibliography
das **Lob** (-es)—praise
loben (v.t.)—to praise
das **Loch** (-es, ¨er)—hole, gap
locken (v.t.)—to entice
der **Logiker** (-s, -)—logician
lohnen (v.t. & v.i.)—to reward, to be worth
los (pred. adj., adv.)—loose, free, disengaged; **was ist los**—what's the matter?
los- (pref.)—separation; commencement, violence
-los (suff.)—less; **hilflos**—helpless
löschen—to extinguish
** **lösen** (v.t.)—to release; to solve, answer; to loosen; to cancel
los-lassen (irr. v.t.)—to set free
** **die Lösung** (-en)—solution; denouement; cancellation
der **Löwe** (-n, -n)—lion
die **Lücke** (-n)—gap
* die **Luft** (¨e)—air, breeze
die **Lüge** (-n)—lie, fib
* **lügen, log, hat gelogen** (v.i.)—to lie, to fib
der **Lügner** (-s, -)—liar
lukullisch (adj.)—epicurean
die **Lust**—pleasure, desire
die **Lyrik**—lyric poetry

M

* **machen** (v.t.)—to make, do; produce, form; cause; **das macht nichts**—that's all right; (v.r.)—to come about, happen; es **läßt sich nichts machen**—it cannot be done; **sich auf den Weg machen**—to set out
* die **Macht** (¨e)—might, authority
mächtig—powerful
die **Machtpolitik**—power politics
das **Mädchen** (-s, -)—girl
Magen (-s, -, or ¨)—stomach

mager—thin, lean
der **Magistrat** (-es, -e)—town or city or municipal council
das **Mahl** (-s, -er)—meal
mahnen (v.t.)—to remind, warn, admonish, urge
* das **Mal** (-es, -e)—time, occasion; **zum ersten Mal**—for the first time
* **-mal** (suf.)—**einmal**—once; **dreimal**—three times; **manchmal**—sometimes
malen (v.t.)—to paint, portray
* **man** (pron., always nom.)—one, someone
manch (adj.)—many a;
* **manche**—some
* **manchmal** (adv.)—sometimes
der **Mangel** (-s, ¨)—lack, need
mangeln (v.t.)—to want, to be deficient
* der **Mann** (-es, ¨er)—man, husband
mannigfach or **mannigfaltig** (adj.)—diverse, manifold
der **Mantel** (-s, ¨)—coat
die **Mappe** (-n)—briefcase, file
der **Markt** (-s, ¨e)—market
März—March
das **Maß** (-es, -e)—measure, extent; **in hohem Maße**— in a high degree
die **Masse** (-n)—mass, heap; the masses, the people; substance
die **Massenbeeinflussung**—propaganda
maßgebend (adj.)—decisive, authoritative
mäßig (adj.)—moderate; mediocre
-mäßig (suff.)—like (having the quality of); -wise
die **Maßnahme** (-n)—measure, action
der **Maßstab** (¨e)—standard; measure; scale
der **Mast** (-es, -e & **-en)**—mast
matt (adj.)—faint, weak, dull
die **Mauer** (-n)—wall
die **Maus** (¨e)—mouse
die **Medien**—media
die **Medizin** (-en)—medicine
das **Meer** (-es, -e)—ocean
* **mehr** (adv.)—more; **nicht mehr**—no longer; **nichts mehr** —nothing more
* **mehrere** (adj., pron.)—several
mehrfach (adj.)—multiple, numerous
meiden—to avoid
* **mein**—my
meinen (v.i.)—to believe, think
* die **Meinung** (-en)—opinion, view
* **meist** (sup. adj.)—most; die **meisten** the majority of them;
* **meistens** (adv.)—mostly, generally
der **Meister** (-s, -)—master
das **Meisterstück** (-es, -e) —masterpiece
melden (v.t., v.i.)—to announce; to recount, to tell; (v.r.)—to announce oneself, to register
die **Menge** (-n)—quantity, multitude, crowd
* der **Mensch** (-en, -en)—person, human being; (pl.)—people, mankind
das **Menschenalter**—generation
der **Menschenfreund**—philanthropist
die **Menschenkunde**—anthropology
die **Menschenmenge**—crowd
die **Menschheit**—humanity

menschlich (adj.)—human, humane

* **merken** (v.t.)—to observe, realize, feel, perceive; (v.i.)—**merken** (auf)—to pay attention (to)

das **Merkmal** (-s, -e)—sign, characteristic; indication

merkwürdig (adj.)—odd, curious

messen, maß, hat gemessen (v.t.)—to measure

die **Miene**—countenance, expression

das **Messer** (-s, -)—knife

mildern (v.t.)—to soften, ease

minder (adj. & adv.)—less

mindern (v.t. & v.r.)—to diminish

mindest (adj. & adv.)—least; **mindestens**—at least (adv.)

mischen (v.t., v.r.)—to mix, mingle

die **Mischung**—mixture

die **Misere** (-n)—plight, misery

miß- (or **miss**) (pref.)—mis, dis, bad

der **Mißbrauch** (-s, ¨-e)—misuse; abuse

der Mißerfolg (-s, -e)—failure

das **Mißgeschick** (-es, -e)—misfortune

mißglücken (v.i.)—to fail

das **Mißverständnis** (-ses, -se)—discrepancy

mißlungen—unsuccessful

mißverständlich—misleading

mißverstehen (i.)—to misunderstand

* **mit** (prep.) with dat.—with, along with, by means of; (adv.)—together with mit- (pref.)—fellow, joint, co-

die **Mitarbeit** (-en)—collaboration

mit-bringen—to bring with one

miteinander—with one another

mit-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to accompany

das **Mitglied** (-s, -er)—member

das **Mitleid**—pity, compassion

mit-nehmen (irr. v.t.)—to take along with; to affect; to wear out

der **Mittag** (-es, -e)—noon

* die **Mitte**—middle, center, midst

mit-teilen (v.t., v.r.)—to communicate

das **Mittel** (-s, -)—means, measures; (pl.)—means, resources, funds

das **Mittelalter**—Middle Ages

mittels (prep.) with gen.—by means of

die **Mitternacht**—midnight

mit-wirken (v.i.)—to collaborate

die **Mode**—fashion, vogue

die **Moderne**—modern age

* **mögen** (modal)—want, wish, be inclined; **das mag sein**—that may be

* **möglich** (adj.)—possible

die **Möglichkeit** (-en)—possibility

* der **Monat** (-s, -e)—month

der **Mond** (-es, -e)—moon

der **Mondschein**—moonlight

das **Moos**—moss

die **Moral**—morals, morality, ethics

der **Mord** (-s, -e)—murder

* der **Morgen** (-s, -)—morning; dawn

* **morgen** (adv.)—tomorrow

das **Morgenland** (-s)—Orient

die **Morgenröte**—sunrise

das **Motiv** (-s, -e)—motive; subject; motif

die **Möwe** (-n)—sea gull

die **Mücke** (-n)—gnat

müde (adj.)—weary, tired

die **Mühe** (-n)—trouble, effort, difficulty

der **Mund** (-es, -e or -er) —mouth, opening
mündig—**mündig sein**—to be of age
die **Münze** (-n)—coin, coinage
mürbe (adj.)—mellow; weary
die **Musik**—music
der **Muskel** (-s, -n)—muscle
* **müssen (sie muß** or **sie muss)**—to have to, must; **mußte** or **musste**—had to
müßig (adj.)—idle, vain
das **Muster** (-s, -)—model, ideal, example
der **Mut** (-s)—courage, spirit
mutig—courageous
mutmaßen (v.t. & v.i.)—to conjecture
die **Mutter** (¨)—mother

N

* **nach** (prep.)—with dat.—according to, after, following, towards; **nach wie vor**—as usual
nach-ahmen (v.t.)—to imitate
der **Nachbar** (-s, -n)—neighbor
nach-bilden (v.t.)—to reproduce, copy
* **nachdem** (conj.)—after, when; (adv.)—afterwards, subsequently
nach-denken (irr. v.i.)—to ponder
der **Nachdruck** (-s, ¨e)—emphasis; reprint
nachdrücklich—emphatic, firm
die **Nachfolge** (-n)—sequence; succession
nach-forschen (v.t.)—to investigate
nach-geben (irr. v.i.)—to yield
nachgelassen (adj.)—posthumous
* **nachher** (adv.)—afterwards; later
der **Nachkomme** (-n, -n)—descendent
nach-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) —to come after; to comply with
der **Nachlaß** (-sses, ¨sse)—legacy; posthumous works; rebate
nachlässig (adj.)—careless
der **Nachmittag** (-s, -e)—afternoon
nach-rennen (i., aux.s.)—to chase, pursue
nach-prüfen (v.t.)—to check, verify
die **Nachricht** (-en)—news, message
nach-sagen (v.i.)—to credit with
nach-schlagen (irr. v.t.)—to refer to, to look up
nach-schleichen (i., aux.s.)—to creep after
die **Nachschrift**—copy; postscript
nach-sehen (irr. v.t.)—to examine, inspect; to overlook, pardon
nach-sinnen (irr. v.i.)—to reflect
* **nächst** (adj.)—next, nearest; (prep.)—next to or after; aside from
nächstens (adv.)—very soon, shortly
* die **Nacht** (¨e)—night
der **Nachteil** (-s, -e)—disadvantage
die **Nachtigall** (-n)—nightingale
das **Nachtlied** (-es, -er)—night song
der **Nachtrag** (-es, ¨e)—supplement
der **Nachweis** (-es, -e)—proof
die **Nachwelt**—posterity
nach-wirken (v.i.)—to be felt afterwards
das **Nachwort** (-s, ¨er)—epilogue
nach-zählen—to check, count again
nach-ziehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to follow
nackt (adj.)—naked
die **Nadel** (-n)—needle

der **Nagel** (-s, ¨) — nail
* **nah** (adj.) — near, forthcoming, close on, impending
die **Nähe**—nearness; vicinity
nahe-liegen (irr. v.i.) — to be obvious
nähern (v.r.) — to approach
nahezu (adv.) — nearly, almost, virtually
nähren (v.t.) — to feed, nourish
der **Name** (-ns, -n)—name
namenlos (adj.) — nameless; indescribable; unspeakable
* **namens** (adv.) — called; (prep.) — on behalf of
** **namentlich** (adv.) — especially
* **nämlich** (adv.)—namely
der **Narr** (-en, -en)—fool
die **Narrheit** (-en) — foolishness
die **Nase** -nose
die **Nationalökonomie**—political economy
die **Natur** (-en) — nature; character, disposition; **von Natur aus**—by nature
naturgetreu (adj.) — true to nature
die **Naturlehre**—natural philosophy, (physical) science
natürlich (adj.) — natural, innate; (adv.) — of course, naturally
naturwidrig (adj.) — unnatural
der **Nebel** — fog; veil
* **neben** (prep.) with dat. or acc. — beside, next to
die **Nebenabsicht** (-en) — secondary objective
die **Nebenbedeutung**—secondary meaning
nebeneinander (adv.) — side by side
nebeneinander-stellen (v.t.) — to compare
* **nehmen, nahm, hat genommen** (v.i.) — to take (from); **auf sich nehmen**—to assume (a burden)
der **Neid**—envy, jealousy
neigen (v.i.) — to lean or incline (zu) to; (v.t.) to bend; (v.r.) — to slant, bow
die **Neigung**—inclination; tendency; fondness
* **nein** (adv.) — no
* **nennen, nannte, hat genannt** (v.t.) — to name, mention
die **Nessel** (-n) — nettle
nett (adj.) — nice, neat
* **neu** (adj.) — new, recent, latest, novel; **neuere Sprachen**—modern languages; **in neuerer Zeit**—in recent times
die **Neuerung**—innovation
die **Neufassung** (-en) — revised text
neugierig (adj.) — curious
neulich (adv.) — recently
* **nicht** (adv.) — not; **nicht besser als**—no better than; **nicht mehr**—no longer
das **Nichts**—nothingness
* **nichts** (pron.) — nothing
* **nie** (adv.) — never
nieder (adj.) — inferior; lower; (adv.) — down low
nieder-drücken (v.t.) — to depress; to press or weigh down
nieder-gehen (i., aux.s.) — to descend, set
die **Niederlage**—defeat; failure
nieder-legen—to lay down; to give up
der **Niederschlag** (-s, ¨e) — outcome, result
nieder-werfen—to throw down
niedrig (adj.) — low, inferior
niemals (adj.) — never

* **niemand** (pron.)—no one
nimmer (adv.)—never
nirgendwo (adv.)—nowhere
* **noch** (adj.)—still, yet; in addition; **noch einer**—one more; **noch einmal**—once again; **noch nicht**—not yet
die **Nonne** (-n)—nun
nördlich (adj.)—northern, northerly (adv.)—to the north
nordöstlich (adj.)—north-east(ern)
die **Not** (-e)—need; **aus Not**—from necessity; **not-** (pred. adj.)—necessary
nötig (adj.)—necessary
nötigen (v.t.)—to force
die **Notlage**—predicament
der **Notstand** (-es, ¨-e)—state of distress
notwendig (adj.)—necessary
die **Novelle** (-n)—short story, short novel
nüchtern (adj.)—sober; temperate
null (adj.)—nil, zero
die **Nummer** (-n)—number, issue (of a journal)
* **nun** (adv.)—now, at present; (part.)—now, well
* **nur** (adv., part.)—only, alone; just; simply; **wenn nur**—if only
nutzen or nützen (v.i.)—to be of use; **es nützt nichts**—it is no use
nützlich (adj.)—useful

O

* **ob** (conj.)—whether, if
* **oben** (adv.)—above, on the surface
oben-erwähnt or **-genannt** or **-gesagt** (adv.)—aforesaid
ober—upper
der **Oberbau**—superstructure
obere (adj.)—situated above, supreme
oberflächlich (adj.)—superficial
oberst (adj.)—uppermost; supreme
obgleich (conj.)—although
das **Obst** (-es -arten)—fruit (mainly central-European fruit such as apples and plums, but not oranges and bananas)
* **obwohl**—although
öde (adj.)—empty, desolate; dull
* **oder**—or; **entweder... oder**—either... or
der **Ofen** (-s, ¨)—oven
offen (adj.)—open, frank, outspoken
offenbar (adj.)—apparent, evident; obvious
offenbaren (v.t.)—to reveal
offenkundig (adj.)—clear, overt
offensichtlich (adj.)—obvious
öffentlich (adj.)—public
die **Öffentlichkeit**—public
öffnen (v.t. & v.r.)—to open
* **oft** (adv.)—often
oftmals—often
* **ohne**—without; **ohne ... zu**—without... -ing
die **Ohnmacht**—impotence, faint
das **Ohr** (-s, -en)—ear
die **Ökonomie** (-s, -)—economy, economics
das **Öl** (-s, -e)—oil
der **Opferkrug** (-es, ¨-e)—sacrificial vessel
opfern—to sacrifice
ordentlich (adj.)—orderly
ordnen (v.t.)—to arrange, classify
die **Ordnung**—classification, order, arrangement; routine
* der **Ort** (-es, -e)—place, site

örtlich (adj.)—local, endemic
* der **Osten** (-s)—east; Orient; East Germany (prior to 1989)
das **Ostern** (-)—Easter, Passover
das **Österreich**—Austria
östlich (adj.)—eastern, easterly
die **Ostsee**—Baltic Sea
der **Ozean** (-s, -e)—ocean

P

das **Paar** (-es, -e)—pair
* **paar** (indecl. adj.)—couple; a few; some; **ein paar Blumen**—a few flowers
paaren (t. & r.)—to mate
** der **Pair** (-s, -s)—peer
der **Pakt** (-s, -e)—pact
das **Papier** (-s, -e)—paper, document
der **Papst** (-es, ¨-e)—pope
das **Paradies** (-es, -e)—paradise
der **Park** (-es, -e)—park
die **Partei** (-en)—faction, party; **Partei ergreifen** or **nehmen für**—to side with someone
** **parteiisch, parteilich** (adj.) —partial
passen (v.i.)—to be suited to; (v.r.)—to be proper
passieren (v.t.)—to pass; (v.i., aux.s.)—to happen
** **pathetisch** (adj.)—lofty, solemn, expressive, overemotional
das **Pech** (-es)—**Pech haben**—to have bad luck
die **Pein**—pain
peinlich (adj.)—painful, embarrassing; meticulous
der **Pelz** (-es, -e)—fur, pelt
der or das **Pendel** (-s, -)—pendulum
die **Perle** (-n)—pearl
** das **Personal** (-s)—personnel
persönlich (adj.)—personal
die **Personifizierung**—personification
** die **Pest**—plague
der **Pfarrer** (-s, -)—minister
die **Pfefferminze**—peppermint
das **Pferd** (-es, -e)—horse
das **Pfingsten**—Pentecost
die **Pflanze** (-n)—plant
die **Pflanzenkunde**—botany
pflegen (v.i.)—to be in the habit of (v.t.)—to care for; cultivate
die **Pflicht** (-en)—duty, obligation
* das **Pfund** (-es, -e)—pound, half a kilogram
die **Phantasie**—imagination
der **Philosoph** (-en, -en)—philosopher
die **Philosophie**—philosophy
** der **Photograph** (-en, -en)—photographer
der **Pilger** (-s, -)—pilgrim
die **Pinie** (-n)—pine
die **Plage** (-n)—nuisance; plague
das **Plakat** (-s, -e)—sign, placard
der **Plan** (-es, ¨-e)—scheme, plan; chart, diagram
platt (adj.)—flat, dull, trite
der **Platz** (-es, ¨-e)—place, site, locality; **Platz nehmen**—to sit down
* **plötzlich** (adv.)—suddenly
** **plump** (adj.)—clumsy, awkward
der **Pöbel** (-s)—mob, rabble
das **Polen**—Poland
die **Politik**—politics, policy
der **Posten** (-s, -)—post, position
prächtig (adj.)—magnificent, splendid

prägen (v.t.)—to stamp, emboss, impress; mold; shape, form, imprint
** die **Prägnanz**—precision, terseness
prahlen (i.)—to brag
die **Praktik** (-en)—practice
predigen (v.t.)—to preach
die **Predigt** (-en)—sermon
der **Preis** (-es, -e)—price; prize
** **preis-geben** (irr. v.t.)—to surrender; to reveal; to expose; to abandon
der **Priester** (-s, -)—priest
der **Prinz** (-en, -en)—prince
das **Prinzip** (-s, pl. -e or -pien)—principle
die **Probe** (-n)—trial, test; sample
probieren (v.t.)—to test; to try
der **Prophet** (-en, -en)—prophet
die **Prosa**—prose
das **Prozent** (-s, -e)—per cent
der **Prozeß** (-sses, -sse)—legal proceedings, procedure, process
die **Prozession** (-en)—procession
prüfen (v.t.)—to examine, investigate, scrutinize; consider
das **Publikum** (-s, no pl.)—public
der **Pudel** (-s, -)—poodle
das **Pult** (-es, -e)—desk, lectern
der **Punkt** (-es, -¨e)—point, place, item, subject
pünktlich (adj.)—punctual
** **punktuell** (adj.)—selective

Q

die **Qual** (-en)—torment
quälen (v.t.)—to torture, torment; (v.r.)—to toil, struggle
das **Quartal** (-s, -e)—quarter of a year or of a day
die **Quelle** (-n)—source; origin; **aus guter Quelle**—from a reliable source
quellen, quoll, gequollen—to originate
quer (adj.)—diagonal; (adv.)—crosswise
der **Querschnitt** (-s, -e)—cross-section; profile
die **Quittung**—receipt

R

rächen (v.t.)—avenge; (v.r.)—to take revenge
der **Rahmen** (-s, -)—background, setting, framework, scope
** die **Rakete** (-n)—rocket, missile
der **Rand** (-es, ¨er)—edge, border
** der **Rang** (-es, ¨e)—rank, degree, quality; **ersten Ranges**—first-class
** **der Rapport** (-s, -e)—report
rar (adj.)—rare
rasch (adj.)—quick; fast
rasen (v.i.)—to rage
die **Rasse** (-n)—race
der **Rat** (-es, pl. Ratschläge)—advice
raten, riet, hat geraten (v.i. & v.t.)—to advise; to guess, to conjecture; to solve
das **Rätsel** (-s, -)—riddle, mystery, enigma
die **Ratte** (-n)—rat
rauben (v.t.)—to steal, rob
der **Räuber** (-s, -)—robber
der **Rauch** (-es)—smoke
rauh (adj.)—rough, uneven, coarse
der **Raum** (-es, ¨e)—room, space; scope, sphere
räumen (v.t.)—to remove; to clean

der **Rausch** (-es, ⸚e)—intoxication, frenzy; ecstasy
der **Realismus**—Realism
rechnen (v.t. & v.i.)—to count, calculate; estimate; rank
* **recht** (adj.)—right-(hand); right, proper, fitting; (adv.)—well, rightly, rather, quite, very
* das **Recht** (-es, -e)—right; law; privilege; justice; **mit Recht**—with good reason
rechtfertigen (v.t.)—to justify
rechts (adv. prep.)—on the right, to the right
rechtsradikal (adj.)—extreme rightwing
rechtzeitig (adj.)—timely
der **Redakteur** (-s, -e)—editor
die **Redaktion**—editing
die **Rede** (-n)—speech, conversation; **eine Rede halten**—to make a speech; **der in Rede stehende Gegenstand**—the subject under discussion
* **reden** (v.t. & v.i.)—to speak, talk, converse
das **Redeteil**—part of speech
redlich (adj.)—honest
das **Referat** (-es, -e)—lecture, report, review
* die **Regel** (-n)—rule, principle; **in der Regel**—as a rule
regeln (v.t.)—to regulate, control
der **Regen** (-s, -)—rain
regieren (v.t. & i.)—to rule, govern
die **Regierung** (-en)—government
regnen (v.i.)—to rain
* **reich** (adj.)—rich, abundant, copious
* das **Reich** (-es, -e)—empire, realm, kingdom

reichen (v.t.)—to reach; give; (v.i.)—to reach, extend, suffice
der **Reichtum**—wealth
reif (adj.)—ripe, mature, ready
die **Reihe**—row; rank; series
rein (adj.)—pure, sheer, clean
die **Reise** (-n) —journey, trip
reißen, riß (or **riss**), **hat gerissen** (v.t.) —to rip, tear; snatch, seize
reiten, ritt, ist geritten—to ride
der **Reiter** (-s, -)—rider
der **Reiz** (-s, -e)—attraction, incentive, stimulous
** **reizen** (v.t.)—to stimulate; to charm, appeal to; to irritate
reizend—charming
** **rentieren** (v.i. & r.)—to be worthwhile
** der **Rest** (-es, -e)—remains; rest
retten (v.t.)—to save; (v.r.)—to escape
die **Reue**—repentance, remorse
der **Revolutionär** (-s, -e) —revolutionary
richten (v.t.)—to set right; to prepare; to direct; (v.i.)—to judge; to execute; pass sentence on
der **Richter** (-s, -)—judge
richtig (adj.)—right, correct, real; (adv.)—duly, properly
die **Richtung** (-en)—direction
riesig (adj.)—gigantic, enormous
ringen, rang, hat gerungen (v.i.)—to struggle (for)
rings (adv.)—all around
** der **Riß** (or **Riss**) (-sses, -sse)—gap, split; plan, sketch, outline
der **Ritter** (-s, -)—knight
roh (adj.)—raw, unrefined, rough
die **Rolle** (-n)—role, roll, part
das **Rom**—Rome

*der **Roman** (-s, -e)—novel
die **Romantik**—Romanticism
römisch (adj.)—Roman
die **Rose** (-n)—rose
das **Roß** (or **Ross**) (-sses, -sse)—horse, steed
rot—red
der **Rowdy** (-s, -s)—scoundrel
die **Rubrik** (-en)—category; column, rubric
rücken (v.t.)—to move, shift; (v.i., aux.s.)—to move
die **Rückkehr**—return
die **Rücksicht** (-en)—respect, regard
der **Rücktritt** (-s, -e)—resignation, withdrawal, retirement
rückwärts (adv.)—backwards
der **Ruf** (-es, -e)—call; repute, reputation, name
* **rufen, rief, hat gerufen** (v.t.) —to call; to send for
die **Ruhe**—rest, peace, calm
ruhen (i.)—to rest, sleep
der **Ruhetag** (-es, -e)—day of rest
der **Ruhm**—fame, glory
rühmen (v.t.)—to praise; (v.r.)—to boast
rühren (v.i.)—to touch, to come into contact with; (v.t. & r.) —to stir, move; to touch, set in motion
rund (adj.)—round; circular; (adv.)
rund heraussagen—to say straight out
der **Rundfunk** (-s)—radio, broadcasting
das **Russland**—Russia
die **Rüstung**—armaments, equipment, preparations
rutschen (v.i., aux.s.)—to slide, to move

S

die **Saat** (-en)—seed
der **Sabbat**—Sabbath
die **Sache** (-n)—thing, matter, cause, subject; business
sachlich (adj.)—factual, objective
der Sack (-es, ¨e)—sack
* **sagen**—to say, tell
die Saite (-n)—lyre; string
sammeln (v.t.)—to gather, collect; (v.r.)—to assemble; to concentrate
der **Sammelname** (-ns, -n)—collective name
die **Sammlung** (-en)—collection; composure
samt (prep.)—with dat. —together with, including
sämtlich (e) Werke—complete works
die **Sanduhr**—hourglass
sanft (adj.)—gentle, soft
satt (adj.)—full, satiated
der **Sattel** (-s, ¨)—saddle
* der **Satz** (-es, ¨e)—sentence, clause, proposition
die **Sau** (¨e or -en)—sow
sauber (adj.)—clean, honest
sauer (adj.)—acrid, tart
saufen—to drink; to drink to excess
die **Säule** (-n)—column, pillar
säuseln (v.i.)—to rustle, whisper
die **Schablone** (-s)—stencil; routine; cliche
schade (pred. adj.)—pity
schaden (v.i.)—to harm; damage
das **Schaf** (-es, -e)—sheep
schaffen, schuf, hat geschaffen (v.t. & i.)—to create, to procure; to do, accomplish, provide

schämen (v.r.)—to be ashamed of
schamlos—shameless
die **Schande**—disgrace
die **Schar** (-en)—crowd
scharf (adj.)—sharp, biting, caustic, precise, exact
der **Schatten**—shadow, shade
der **Schatz** (-es, ¨-e)—treasure; love
schätzen (v.t.)—to value, assess
die **Schau** (-en)—sight, view, show
* **schauen** (v.t.)—to see, perceive; (v.i.)—to look, gaze
das **Schauspiel** (-s, -e)—spectacle, drama
der **Schauspieler** (-s, -)—actor; die **Schauspielerin** (-nen)—actress
scheiden, schied, ist geschieden (v.i.)—to separate, depart
der **Schein** (-es, -e)—appearance, shine, pretense
scheinbar (adj.) —apparent
* **scheinen, schien, ist** or **hat geschienen** (v.t. & i.)—to appear, to shine
scheitern (v.i., aux.s.)—to fail, break down
das **Schema** (-s, -s or -ta)—scheme, model, pattern, diagram
schenken (v.t.)—to give, present
die **Scherbe** (-n)—fragment
scherzen (v. i.)—to joke, kid
scheu (adj.)—shy
die **Scheu**—shyness; awe, dread
scheuen—to shun, avoid
die **Schicht** (-en)—layer; shift, division
schicken (v.t.)—to send, dispatch; (v.r.)—to happen, to be fitting
* das **Schicksal** (-s, -e)—destiny, fate
schieben, schob, hat geschoben (v.t., r. & i.) to push, shove, delay
schief (adj.)—oblique; inappropriate; (adv.)—aslant, askew
schießen, schoß (or **schoss**), **hat geschossen** (v.i.)—shoot; burst forth
das **Schiff** (-es, -e)—ship
der **Schild** (-es, -e)—shield,emblem
schildern (v.t.)—to portray, describe
schimpfen (v.t.)—to insult,scold
die **Schlacht** (-en)—battle
schlachten (v.t. & i.)—to slay
der **Schlaf** (-es)—sleep
schlafen, schlief, hat geschlafen (v.i.)—to sleep
der **Schlag** (-es, ¨-e)—blow, stroke
schlagen, schlug, hat geschlagen (v.t.)—to hit; (v.t. & i.)—to beat, strike
das **Schlagwort** (-s, -e or ¨-er)—slogan
die **Schlange** (-n)—line; snake
schlank (adj.)—slim, slender
schlau (adj.)—sly, clever
* **schlecht** (adj. & adv.)—bad, wicked
schleichen, schlich, ist geschlichen—to creep
der **Schleier** (-s, -)—veil, haze
schleudern—to fling
schlicht (adj.)—plain, simple
schlichten—to arrange, adjust
* **schließen, schloß, hat geschlossen** (v.t.)—to close, end; conclude; to strike a bargain
schließlich (adj. & adv.)—final, finally; after all
das **Schloß** (or **Schloss**) (-sses, ¨-sse) —lock; castle
der **Schlupfwinkel**—hiding place
der **Schluß** (or **Schluss**) (-sses, ¨-sse)—end, conclusion; closing
der **Schlüssel** (-s, -)—key

schmachvoll—disgraceful
schmählich (adj.)—ignominious
** **schmal** (adj.)—narrow, slim
schmecken (v.i.)—to taste
schmeicheln (v.i.)—to flatter
der **Schmerz** (-es, -en)—pain
schmerzlich—painful
der **Schmutz** (-es)—dirt, filth
der **Schneeball**—snowball
schneiden, schnitt, hat geschnitten (v.t. & i.)—to cut
* **schnell** (adj. & adv.)—fast, quick
** der **Schnitt** (-es, -e)—cut, section; style; editing
* **schon** (adv.)—already; even; before; certainly; really; just; as early as
* **schön** (adj.)—beautiful; good (adv.)—beautifully, very
der **Schöpfer** (-s, -)—creator
die **Schöpfung**—creation
der **Schoß** (-es, ⸚e)—lap
schräg (adj.)—slanting; suspicious
schrecken—to frighten, scare
schrecklich (adj.)—frightful
der **Schrei** (-es, -e)—cry, shout
* **schreiben, schrieb, hat geschrieben** (v.t. & i.)—to write
schreien, schrie, hat geschrien (v.t. & i.)—to cry, shout
schreiten, schritt, ist geschritten—to stride, to proceed (zu) to; to march
die **Schrift** (-en)—writing, script, publication;
die **Heilige Schrift**—the Holy Scriptures
der **Schriftsteller** (-s, -)—author, writer
der **Schritt** (-es, -e)—step, pace; **den ersten Schritt tun**—to make the first move
schroff (adj.)—rough, abrupt; curt
schrumpfen (v.i., aux.s.)—to shrink, depreciate, decline
der **Schuh** (-es, -e)—shoe
die **Schularbeit** (-en)—school work
das **Schulbeispiel** (-s, -e)—classic example
die **Schuld** (-en)—debt, obligation; guilt, sin; blame, responsibility
schulden (v.t.)—to owe, be indebted to
schuldig—guilty
die **Schule** (-n)—school, college, school of thought
der **Schüler** (-s, -)—schoolboy; disciple, follower
** der **Schuß** (or **Schuss**) (-sses, ⸚sse)—shot; **in Schuß kommen**—to get going; **im Schuß sein**—to be in full swing
der **Schuster** (-s, -)—cobbler
der **Schutz** (-es, no pl.)—shelter, refuge; **in Schutz nehmen**—to defend
schützen (v.t.)—to protect (vor) (from)
schwach (adj.)—weak, poor, sparse
die **Schwäche** (-n)—weakness, shortcoming
schwanken (v.t.)—to sway, waver; oscillate; hesitate
der **Schwärmer** (-s, -)—dreamer, visionary; fanatic, zealot
* **schwarz** (adj.)—black, gloomy; illicit; der **schwarze Markt**—the black market
schweben (v.i.)—to soar; hang (in the air); be pending
schweigen, schwieg, hat geschwiegen (v.i.)—to be silent
das **Schwein** (-s, -e)—swine; **Schwein haben**–to be quite lucky

* die **Schweiz**—Switzerland
die **Schwelle** (-n)—threshold; brink
schwellen, schwoll, ist geschwollen (v.i.)—to swell, expand
* **schwer** (adj.)—heavy, serious; difficult; severe
schwerlich (adj.)—hardly
die **Schwermut**—melancholy
der **Schwerpunkt** (-s, ⸚e)—center of gravity; main focus
die **Schwester** (-n)—sister
schwierig (adj.)—difficult;
die **Schwierigkeit** (-en)—difficulty
schwimmen, schwamm, ist or hat geschwommen—to swim
der **Schwindel** (-s)—dizziness; fraud
schwinden, schwand, ist geschwunden (v.i.)—to shrink, dwindle; to disappear; fade
schwingen, schwang, hat geschwungen (v.t.)—to swing, wave; (v.r.)—to leap, soar; (v.i.)—to swing; linger
schwören, schwor, hat geschworen (v.t. & i.)—to swear
Schwung (-s, ⸚e)—verve, momentum
sechs—six
** der **See** (-s, -n)—lake, pond
** die **See** (-n)—sea, ocean
die **Seele** (-n)—soul, spirit, heart; human being
seelisch (adj.)—spiritual, emotional, mental
der Segen (-s, -)—blessing; prosperity
* **sehen, sah, hat gesehen** (v.t.)—to see, perceive, watch; **sehen lassen**—to show; **sich sehen lassen**—to appear; **sehen** auf (acc.)—to look over; to pay attention to
sehnen (v.r.)—to long, yearn (nach)—for
die **Sehnsucht** (⸚e)—yearning
* **sehr** (adv.)—very, most; very much
* **sei** (imperative)—be
* **sein** (adj.)—his, its
* **sein, war, ist gewesen** (v.i.)—to be, exist, occur, be alive; **der Ansicht** or **der Meinung sein**—to be of the opinion; **es ist mir, als ob**—I feel as if, it seems to me
das **Sein**—being, existence
seinesgleichen (indecl. adj., pron.)—people like him
seinethalben, seinetwegen, seinetwillen (adv.)—on his account, for his sake
* **seit** (prep.) with dat.—for; since
seitdem (conj. and adv.)—since
die **Seite** (-n)—side; page; feature
seither (adv.)—since (then)
* **selber, selbst** (indecl. adj.)—self; **das versteht sich von selbst**—that goes without saying; **selbst** (adv.)—even
selbständig (adj.)—self-reliant, independent
die **Selbsterkenntnis**—self-knowledge
selbstgefällig (adj.)—self-satisfied
selbstsicher (adj.)—self-assured
die **Selbstsucht**—egoism, selfishness
die **Selbstüberwindung**—self-conquest; will-power
selbstvergessen (adj.)—absent-minded
selbstverständlich (adj. & adv.)—obvious
* **selten** (adj.)—rare, unusual; (adv.)—seldom
selig—blissful

seltsam (adj. & adv.)—odd, peculiar
die **Semmel** (-n)—roll
die **Sendepause**—interval; deathly silence
senkrecht (adj.)— perpendicular
** **sensibel** (adj.)—sensitive
** **sensitiv** (adj.)—hypersensitive
* **setzen** (v.t.)—to place, set; den **Fall setzen**—to suppose; **Grenzen setzen**—to set limits; **gesetzt, es wäre so**—supposing it were so; (v.r.)—to seat oneself; to settle
seufzen (v.i.)—to sigh
* **sich** (refl. pron.)—himself, herself, itself, themselves, yourself; **es fragt sich**—it is a question whether
* **sicher** (adj.)—secure, safe; sure; certain, confident
sicherlich (adv.)—surely, certainly
sichern (v.t.)—to secure, make safe; (v.i.)—to be watchful
die **Sicht**—sight, view
sichtbar (adj.)—visible, evident
* **sie**—she, her; they, them; it (when referring to a feminine noun)
* **Sie** —you
der **Sieg** (-es, -e)—conquest, victory
sinken, sank, ist gesunken (v.i.)—to sink, subside; decline, decrease
* der **Sinn** (-es, -e)—sense, tendency; meaning, significance
das **Sinnbild** (-es, -er)—symbol
sinnen, sann, ist (or **hat) gesonnen**—to think, brood, muse
sinnlich (adj.)—sensual; sensuous, perceptible
sinnlos (adj.)—senseless; futile
die **Sitte** (-n)—custom, habit, tradition; practice
die **Sittenlehre**—ethics, moral philosophy
sittlich (adj.)—moral, ethical
der **Sitz** (-es, -e)—seat; residence
* **sitzen, saß (sass), hat gesessen** (v.i.)—to sit; to be, to be situated
die **Sitzung** (-en)—session, conference
* **so** (adv.)—so, thus, in this or that way; **ein so**—such a; **so etwas** —such a thing; **so sehr**—to such a degree; **so ... wie** —as ... as; (conj.)—therefore,consequently
sobald (conj.)—as soon as
sofern (conj.)—inasmuch as; provided that
sofort (adv.)—immediately
* **sogar**—even, in addition, besides
sogenannt (adj.)—so-called
sogleich—at once, immediately
der **Sohn** (-es, ¨-e)—son
solang(e)—as long as
* **solch** (adj.)—such
der **Soldat** (-en, -en)—soldier
* **sollen** (modal)—to be obliged to; is to; to be said to; should; **er soll es geschrieben haben**—he is said to have written it; **man sollte meinen**—one would think; **Jahre sollten vergehen, bevor**—years were to pass before ...
somit (adv.)—consequently
die **Sonderausgabe (-n)**—special edition
sonderbar (adj.)—singular, strange
** **sondern** (v.t.)—to separate; to distinguish
* **sondern** (conj.)—on the contrary
die **Sonne** (-n)—sun
der **Sonnenschein** (-s)—sunshine

sonst (adv.)—else, otherwise, moreover
die **Sorge** (-n)—concern, worry
sorgen (i.)—to take care, attend to
sorgfältig (adj.)—careful
souverän (adj.)—sovereign
soviel (conj.)—as far as; **soviel ich weiß**—as far as I know
sowieso (adv.)—anyway
der **Sowjet** (-s, -s)—Soviet
sowohl (conj.) als—both ... and; as well as
der **Soziologe** (-n, -n)—sociologist
der **Spalt** (-es, -en)—cleft, fissure
spannend (adj.)—exciting, tense
die **Spannung** (-en)—suspense, tension; stretching, strain
** **sparen**—to save
spärlich (adj.)—scanty, sparse
sparsam (adj.)—economical
der **Spaß** (-es, -e)—fun; **es macht mir Spaß**—I enjoy (it)
* **spät** (adj. & adv.)—late
spätestens (adv.)—at the latest
spenden—to buy
sperren (v.t.)—to barricade; to lock up; to spread or stretch out; to ban
der **Spiegel** (-s, -)—mirror, reflector;
das **Spiegelbild** (-es, -er)—reflection
spiegeln (v.t.) —to reflect; (v.r.)—to be reflected
das **Spiel** (-es, -e)—play, sport, game; **aufs Spiel setzen**—to risk
spielen—to play
das **Spielkind** (-es, -er)—playmate
der **Spießbürger** (-s, -)—narrow-minded person, bourgeois
die **Spinne** (-n)—spider
der **Spion** (-s, -e)—spy
die **Spitze** (-n)—point, peak; summit; **auf die Spitze treiben** —to carry to extremes
** **splendid** (adj.)—generous; handsome
der **Spott** (-es)—mockery, scorn, sarcasm
* die **Sprache** (-n)—language; speech
der **Sprachforscher** (-s, -)—linguist, philologist
sprachlos—speechless
* **sprechen, sprach, hat gesprochen** (v.t & v.i.) — to speak, talk **(mit)** to or with; (über, von)—about
das **Sprichwort** (-es, ¨er)—proverb
springen, sprang, ist (or **hat**) **gesprungen**—to spring, leap; to gush, burst
der **Spruch** (-es, ¨e)—maxim; verdict
der **Sprung** (-es, -e)—jump, leap; **auf dem Sprung sein, etwas zu tun**—to be about to do something
spucken (t. & i.)—to spit
spüren (v.t.)—to feel, perceive, to experience
* der **Staat** (-es, -en)—state, nation; die **Staatskunst**—politics; **Staatswissenschaft**—political science
der **Staatsstreich** (-s, -e)—coup d'état
der **Stabreim** (-s, -e)—alliteration
der **Stachel** (-s, -n)—thorn, quill
der **Stacheldraht**—barbed wire
* die **Stadt** (¨e)—city, town
der **Stall** (¨e)—stable
** der **Stamm** (-s, ¨e)—tribe, race, stem; core; regular customer

der **Stand** (-es, -e or no pl.)—foothold; situation, condition, state; **gut im Stand sein**—to be in good condition; **Leute von Stand**—people of rank

das **Standesbewußtsein**—class-consciousness

ständig (adj. & adv.)—fixed, constant, permanent

der **Standpunkt** (-es, ¨-e)—viewpoint

* **stark** (adj.)—strong, thick, heavy (adv.)—greatly, very much

die **Stärke** (-n)—strength, power; magnitude; greatness

starr (adj.)—rigid, inflexible, stubborn

* **statt** (prep.)—with gen.—instead of; (conj.)—instead of

die **Statt** (-)—place, stead

die **Stätte** (-n)—place, abode

statt-finden (irr. v.i.)—to take place, happen

der **Staub** (-es)—dust

stechen, stach, hat gestochen (v.t. & i.)—to prick, pierce

stecken (v.t.)—to put, place, insert; (v.r.)—**sich hinter eine Sache stecken**—to get behind something; (v.i.)—to be, stay, remain; to lie hidden

* **stehen, stand, hat (ist) gestanden** (v.i.)—to stand; to be situated; to be written; to stand still, to stop; **auf einem Zettel stehen**—to appear on a note; es **steht bei ihnen**—it is in their power; **fest stehen**—to be firm

stehen-bleiben (irr. v.i., aux.s.) —to remain standing; to stand still; to stop

stehen-lassen (irr. v.t.)—to ignore; to forget; overlook

stehlen, stahl, hat gestohlen (v.i. & t.)—to steal

steif (adj.)—stiff, rigid (vor) with; clumsy, awkward

steigen, stieg, ist gestiegen (v.i.)—to climb; to increase; rise; to advance; to take place, be held

steigern (v.t.)—to raise, increase; to heighten; (v.r.)—to become greater or intensified

der **Stein** (-es, -e)—stone; **Stein des Anstoßes**—stumbling- block; **Stein der Weisen**—philosopher's stone

der **Stein(ab)druck**—lithograph

die **Stelle** (-n)—position, site; passage (in a book); **auf der Stelle**—on the spot

* **stellen** (v.t.)—to put, place, lay, set; impose (conditions on); **einen Antrag stellen**—to make a motion; **Bedingungen stellen**—to impose conditions; **in Frage stellen**—to call into question; **zur Diskussion stellen**—to throw open to discussion; (v.r.)—to place or post or position oneself; to appear; to surrender; to pretend to be; **sich stellen gegen**—to oppose; **die Probleme, die sich allen Gelehrten stellen**—the problems confronting all scholars

die Stellung—position; attitude; post; situation; social position; supply

die **Stellungnahme** (-n)—point of view

* **sterben, starb, ist gestorben** (v.i.)—to die

sterblich (adj.)—mortal

der **Stern** (-es, -e)—star

das **Sternchen**—asterisk

sternenklar—starlit

stets (adv.)—constantly, always
die **Steuer** (-n)—tax
steuern (v.t.)—to steer; to drive; to control; (v.i., aux.s.)—to put a stop to; to head
** der **Stich** (-es, -e)—stab, prick; tinge; hint; suggestion
der **Stichel**—style, graving tool
stichhaltig (adj.)—sound, valid, lasting; conclusive
das **Stichwort** (-es, -e)—key word, cue, party-cry (pol.)
der **Stier** (-es, -e)—steer
stiften (v.t.)—to found, establish, endow; cause
der **Stifter** (-s, -)—donator; founder
der **Stil** (-es, -e)—style, manner
* **still** (adj.)—silent, soft, still, calm; **Stiller Freitag**—Good Friday; **Stiller Ozean**—Pacific Ocean
die **Stille**—quiet, silence, stillness
stillos (adj.)—without style
die **Stimme** (-n)—voice, vote, opinion
stimmen (v.i.)—to agree, be right
die **Stimmung**—mood, atmosphere; morale
stocken (v.i.)—to falter; to reach a deadlock; to break off
die **Stockung**—interruption, breakdown
der **Stoff** (-es, -e)—matter, material; subject
stolz (adj.)—proud, arrogant, conceited; majestic
stören (v.t.)—to interrupt, disturb, inconvenience; (v.i.)—to intrude
stoßen, stieß (or stiess), hat gestoßen (v.t.) —to push, thrust, shove, strike; to drive out; (v.r.) **sich stoßen an**—to take offence at; (v.i.) to border, touch, adjoin; (aux. s.) —swoop down, encounter
die **Strafe** (-n)—punishment, penalty, retribution
straff (adj.)—stretched, taut; austere, stern
das **Strafrecht**—criminal law
strahlen (v.i.)—to radiate, shine; glow
* die **Straße** (-n)—street, road, highway, route; **auf der Straße liegen**—to be there all around us
sträuben (v.r.)—to struggle against
streben (v.i.)—to strive, to struggle, to aspire
strecken (v.t.)—to stretch, extend, elongate, spread out
der **Streich** (-es, -e)—stroke; prank
streichen, strich, hat gestrichen (v.t.)—to stroke, touch; (v.i., aux.s.)—to extend, stretch, roam; (v.t.) to strike, cut, erase, cancel; to paint
streiten, stritt, hat gestritten (v.i.)—to quarrel, argue; **darüber läßt sich streiten** — that is a moot point
die **Streitschrift** (-en)—polemic
streng(e) (adj.)—severe, strict; (adv.)—**sich streng halten an**—to adhere strictly to
strenggläubig (adj.)—orthodox
der **Strich** (-es, -e)—stroke, line, dash; sketch; region
das **Stroh** (-es)—straw
der **Strom** (-es, ¨-e)—stream, current, crowd
die **Strophe** (-n)—stanza, verse
* das **Stück** (-es, -e)—piece, part; extract (from a book)

der **Student** (en, -en)—student
die **Studie** (-n)—sketch, study
studieren—to study
die **Stufe** (-n)—stage, phase; degree; nuance
stufenartig (adj.)—gradual
der **Stuhl** (-es, ⸚e)—chair
stumm (adj.)—mute, silent, dumb
stumpf (adj.)—blunt, obtuse; dull, indifferent
der **Strom** (-es, ⸚e)—stream, current
* die **Stunde** (-n)—hour; **zu guter Stunde**—in good time
stundenlang (adj. & adv.)—lasting for hours
der **Sturm** (-es, ⸚e)—storm; tumult; turmoil;
Sturm und Drang—Storm and Stress; emotion; movement in German literature from 1770 to 1784 emphasizing the subjectivity and unease of people in their society.
stürzen (v.i., aux.s.)—to fall or tumble down, plunge; (v.t.)—to throw down, overturn, upset
stützen (v.t.)—to support; (v.r.) —to rest, lean on; to rely, depend, be based on
* **suchen** (v.t. & i.)—to seek, desire, search (nach) for
die **Sucht** (-e)—passion; obsession
der **Süden** (-s)—South
südlich (adj.)—south, southern, southerly; **südöstlich** (adj.)—southeasterly; **südostwärts** (adv.)—southeasterly **südwestlich** (adj.)—southwestern
die **Summa** (pl. **Summen**)—**in summa**—in short, to sum up
die **Summe** (-n)—sum; total
die **Sünde** (-n)—sin, transgression
der **Sündenbock** (-s, ⸚e)—scapegoat
die **Suppe** (-n)—soup
süß (adj.)—sweet, charming, dear
der **Symbolismus**—Symbolism (in art)
sympathisch (adj.)—congenial, likeable; pleasant
die **Szene** (-n)—scene; **in Szene setzen**—to stage

T

der **Tadel** (-s, -)—reprimand, reproach; criticism,
die **Tafel** (-n)—board, blackboard, tablet, table, chart, diagram
* der **Tag** (-es, -e)—day, daylight; **alle Tage**—every day; **an den Tag bringen**—to bring to light, to disclose; **dieser Tage** (past)—recently, (fut.) —one of these days; **in acht Tagen**—in a week; **der Jüngste Tag** —Doomsday; das **Tagebuch** (-s, ⸚er)—diary, journal
tagelang (adj. & adv.)—for days
tagen (v.i.)—to hold a meeting; **es tagt bei ihr**—it dawns on her
das **Tageslicht** (-s)—daylight; **ans Tageslicht kommen—to** become known
die **Tagesordnung**—agenda
* **täglich** (adj.)—daily
** der **Takt** (-es, -e)—time (music), rhythm; tact
das **Tal** (-es, ⸚er)—valley
der **Tanz** (-es, -e)—dance, ball
tanzen (v.t. & v.i.)—to dance
das **Tapet**—**aufs Tapet bringen** — to introduce (a subject)
tapfer (adj.)—brave, heroic

tarnen (v.t.)—to camouflage; disguise, mask
die **Tastatur** (-en)—keyboard
tasten (v.i.)—to touch, feel
* die **Tat** (-en)—deed, act; **in der Tat**—in fact
tätig (adj.)—active, busy, engaged, effective
die **Tatsache** (-n)—fact
tatsächlich (adv.)—really; (adj.)—real
taub (adj.)—deaf; oblivious
der **Taube**—deaf one
die **Taube** (-n)—pigeon
tauchen—to immerse, dip
taugen (v.i.)—to be of use (zu) for; **zu nichts taugen**—to be worthless
** **tauschen** (v.t. & i.)—to exchange; to swap
** **täuschen** (v.t. & i.)—to deceive, betray; (v.r.)— to be mistaken
tausend (adj.)—thousand
* die **Technik** (-en)—technical or applied science, engineering; technology; technique
der **Teich** (-es, -e)—pond
* der or das **Teil** (-s, -e)—part, portion, share; **zum Teil**—to some extent, in part
teilen (v.t.)—to divide, separate, share; (v.r.)—to participate in
teil-haben (irr. v.i.)—participate
teil-nehmen (irr. v.i.)—to participate, collaborate
teils (adv.)—partly, part
der **Tempelraub**—sacrilege
der **Termin** (-s, -e)—appointed or fixed time or term of date or day; deadline
* **teuer** (adj.)—dear, expensive, beloved
der **Teufel** (-s, -)—devil
der **Teufelskreis**—vicious circle
die **Textkritik**—textual criticism
das **Thema** (-s, pl. -ta or -men)—theme, subject; topic
der **Theologe** (-n, -n)—theologian
der **Theoretiker** (-s, -)—theorist
die **These** (-n)—thesis, postulate
der **Thron** (-es, -e)—throne
der **Thronräuber**—usurper
* **tief** (adj.)—deep, profound, low, innermost, utmost, extreme; (adv.)—deep, deeply; profoundly; **tiefer begründen**—to substantiate more fully
die **Tiefe** (-n)—depth, profundity, abyss
tiefgreifend (adj.)—far-reaching, through-going, fundamental
der **Tiefsinn**—pensiveness; profundity
das **Tier** (-es, -e)—animal, beast
der **Tierkreis**—zodiac
die **Tierkunde**—zoology
tilgen (v.i.)—to extinguish, to obliterate, cancel; to pay off
der **Tisch** (-es, -e)—table
der **Titel** (-s, -)—title, heading, claim; section
die **Tochter** (¨)—daughter
* der **Tod** (-es, most commonly with no pl.)—death, decease
die **Todesangst**—mortal terror
tödlich (adj.)—fatal, deadly, mortal
das **Tohuwabohu** (-s, -s)—hullabaloo, chaos
toll (adj.)—mad, wild, crazy (coll.)—terrific
der **Ton** (-es, ¨e)—sound; note (mus.); **den Ton angeben**—to give the note, to set the tone

das **Tonband** (-es, ¨-er)—(recording) tape
die **Tondichtung**—musical composition; symphonic poem
tönen—to sound, to shade
tonlos (adj.)—soundless, voiceless, toneless
die **Tönung** (-en)—shade, tint, tone, shading
der **Topf** (-es, ¨-e)—pot
** der **Tor** (-en, -en)—fool
** das **Tor** (-en, -e)—gate, portal
töricht (adj.)—foolish
torkeln (i.)—to stagger
* **tot** (adj.)—dead, defunct, extinct; das **Tote Meer**—the Dead Sea
töten (v.t.)—to kill
totgeboren (adj.)—stillborn, abortive
trachten (v.i.)—to strive (nach) after or for
träge (adj.)—sluggish
* **tragen, trug, hat getragen** (v.t.) — to carry, bear, wear (clothes); to support, sustain, uphold, endure; (v.r.) — **sich tragen mit** — to have on one's mind
die **Tragik**—tragedy
die **Tragödie** (-n)—tragedy, calamity
die **Träne** (-n)—tear (drop)
die **Traube** (-n)—grape
trauen (v.i.)—to trust; (v.r.) —to venture, dare; (v.t.)—to marry
die **Trauer**—mourning, grief
der **Traum** (-s, ¨-e)—dream, vision
das **Traumbild** (-es, -er)—vision
träumen (t. & i.)—to dream
traurig (adj.)—sad, melancholy
* **treffen, traf, hat getroffen** (v.t.)—to hit, strike, affect, concern, encounter; **Maßnahmen treffen**—to take action; **das Unglück traf ihn**—he had the misfortune; (v.r.)—to meet; **es traf sich, daß ...**—it so happened that...; **treffen auf** (acc.)—to come upon
treffend (adj.)—appropriate
trefflich—excellent
treiben, trieb, hat getrieben (v.t.) —to drive, set in motion, operate; impel, induce; pursue, cultivate; **eine Politik treiben**— to pursue a policy; **sich treiben lassen**—to take things as they come
trennen (v.t. & r.)—to separate, divide, sever
* **treten, trat, ist (or hat) getreten** (v.i.)—to step, stride; **ans Licht treten**—to come to light, appear; **zur Seite treten**—to step aside; **zutage treten**—to appear, become evident
treu (adj.)—faithful, loyal
der **Trieb** (-es, -e)—impulse, urge, desire
trinken, trank, hat getrunken (v.t.)—to drink, absorb
das **Trinklied** (-es, -er)—drinking song
trocken (adj.)—dry, dull, uninteresting, tedious
der **Trost** (-es, no pl.)—comfort, consolation, solace
* **trotz** (prep.) with gen.—in spite of
der **Trotz** (-es)—defiance
* **trotzdem** (adv.)—nevertheless; (conj.)—even though, although
trübe (adj.)—muddy, cloudy; gloomy, melancholy; bleak
trüben—to pollute
trügen, trog, hat getrogen (v.t.)—to deceive, delude

tüchtig (adj.)—fit, able; (adv.)—well, thoroughly
die **Tugend** (-en)—virtue
* **tun, tat, hat getan** (v.t.)—to do, perform, execute, make; **es tut nichts**—it does not matter; (v.i.)—to act, do; **er tut, als wäre er glücklich**—he acts as if he were happy; **das will getan sein**—that needs to be done; **das läßt sich tun**—that may or can be done
die **Tür** (-en)—door; **vor der Tür stehen**—to be forthcoming
der **Turm** (-es, ¨-e)—tower, spire
typisch—typical

U

übel (adj.)—evil, bad, wrong, ill
üben (v.t.)—to exercise, practice; **Geduld üben**—to have patience; **Nachsicht üben**—to show consideration; **geübtes Auge**—trained eye
* **über** (prep.)—with dat. or acc.—over, above, about; (adv.)—over, above, too much
über- (pref. to nouns and adjs.)—over, super, hyper, etc.
über- (verb pref.)—in intransitive verbs, the prefix is usually inseparable; with most compound transitive verbs, the prefix may be both separable and inseparable; when the verb is separable, the meaning is usually literal (**übersetzen**—sep.—to set over); when the verb is inseparable, the meaning is usually figurative (**übersetzen**—insep.—to translate)
überall (adv.)—everywhere
der **Überbau** (-es, -e)—superstructure
der **Überblick** (-es, -e)—overview, survey, synopsis; perspective
überdies (adv.)—besides, moreover
überdrüssig—bored with
der **Überdruß** (or **Überdruss**) (-sses)—boredom, ennui
übereinander (adv.)—one upon the other, about each other
überein-kommen (irr. v.i.) &
überein-stimmen (v.i.)—to agree, to reach an agreement
über-fallen—to come over
der **Überfluß** (or **Überfluss**) (-sses)—abundance, plenty, wealth, superfluity
überflüssig (adj.)—superfluous
überfragen (v.t. & i.)—to overwhelm with questions; **ich bin überfragt**—I don't know
der **Übergang** (-s, ¨-e)—transition, conversion; crossing
übergeben (irr. v.t. insep.)—to hand over; to entrust; to surrender
übergehen (kr. v.i., aux.s.)—to overflow, to merge; to change; (sep. v.t.)—to overlook
überhaupt (adv.)—on the whole, generally; **überhaupt nicht**—not at all
überhin (adv.)—superficially, sketchily
überholen (v.t.)—to overtake, to surpass
überholt—antiquated
über-kochen (i.)—to boil over
überlassen (irr. v.t., insep.)—to relinquish, abandon
überlaufen (irr. v.t. insep.)—to overrun, to seize; (sep. i., aux.s.)—to overflow

überleben (v.t., insep.)—to survive, outlive
** **überlegen** (v.t. & i.)—to reflect on; think, consider
** **überlegen** (adj.)—superior to
überliefern (v.t. insep.) —to deliver, hand over, hand down
die **Überlieferung**—tradition
übermäßig (adj.)—excessive
der **Übermut** (-s)—high spirits; arrogance
übernehmen (irr. v.t., insep.)—to accept, receive, to take charge of; (v.r., insep.)—to overexert, take on too much
überparteilich (adj.)—non-partisan
überraschen (v.t.)—to surprise
überreden (v.t. insep.)—to persuade; **sich überreden lassen**—to let oneself be persuaded
überschätzen (v.t.)—to overestimate (insep.)
der **Überschlag** (-s, ¨e)—(rough) estimate
über-schreiten—to cross over
** **übersehen** (irr. v.t.)—to survey, glance over; to overlook, fail to notice
übersetzen (v.t.)—to translate
die **Übersicht**—survey, review, outline, synopsis
überstehen (irr. v.t., insep.) & **übersteigen** (irr. v.t., insep.)—to transcend; get through; survive
** die **Übertragung**—transference; translation; communication; broadcast
übertreiben (irr. v.t., insep.)—to exaggerate
der **Übertritt** (-es, -e)—conversion
übervoll—overflowing
überwältigen (v.t., insep.)—to defeat; overcome; overwhelm
überwinden (irr. v.t., insep.)—to overcome, prevail over
die **Überwindung**—overcoming, self-control
überzeugen (v.t.)—to convince, persuade
die **Überzeugung** (-en)—conviction
üblich (adj.)—usual, customary
übrig (adj.)—left over, remaining
übrigens (adv.)—by the way, moreover
die **Übung** (-en)—exercise, practice
das **Ufer** (-s, -)—shore
* die **Uhr** (-en)—clock, watch, o'clock, hour; **um fünf Uhr**—at five o'clock
das **Uhrwerk** (-es, -e)—clockwork; clock
* **um** (prep.) with acc.—at (with time), around (with place); **um ... willen** (prep.) with gen.—for the sake of; **um ... zu**—in order to (conj.); **die Zeit ist um**—the time is up
die **Umarbeitung**—adaptation
umarmen—to embrace
um-bringen (irr. v.t.)—to kill
um-deuten (v.t.)—to give a new meaning or interpretation to
um-drehen (v.t.)—to turn, rotate
um-fallen (i., aux.s.)—to fall down
der **Umfang** (-es, ¨e)—circumference, extent, range, volume
um-fassen (v.t.)—to enclose, to surround; to include
umfassend—complete, comprehensive
die **Umfrage**—survey
der **Umgang**—contact; acquaintances

die **Umgebung**—surroundings, environment, background
um-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to circulate; **umgehen (mit)**—to deal with, associate with; **mit etwas umgehen**—to be occupied with; (v.t., insep.)—to evade, avoid
umgekehrt (adj.)—opposite, reverse; (adv.)—on the contrary
um-gestalten (v.t.)—to alter, transform; to reform; to reorganize
umher (adv.)—about, around; all around
um-hüllen (v.t., insep.)—to envelop, cover; to veil
um-kehren (v.i., aux.s.)—to turn around, to reform; (v.t.)—to overturn
um-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to perish
der **Umriß** (or **Umriss**) (-sses, -sse)—sketch, outline
** der **Umschlag** (-s, ¨-e)—sudden change; envelope
um-schließen (irr. v.t.)—to enclose, surround; include
um-setzen (v.t.)—to shift, transfer; translate ideas into action, convert
die **Umsicht**—caution, prudence
umsonst (adj.)—for nothing; in vain
der **Umstand** (-es, ¨-e)—circumstance; situation; (pl.)—particulars, details; **unter Umständen**—in certain cases; **Umstände machen**—to cause trouble
umständlich (adj.)—circumstantial; complicated, intricate
umwälzend (adj.)—involved; radical
der **Umweg** (-es, -e)—roundabout way; **auf Umwegen**—indirectly
die **Umwelt**—environment
um-werfen—to knock over
um-werten (v.t.)—to revalue, reassess
un- (neg. pref.)—un-, in-, non
unabänderlich (adj.)—unalterable
unabhängig (adj.)—independent (von)—of, or irrespective of
unablässig (adj.)—incessant
unbedacht (adj.)—inconsiderate, careless, indiscrete
unbedingt (adj.)—unconditional, absolute; (adv.)—in any case, by all means
das **Unbehagen** (-s)—discomfort, malaise
unbeholfen (adj.)—clumsy
unbekannt—unfamiliar
unbesehen—indiscriminately
* **und** (conj.)—and; **und zwar**—that is; **und so weiter** (usw.)—and so on (etc.)
unendlich (adj.)—infinite
unersättlich—insatiable
der **Unfall** (-es, ¨-e)—accident
unfreiwillig—involuntarily
der **Unfug** (-es)—nonsense; mischief
ungeachtet (prep.) with gen.—despite, notwithstanding
* **ungefähr** (adj.)—approximate, casual; (adv.)—about
ungeheuer (adj.)—huge, immense, monstrous; outrageous
ungelenk (adj.)—awkward
ungemein (adj.)—immense
ungern (adv.)—reluctantly
unglaubwürdig (adj.)—implausible
ungleichmäßig—irregular
das **Unglück** (-es, -e)—misfortune, unhappiness
unheimlich (adj.)—frightening, eerie, sinister

die **Universität** (-en)—university

* **unmittelbar** (adj.)—immediate; (adv.)—directly

unnütz (adj.)—useless, superfluous

* **unmöglich**—impossible

unruhig—restless

* **uns**—us

unsäglich—unspeakable

die **Unschuld**—innocence

unser—our

unten (adv.)—below, underneath

* **unter** (prep.) with acc. or dat.—under, among; **unter anderem**—among other things; **unter diesem Gesetz stehen**—to be subject to the law; **unter diesem Gesichtspunkt**—from this point of view; **unter vier Augen**—face-to-face

unter- (noun and verb pref.)—usually, when the verb has a literal meaning, it is separable, and when it has a figurative meaning, it is inseparable

unterbrechen (irr. v.t.)—to interrupt

unter-bringen (irr. v.t.)—to shelter

unterdrücken (v.t.)—to oppress; suppress; repress

untereinander (adv.)—between or with each other

der **Untergang** (-s, ¨e)—setting, sinking; ruin, decline, end

unterhalten (irr. v.t.)—to support; (v.r.)—to converse

die **Unterlage** (-n)—support; proof, evidence, voucher; document

unterlassen (irr. v.t.)—to discontinue, refrain, neglect (to do something)

unternehmen (irr. v.t.)—to undertake

der **Unterricht** (-s, -e)—instruction

unterscheiden (irr. v.t.)—to distinguish, differentiate

der **Unterschied** (-s, -e)—difference

die **Unterschrift** (-en)—signature, caption

die **Untersuchung**—examination, investigation; scrutiny

unterwegs (adv.)—on the way, en route

die **Unterwelt**—underworld

unterziehen (irr. v.t.)—to submit; (v.r.)—to submit, undergo

unumgänglich (adj.)—essential

unverhofft (adj.)—unexpected

unverkennbar—undeniable

unvollkommen (adj.)—incomplete

unzählig—countless

die **Unze** (-n)—ounce

üppig (adj.)—abundant; opulent; lush

* **ur-** (pref.)—indicates origin or source or being primitive

uralt (adj.)—very old

die **Urkunde**—deed, document

der **Urlaub** (-es, -e)—leave of absence

die **Ursache** (-n)—cause, reason, origin, motive

die **Ursächlichkeit**—causality

der **Ursprung** (-s, ¨e)—source, origin, beginning, cause

das **Urteil** (-s, -e)—judgement, decision, opinion, view, sentence, verdict

urweltlich (adj.)—primeval

V

die **Variante**—variant reading

der **Vater** (-s, ¨)—father

das **Vaterland**—native country

das **Venedig**—Venice
ver- (insep. pref. to some verbs, and pref. to some nouns)—removal, loss; reversal; expenditure; alteration; intensification; changing nouns or adj. into verbs
verabreden (v.t.)—to agree upon, arrange; (v.r.)—to make an appointment
verabschieden (v.t.)—to dismiss
verachten (v.t.)—to despise
veralten (v.i., aux.s.)—to go out of date, become obsolete
veranlassen (v.t.)—to cause, bring about, give rise to
verändern—to change
die **Verantwortung**—responsibility
verärgern (v.t.)—to anger, vex
der **Verband** (-es, ¨e)—association
verbergen, verbirgt, verbarg, hat verborgen—to conceal
verbessern—to improve
verbieten, verbot, hat verboten—to forbid
verbinden (irr. v.t.)—to unite, combine, connect
verbindlich (adj.)—binding
verblüffen (v.t.)—to amaze
verblühen (i., aux.s.)—to wither
** **verborgen** (v.t.)—to lend out; **verborgen** (adj.)—hidden, concealed
der **Verbrauch** (-s)—consumption, expenditure
verbrechen (irr. v.t.)—to commit (a crime or an offence)
verbreiten (v.t. & r.)—to spread, circulate, propagate; (v.r.)—to hold forth
verbrennen—to burn
die **Verbundenheit**—solidarity
der **Verdacht** (-s)—suspicion, distrust
verderben, verdarb, hat verdorben (v.t.)—to spoil, corrupt, demoralize; (v.i., aux.s.)—to spoil, deteriorate, perish
verdichten (v.t.)—to condense; concentrate; (v.r.)—to take shape (in one's mind)
verdienen (v.t.)—to earn, gain, deserve
verdrängen (v.t.)—to drive out
der **Verdruß** (or **Verdruss**) (-sses, -sse)—displeasure, frustration
verdunkeln (v.t.)—to darken, to obscure; to grow dim
verehren (v.t.)—to admire, to honor
der **Verein** (-s, -e)—organization, society; union, club
vereinbaren (v.t.)—to agree upon
vereinigen (v.t.)—to unite, combine; die **Vereinigten Staaten**—the United States; **sich vereinigen lassen**—to be compatible
vereinsamen (i., aux.s.)—to become isolated
verewigen (v.t.)—to immortalize
verfahren (irr. v.i.)—to act, behave, proceed; (v.t.)—to spend; (v.r.)—to lose one's way
der **Verfall** (-es)—decay, decline
** **verfallen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to deteriorate; to expire; to come into the power or possession of
die **Verfassung** (-en)—state or frame of mind; constitution
verfechten (irr. v.t.)—to defend
verfeinern (v.t.)—to refine, improve
verfluchen—to curse
verfolgen (v.t.)—to follow, persecute
die **Verfügung**—disposal; decree; arrangement; **ihr zur Verfügung stehen**—to be at her disposal

verführen (v.t.)—to lead astray; to seduce; to prevail upon
vergangen (adj.)—past, gone
* die **Vergangenheit**—past
** **vergeben** (irr. v.t.)—to award; to give away; to forgive
vergebens (adv.)—in vain
** **vergehen** (irr. v.i., aux.s)—to pass or fade away; to die off; (v.r.)—to err, offend, transgress
vergelten—to repay, reward
* **vergessen, vergaß, hat vergessen** (v.t.)—to forget; in **Vergessenheit geraten**—to fall into oblivion
* **vergleichen, verglich, hat verglichen** (v.t.)—to compare; (v.r.)—to reach a settlement
der **Vergleich**—comparison
vergnügen (v.t.)—to amuse, delight; (v.r.)—to enjoy oneself
vergönnen (v.t.)—to permit, allow, grant
vergöttern (v.t.)—to deify, idolize
vergrößern (v.t.)—to enlarge, magnify; to exaggerate; (v.r.)—to grow larger, increase
verhaften (v.t.)—to arrest; **verhaftet**—closely bound to, dependent on
verhalten (irr. v.r.)—to behave, to conduct oneself
das **Verhältnis** (-sses, -sse)—relation, proportion; situation, financial state; circumstances; condition
verhältnismäßig (adj.)—relative
verhandeln (v.t.)—to negotiate; (v.i.)—to discuss, debate
verhängen (v.t.)—to impose, cover
verharren (v.i., aux.s. & h.)—to continue; remain; persist
verheiraten (v.r.)—to marry
verheißen (irr. v.t.)—to promise; **Land der Verheißung**—Promised Land
verhetzen (v.t.)—to stir up
das **Verhör** (-es, -e)—interrogation
verhungern (v.i.)—to starve
verirren (v.r.)—to lose one's way
verjagen—to chase away
verkaufen—to sell
** der **Verkehr**—traffic; communication; sexual or social intercourse; trade
verkehrt (adj.)—wrong
verkennen (irr. v.t.)—to misjudge
verkörpern (v.t.)—to embody, typify, represent
verkünd(ig)en (v.t.)—to announce, publish, proclaim; to preach
der **Verlag** (-s, -e)—publishing house
verlangen (v.t.)—to demand, claim, call for
verlängern—to lengthen
verlassen (irr. v.t.)—to leave, quit, abandon; (v.r.)—to rely upon, depend on
der **Verlauf** (-s, ¨-e)—course; end; issue
** **verlegen** (v.t.)—to transfer; to misplace; to delay; (adj.) —embarrassed
der **Verleger** (-s, -)—publisher
verleiten (v.t.)—to lead astray
verletzen (v.t.)—to hurt, injure
verleugnen (v.t.)—to deny, disown, (v.r.)—**sich nicht verleugnen**—to become clear
* **verlieren, verlor, hat verloren** (v.t. & i.)—to lose
verlöschen (v.t.)—to extinguish
der **Verlust** (-es, -e)—loss
vermehren (v.t.)—to increase

vermeiden, vermied, hat vermieden (v.t.)—to avoid, shun, escape from
vermitteln (v.i.)—to mediate; (v.t.)—to adjust, arrange, settle; to impart
das **Vermögen** (-s, -)—ability; fortune; property
vermögen (irr. v.t.)—to be able to; **er vermag** — he is able to
vermutlich (adj. & adv.)—presumably, probably
vernachlässigen (v.t.)—to neglect
vernehmlich (adj.)—perceptible
vernichten (v.t.)—to annihilate, eradicate; to destroy
die **Vernunft**—reason, understanding; common-sense; **vernünftig**—reasonable, sensible
veröffentlichen (v.t.)—to publish
die **Verpflichtung**—obligation
verraten (irr. v.i.)—to betray, divulge
verrichten—to execute, to do
verrückt (adj.)—mad, crazy
verrufen (adj.)—disreputable
der **Vers** (-es, e)—verse, poetry, line
versagen (v.t.)—to deny; (v.i.)—to fail
versammeln (v.t.)—to assemble, to gather, collect; die **Versammlung**—assembly, collection
versäumen (v.t.)—to miss, omit
das **Versäumnis** (-ses, -se)—failing, omission
verschärfen (v.t.)—to heighten, to intensify
verschellen—to shatter
verschieben (irr. v.t.)—to move, change (v.r.)—to shift
verschieden (adj.)—different
verschließen—to close; lock up
verschlingen (irr. v.t.)—to entwine; devour
verschmähen (v.t.)—to disdain, to reject
verschüttet—buried, submerged
verschwinden (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to vanish, disappear
****versehen** (irr. v.t.)—to provide; (v.r.)—to make a mistake
versetzen (v.t.)—to transfer, displace; to put, place; die **Versetzung**—mixing, transfer
die **Versicherung**—insurance, assurance; affirmation
versöhnen (v.t.)—to reconcile
verspäten (v.r.)—to be delayed
versprechen (irr. v.t.)—to promise
der **Verstand** (-s)—mind, intellect; understanding, reason
* **verstehen** (irr. v.t.)—to understand, comprehend, grasp; (v.r.)—to be in agreement with; **das versteht sich von selbst**—that goes without saying
verstellen (v.t.)—to adjust; to disguise, to block
verstricken (v.t.)—to involve
* **versuchen** (v.t.)—to attempt, try
die **Versuchung** (-en)—temptation
versunken—lost; sunk
die **Versunkenheit**—engrossment
verteidigen (v.t. & r.)—to justify, to defend
vertiefen—to deepen; **sich vertiefen in**—to become absorbed in
der **Vertrag** (-es, -e)—treaty, contract, covenant
vertragen (irr. v.t.)—to endure, tolerate (v.r.)—to get on well
vertraut (adj.)—familiar

vertreiben (irr. v.t.)—to drive away; disperse, scatter; banish
vertreten (irr. v.t.)—to replace, represent; to support
der **Vertreter** (-s, -)—adherent, representative
verurteilen (v.t.)—to condemn
die **Verwaltung**—administration
die **Verwandlung**—change, transformation; metamorphosis
verwandt (adj.)—related; allied
verweigern (v.t.)—to refuse
verwenden (v.t.)—to use, employ
verwirren (v.t.)—to confuse
verzehren (v.t.)—to consume; (v.r.)—to languish
das **Verzeichnis** (-ses, -se)—list, table, schedule, catalogue
verzeihen (irr. v.t. & i.)—to forgive
verzerren (v.t.)—to distort
verzichten (v.i.) (auf)—to renounce, abandon
verzögern (v.t.)—to defer, delay
der **Verzug** (-es)—delay, postponement
verzweifeln (v.i., aux.s.)—to despair
* **viel** (adj., adv.)—much, a great deal; **viele** (pl.)—many
* **vgl. (vergleiche)**—cf. (compare)
vielfach (adj.)—multiple repeated; (adv.)—often
vielfältig (adj.)—varied
* **vielleicht** (adv.)—perhaps, maybe, possibly; really
* **vielmehr** (adv.)—rather
das **Viertel** (-s, -)—quarter
der **Vogel** (-s, ¨)—bird
* das **Volk** (-es, ¨er)—people, nation; masses
die **Völkerkunde**—ethnology
* **Volks-** (in compounds)—popular, national; public
* **voll** (adj.)—sometimes with gen. or with von—full, filled, complete, whole
voll- (pref.)—signifying completion, accomplishment
vollbringen (irr. v.t.)—to accomplish, achieve
vollenden (v.t.)—to complete
völlig (adj.)—full, complete
vollkommen (adj.)—perfect, complete
die **Vollmacht** (-en)—(legal) power of authority
vollziehen (irr. v.t.)—to carry out; accomplish, execute
* **von** (prep.) with dat.—of; from; by
* **vor** (prep.) with dat. or acc.—before, in front of, in the presence of; ***ago***; in preference to; **vor allem**—above all; **vor Angst**—with fear; **vor Freude**—with joy; **Achtung vor dem Gesetz**—respect for the law; **vor drei Jahren**—three years ago; **vor Hunger sterben**—to die of hunger; **vor Zeiten**—formerly
vor-arbeiten (v.t.)—to prepare; (v.i.)—to pave the way
voraus (adv.)—in advance
voraus-berechnen—to calculate in advance
die **Voraussage** (-n)—prediction
voraus-setzen (v.i.)—to presuppose, to suppose, assume; die **Voraussetzung**—the presupposition; prerequisite
vorbei (adv.)—along, by, past, gone
vor-bereiten (v.t.)—to prepare

der **Vorbericht** (-s, -e)—introduction, preface
das **Vorbild** (-s, -er)—model, example
vorder (adj.)—fore, forward
der **Vordergrund** (-s, -e)—foreground
vorderhand (adv.)—for the present
voreingenommen (adj.)—prejudiced
vor-fallen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to occur, happen
vorfinden—to find; to discover
der **Vorgang** (-s, ¨-e)—proceedings
vor-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to take precedence; to take action; to happen, occur
vorgenannt (adj.)—aforementioned
die **Vorgeschichte**—prehistory, past or previous history
vor-haben (irr. v.t.)—to have in mind; to be engaged in; to intend
vorhanden (adj.)—at hand; available
vorher (adv.)—previously, before
vorig (adj.)—former, previous
vor-kommen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to occur; to seem, appear
die **Vorlage**—model, pattern, copy
vorläufig (adj.)—preliminary; (adv.) —temporarily
die **Vorlesung**—lecture, course
vorn (adv.)—in the front
vornehm (adj.)—distinguished; noble
vor-nehmen (v.r.)—to resolve
der **Vorrang** (-s)—preeminence, precedence
der **Vorschein**—**zum Vorschein kommen**—to appear, to turn up
der **Vorschlag** (-s, ¨-e)—proposition, proposal, suggestion
vor-schlagen—to suggest
die **Vorschrift** (-en)—regulation
vor-sehen (irr. v.t.)—to provide for; (v.r.)—to be careful
die **Vorsicht**—caution, care, prudence
* **vorsichtig**—careful, cautious
vor-singen (i.)—to sing to
der **Vorstand** (-es, ¨-e)—committee
vor-stecken—to poke out or forward
* **vor-stellen** (v.r.)—to introduce; to imagine, to suppose
die **Vorstellung**—representation; notion, conception; performance
vor-täuschen—to feign
der **Vorteil** (-es, -e)—advantage
der **Vortrag** (-es, -e)—lecture
vorüber (adv.)—along, by, past
das **Vorurteil** (-s, -e)—prejudice
vorwärts (adv.)—forward
vor-weisen (irr. v.t.)—to show, display; possess
vorwitzig—impertinent
das **Vorwort** (-s, ¨-er)—preface, introduction
der **Vorwurf** (-s, ¨-e)—reproach, rebuke
vorwurfsvoll—reproachful
die **Vorzeit**—antiquity, past ages
vor-ziehen (irr. v.t.)—to prefer
der **Vorzug** (-es, ¨-e)—preference

W

die **Waage** (-n)—scales, balance
wachen (i.)—to be awake
wachsam (adj.)—vigilant

wachsen, wuchs, ist gewachsen (v.i.)—to grow, expand
der **Wächter** (-s, -)—guard
wacker (adj.)—valiant; honest
die **Waffe** (-n)—weapon
wagen (v.t.)—to venture, risk
wählen (v.i.)—to choose, elect
der **Wahn**—illusion, madness, mania
wahnsinnig (adj.)—crazy, mad
* **wahr** (adj.)—true, genuine, real
* die **Wahrheit** (-en)—truth
* **während** (prep.) with gen.—in the course of, during; (conj.) —while
wahrlich (adj.)—truly; certainly
wahr-nehmen (irr. v.t.)—to notice, perceive; distinguish
der **Wahrsager** (-s, -)—prophet
* **wahrscheinlich** (adj. & adv.) — probable; probably
der **Wald** (-es, ⸚er)—woods
der **Wall** (-es, ⸚e)—rampart, wall
walten (v.i.)—to rule, govern; to carry out; prevail
wälzen—to roll
die **Wand** (⸚e)—wall
wandeln (v.t. or r.)—to change
wanken (v.i., aux.s. or h.)—to rock, sway, vacillate
* **wann** (adv. & conj. & interr.) — when
wärmen (v.t.)— to warm
die **Warnung** (-en)—warning
die **Warte**—viewpoint
* **warten** (v.i.)—to wait (auf) —for; (v.t.)—to attend to
* **warum**—why
* **was** (inter, pron.)—what, whatever; (rel. pron.)—what, that, which; **alles** (everything), **etwas** (something) and **nichts** (nothing), **was**—that

waschen, wäscht, wusch, hat gewaschen (t. & r.)—to wash
das **Wasser** (-s, -)—water
die **Wasserscheu**—hydrophobia
der **Wechsel** (-s, -)—change, alteration, variation
wechseln—to change
* **weder... noch** (conj.)—neither ... nor
* der **Weg** (-es, -e)—way, road, path, course; **den Weg bereiten**—to pave the way; **ihr im Wege stehen**—to be or stand in her way
* **weg** (adv.)—away, gone
weg- (pref.)—away, etc.
weg-bleiben (i., aux.s.)—to stay away
* **wegen** (prep.) with gen. —because of
weg-werfen—to throw away
weh—alas!; **ihnen weh tun**—to hurt them, to grieve or wound or offend them
wehren (v.r.)—to defend oneself
das **Weib** (-es, -er)—wife, woman, spouse
weiblich (adj.)—female; feminine
weich (adj.)—soft, mild, yielding
die **Weiche stellen**—to set the course
weichen, wich, ist gewichen (v.i.) —to move; to retreat
weigern (v.r.)—to refuse, decline
weihen (v.t.)—to consecrate, inaugurate
die **Weihnachten** (literally: holy nights)—Christmas
* **weil** (conj.)—because, since
die **Weile** (-n)—while
der **Wein** (-s, -e)—wine
weinen (v.i.)—to cry

der **Weintrinker** (-s, -)—wine drinker

* **weise** (adj.)—wise

* die **Weise** (-n)—manner, custom, way

** **weise** (adj. & n. & suff.) —denotes manner

weisen, wies, hat gewiesen (v.t.) —to show, point out, indicate; to refer to

* die **Weisheit**—wisdom

* **weiß** (adj.)—white, clean, blank

* **weiß (v.)—er, sie,** or **es weiß** —see **wissen**—to know

* **weit** (adj.)—wide, broad; (adv.) —far off, widely, by far; **bei weitem**—by far, much

* **weiter** (comp. adj. and sep. pref.) —farther, further; (adv.) —farther; furthermore

weiter-gehen (v.i., aux.s., irr.)—to go on, continue

weiterhin (adv.)—furthermore, moreover

weitgehend (adj.)—far-reaching, extensive; (adv.)—largely

* **welch** (indecl. pron.)—**welch eine Frau**—what a woman!; (inter, adj.) —which (inter. pron.)—which, who; (rel. pron.)—which, what, who, whom; (rel. adj.)—which, whichever; whatever

* die **Welt** (-en)—world

* die **Weltanschauung** (-en)—philosophy of life, view; outlook, ideology

der **Weltkrieg** (-s, -e)—world war

der **Weltraum-** (in compounds) —space

die **Wende**—change, turn

wenden, wandte, hat gewandt (v. r.)—to turn

der **Wendepunkt** (-s, ¨-e)—turning point

* **wenig** (adj. & adv.)—little; **ein wenig**—a little; with pl.—***few***; **die wenigen Male, daß**—the few times that

wenigstens (adv.)—at least

* **wenn** (conj.)—when, whenever; if; wenn with subjunctive is *always* if; **wenn auch**—even if

* **wer** (pron.)—who, which; wen—whom; wem—whom, to whom; **wessen**—whose

* **werden, wurde, ist geworden** (irr. v., aux.s.)—to become, to grow, to turn, to get; **es wird dunkel**—it is getting dark; **es wurde dunkel**—it grew dark; **es ist dunkel geworden**—it has become dark; werden & an infinitive denotes the future—**sie wird hier sein**—she will be here; **sie werden das tun können**—they will be able to do that; werden & a participle is the passive—**es wird oft gesagt**—***it is often said***; **es wurde oft getan**—it was often done

werfen, warf, hat geworfen (v.t. & i.)—to throw, cast, fling; to overthrow, upset

das **Werk** (-es, -e)—act, deed; undertaking; publication, book, work

der **Werktag** (-s, -e)—workday

* **wert** (adj.)—valued, useful; with gen.—worth; **nicht der Mühe wert**—not worth the effort

* der **Wert** (-es, -e)—value, worth, price; **die Werte** (usually)—the values

das **Wesen** (-s, -e)—essence; nature, entity, being, creature; state, condition, nature, character; conduct

wesenhaft (adj.)—real; intrinsic; essential
wesentlich (adj.)—essential, substantial, fundamental, intrinsic
weshalb (inter pron.)—why; (conj.)—on account of which; which is why
wessen—whose
der **Westen** (-s)—the west, the Occident
weswegen—on what account
die **Wette** (-n)—wager
das **Wetter**—weather; bad weather
* **wichtig** (adj.)—important, serious
wickeln (v.t.)—to wind; to wrap
* **wider** (prep.) with acc.—against, in opposition to
wider- (sep. and insep. verb pref., & noun pref.)—counter-, contra-, anti-, re-, with-
widerlegen (v.t.)—to refute
widerlich (adj.)—loathsome, repugnant
widerrufen (irr. v.t.)—to revoke
widersprechen (irr. v.i.)—to contradict
der **Widerstand** (-s, ¨e)—opposition, resistance
widerwärtig (adj.)—disagreeable, hateful, offensive
widmen (v.t.)—to dedicate; (v.r.)—to devote oneself
* **wie** (adv.)—how?, to what extent?; however; **wie dem auch sei**—however that may be; (conj.)—as, like, such as; **wie gesagt**—as has been stated; **wie oben**—as above; how; **ich weiß nicht, wie ich das tun kann**—I don't know how I can do that
* **wieder** (adv.)—again, once more; **immer wieder**—again & again
wieder- (noun and verb pref., usually sep.)— re-, back- (again), in return (for)
wieder-aufbereiten (v.t.)—to recycle
die **Wiederauferstehung**—resurrection
** **wieder-geben** (irr. v.t.)—to return; (art)— to reproduce; to interpret; to quote (from a text)
wiederholen (v.t.)—to repeat; (v.r.)—to be repeated, to recur
die **Wiederholung** (-en)—repetition
die **Wiederkehr**—the return, recurrence
wieder-kehren (i., aux.s.)—to return
wieder-kommen (i., aux.s.)—to return
wiegen, wog, hat gewogen (v.t.)—to weigh; to carry weight
wieviel—how much
* der **Wille** (-ns, no pl.)—will, volition; intent, wish; **mit Willen**—on purpose; **willen** (prep.)—with gen. —**um ... willen**—for the sake of; **um seinetwillen**—for his sake
willkürlich (adj.)—arbitrary, despotic
der **Wind** (-es, -e)—wind
die **Windmühle** (-n)—windmill
der **Wink** (-es, -e)—sign, wink, hint, suggestion
winken (v.i.)—to signal, wave; wink
der **Winter** (-s)—winter
winzig (adj.)—tiny, minute
* **wir**—we
wirken (v.t.)—to cause, to work; (v.i.)—to work, operate; have an effect; to appear

* **wirklich** (adj.)—actual, real
* die **Wirklichkeit**—reality
wirksam (adj.)—effective
die **Wirkung** (-en)—result, effect, consequence, impact
der **Wirrwar**—confusion
* die **Wirtschaft** (-en)—economic system, economy; state of affairs; **freie Wirtschaft**—free enterprise; inn
wirtschaftlich—economic
der **Wirtschaftsplan** (-s, ¨-e) — budget
* **wissen, wußte, hat gewußt** (v.t.) —to know, be acquainted with, understand; **er will davon nichts wissen**—he'll have nothing to do with it; (v.i.)—to know (um) of or about; **ich weiß nicht recht**—I don't really know
das **Wissen**—knowledge; learning, education; **meines Wissens** —as far as I know
* die **Wissenschaft** (-en)—science; knowledge
der **Wissenschaftler** (-s, -)—scientist, scholar
wissenschaftlich—scientific
wittern (v.t.)—to smell; to sense
der **Witz** (-es, -e)—joke
* **wo** (inter.)—where; (rel.)—where, in which; (conj.)—where, when; **es gab Zeiten, wo** —there were times when...
wobei (rel. adv.)—through which, whereby, in the course of which
die **Woche** (-n)—week
woher (rel. and inter, adv.)—from where; from what or which place
wohin (rel. and inter, adv.)—where to; —(indef. adv.) somewhere
* **wohl** (pred. adj. & adv.)—well; indeed; possibly; presumably; **das ist wohl möglich**—I suppose that is possible
wohlbedacht (adj.)—deliberate, well-considered
* **wohnen** (v.i.)—to live, dwell
die **Wohnung** (-en)—apartment
der **Wolf** (-es, ¨-e)—wolf
die **Wolke** (-n)—cloud
die **Wolle** (-n)—wool
* **wollen** (modal)—to be willing; to wish, want, desire; to be about to do; to claim, require, demand; **ich wollte, ich wäre**—I wish I were
worden (past. perf. of *werden*)—been
* das **Wort** (-es, ¨-er or -e) (¨-er with unconnected words, in all other cases, the pl. is -e)—word, term, expression; **mit anderen Worten**—in other words
das **Wörterbuch** (-es, ¨-er)—dictionary
wörtlich (adj.)—literal
das **Wortspiel** (-s, -e)—pun
die **Wortstammkunde**—etymology
die **Wunde** (-n)—wound
wundern (v.r.)—to be surprised by
der **Wunsch** (-es, ¨-e)—wish, desire
* **wünschen** (t. & i.)—to wish
wünschenswert—desirable
die **Würde**—dignity, propriety; **akademische Würde**—academic degree; **unter meiner Würde**—beneath my dignity
würdigen—to value
der **Wurm** (-es, ¨-er)—worm
die **Wurzel** (-n)—root
wüst (adj.)—desolate, wild
die **Wüste** (-n)—desert

die **Wut**—rage, fury
wütend—enraged

X

x-mal (adv.)—any number of times

Z

* **z.B.**—**zum Beispiel**—for example
zaghaft—timid
zäh(e)—tough, tenacious, stubborn
die **Zahl** (-en)—number, figure
zahlen (v.t. & i.)—to pay for
zählen (v.t. & i.)—to count, reckon
zahm (adj.)—tame, docile, cultivated
zähmen—to tame
der **Zahn** (-es, ¨-e)—tooth
der **Zank** (-es, no pl.)—quarrel
zänkisch—quarrelsome, cranky
der **Zar** (-en, -en)—tsar, czar
zart (adj.)—delicate, soft, gentle
der **Zauber** (-s, -)—spell, charm, magic
* **zehn**—ten
zehren (v.i.)—to live or exist; to draw on; to wear something out
das **Zeichen** (-s, -)—sign, symbol; mark, reference
zeichnen (v.t. & i.)—to draw, sketch, portray; depict
der **Zeichner** (-s, -)—designer, portrayer
* **zeigen** (v.t.)—to show, display, indicate; (v.r.)—to show oneself, to appear; es **zeigt sich, daß**—it appears that
der **Zeiger** (-s, -)—hand of a clock
* die **Zeit** (-en)—time, epoch, age, era, period, season; es **ist an der Zeit**—it is time; **in früherer Zeit**—formerly; **in jüngster or neuester Zeit**—quite recently; **in letzter Zeit**—recently; **mit der Zeit**—in the course of time; **vor der Zeit**—premature; **zur Zeit**—at present
der **Zeitabschnitt** (-s, -e)—period, epoch
das **Zeitalter** (-s, -)—age, era; generation
der **Zeitgeist**—spirit of the times
der **Zeitgenosse (-n, -n)**—contemporary
die **Zeitgeschichte**—contemporary history
zeitig (adj.)—early; (adv.)—early, on time
zeitlich (adj.)—temporal, transitory
der **Zeitraum** (-s, ¨-e)—interval; period, space of time
die **Zeitschrift** (-en)—journal, magazine, periodical
die **Zeitung** (-en)—newspaper
zerbrechen (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to break into pieces; to be destroyed, to collapse
die **Zeremonie**—ceremony
der **Zerfall**—ruin, decay, disintegration
zerreißen—to rip into pieces
zerschmettern—to smash
zerschneiden—to cut into pieces
die **Zersetzungsliteratur**—seditious or subversive literature
zerstören (v.t.)—to destroy
** **zerstreuen** (v.t.)—to disperse, dissipate, scatter, dispel; (v.r.) —to amuse oneself; **sich zerstreuen lassen**—to allow one's attention to wander
zertreten—to crush, trample under foot

der **Zettel** (-s, -)—note, slip of paper
das **Zeug** (-es, -e)—stuff
zeugen (v.i.)—to bear witness, to testify; (v.t.)—to procreate, beget; to create
das **Zeugnis** (-ses, -se)—evidence
die **Ziege** (-n)—goat
* **ziehen, zog, hat gezogen** (v.t.)—to draw, pull; to cultivate, grow; to describe; **an sich ziehen**—to attract; (v.i.)—to prove attractive; (v.i., aux.s.)—to march, advance; (v.r.)—to stretch, extend; to distort
das **Ziel** (-es, -e)—goal, aim; objective, destination
* **ziemlich** (adj.)—considerable; (adv.)—rather, quite
die **Zierde** (-n)—decoration
zieren (v.t.)—to adorn; (v.r.) —to be affected; to make a fuss
die **Ziffer** (-n)—figure; clause; item
zirka (adv.)—approximately
das **Zitat** (-es, -e)—quotation
zittern (v.i.)—to tremble, shake (vor) with
** **zivil** (adj.)—civilian
die **Zivilisation**—civilization (especially in its technological aspects)
zögern (v.i.)—to hesitate; to delay; to defer
der **Zoo** (-s, -s)—zoo
der **Zorn** (-es, no pl.)—wrath, anger
* **zu** (prep.) with dat.—towards, up to; **zur Folge haben**—to have as a result; at, on, in: **zu Bonn**—in Bonn; **zur Hand** at hand; **zu Hause**—at home; **zum ersten**—in the first place; **zur Nacht**—at or by night
* **zu** (adv.)—too; closed
* **zu** (part.)—**um ... zu**—in order to; **ohne zu**—without-ing; **anstatt zu**—instead of
* **zu** (inf. used passively after sein) **ihm ist zu trauen**—he is to be (or can be) trusted; **es ist zu sehen**—it is to be seen
zu- (sep. pref.)—towards, closed
die **Zucht** (-en)—education, training, discipline, decency, propriety, manners
der **Zucker** (-s)—sugar
zuckern—to sugar; to put sugar in
zudem (adv.)—besides, moreover
zudringlich (adj.)—intrusive
zu-eignen (v.t.)—to dedicate
zuerst (adv.)—first; at first; first of all, especially
der **Zufall** (-es, ¨e)—chance, accident
** **zu-fallen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to fall to (one's) lot; to close
zufällig (adj.)—accidental; chance
zufolge (prep.)—preceded by dat. or followed by gen.—as a result of
zufrieden (adj.)—contented, satisfied
die **Zufriedenheit**—satisfaction
* der **Zug** (-es, ¨e)—train; course; **Zug der Ereignisse**—course of events; outline; characteristic; trait
der **Zugang** (-es, ¨e)—admittance, entry, access
zu-geben (irr. v.t.)—to grant, concede, admit, confess; to add
** **zu-gehen** (irr. v.i., aux.s.)—to happen, come to pass; to go, move towards; to close; to reach
zu-gestehen (irr. v.t.)—to concede, acknowledge; admit
zugleich (adv.)—at the same time
* **zugrunde** (adv.)—**zugrunde gehen**—to perish, be ruined; **zugrunde liegen**—to take as a basis

zu-hören (i.)—to listen to

* die **Zukunft**—future

** **zu-lassen** (irr. v.t.)—to grant, permit; to leave closed

zuletzt (adv.)—finally, ultimately, at last

zu-machen—to close

zumal (adv.)—above all, especially, especially since

zu-muten (v.t.)—to expect, demand, ask

zunächst (adv.)—first of all; for the present

zu-nehmen (irr. v.i.)—to increase; to thrive, prosper

die **Zunge** (-n)— tongue

zupfen (i.)—to tug

zurecht-finden (r.)—to find one's way

zu-reden (v.i.)—to encourage

zu-richten (v.t.)—to prepare

* **zurück** (adv. and prep.)—back, backwards, behind

zurück-bringen—to bring back

** **zurück-führen** (v.t.)—to lead back; to trace back; to attribute to, to explain by

zurück-gehen (irr. v.i., aux.s.) —to return; to diminish, decline, to be cancelled; to go back

zurück-kehren (i., aux.s.)—to return, come back

zurück-kommen (i., aux.s.) —to return, come back

zurück-legen—to set aside

zurück-stellen (v.t.)—to replace; to postpone; to defer

die **Zurückweisung**—refusal, rejection, repudiation

* **zusammen** (adv. and sep. pref.)—together

zusammen-fassen—to combine; to summarize

der **Zusammenhang** (-s, ¨e)—connection, context

die **Zusammenkunft** (¨e)—meeting

zusammen-setzen (v.t.)—to compose

zusammen-stellen (v.t.)—to group, classify, compile

zusammen-ziehen (irr. v.t.)—to draw together; to condense

der **Zusatz** (-es, ¨e)—additional remark

der **Zuschauer** (-s, -)—spectator (pl.)—audience

zu-sehen (i.)—to watch

der **Zustand** (-es, ¨e)—state, condition

zustande (adv.)—**zustande bringen**—to accomplish, achieve; **zustande kommen** —to happen

zuständig (adj.)—proper, appropriate; responsible

zu-teilen—to allot; grant

zu-tragen—to carry, to report; (r.)—to happen

zuverlässig (adj.)—reliable

die **Zuversicht**—confidence

zuvor (adv.)—before, previously

zuwider (prep.) with dat.—opposed to; (adv.)—repugnant

der **Zwang** (-es, ¨e)—force, coercion

zwangsläufig (adj.)—inevitable; (adv.) —necessarily

* **zwar** (adv.)—indeed, certainly

der **Zweck** (-es, -e)—aim, goal

* **zwei**—two

zweierlei (indecl. adj.)—two sorts of; **zweierlei ist zu beachten**—two things *are* to be noticed

der **Zweifel** (-s, -) — doubt, uncertainty, misgivings; in **Zweifel stellen** or **ziehen** — to call into doubt
der **Zweig** (-es, -e) — branch
zweimal — twice
zweitens (adv.) — secondly, in the second place
der **Zwerg** (-es, -e) — dwarf
der **Zwiespalt** (-s, -e) — dissension, discord, schism, discrepency
zwingen, zwang, hat gezwungen (v.t.) — to force, compel; to finish; (v.r.) — to force oneself
* **zwischen** (prep.) with acc. or dat. — between (with reference to two things); among (with reference to three or more things)
das **Zwischenspiel** (-s, -e) — intermezzo, interlude; incident
die **Zwischenstunde**—interval, intermission
der **Zwist** (-es, -e) — dissension, discord, dispute
der **Zyniker** (-s, -) — cynic

ABBREVIATIONS

A

* **Abk. Abkürzung**—abbreviation
* **Abs. Absatz**—paragraph
allg. allgemein—general
allj. alljährlich — annual
allm. allmählich — gradual
* **Anh. Anhang**—appendix
Anm. Anmerkung — note
A. T. Altes Testament — Old Testament

B

* **b. bei** — at, with, in care of
* **bes. besonders**—especially
betr. betreffend—concerning
* **bez. bezüglich**—with reference to
bisw. bisweilen—sometimes
bzgl. bezüglich — with reference to
* **bzw. beziehungsweise**—respectively

C

* **ca. circa**—approximately

D

* **d.h. das heißt**—that is; i.e.
dt.(sch) deutsch—German

E

Ed. Edition, Ausgabe — edition
eig. eigtl. eigentlich — actually
einschl. einschließlich — inclusively

F

fig. figürlich—figurative

G

* **geb. geboren**—born
* **ges. gesamt**—total

H

haupts. hauptsächlich — mainly
hpts. hauptsächlich — mainly
hrsg. herausgegeben — edited

I

i.b. im besonderen — in particular
id. identisch — identical
i.g. im ganzen—on the whole
inbegr. inbegriffen — included
insb. insbesondere — in particular

insg. insgesamt—altogether
i.S. im Sinne—in the meaning of
& in Sachen—re, in the matter of
i.w.S. im weiteren Sinne—in a broad sense

J

* **Jh. Jahrhundert**—century

K

* **Kap. Kapitel**—chapter
kg. Kilogramm—kilogram
kompl. komplett—complete

L

lfd. laufend—current, running
lt. laut—according to

M

m.A.n. m; m. A. n. meiner Ansicht nach—in my opinion
m.a.W. mit anderen Worten—in other words
m.E. meines Erachtens—in my opinion
mind. mindestens—at least

N

n. J. nächsten Jahres—of next year
n.M. nächsten Monats—of next month
Nr. Nummer—number
N.T. Neues Testament—New Testament

O

* **o. oben**—above
* **o.a. oder ähnlich**—or the like

P

Prof. Professor—professor

R

* **rd. rund**—roughly
Red. Redakteur—editor
Redaktion—editorial staff, editor's office

S

* **S. Seite**—page
* **s. siehe**—see
* **s.a. siehe auch**—see also
selbst, selbständig—independent
* **s.o. siehe oben**—see above
* **sog. sogenannt**—so-called
* **s.u. siehe unten**—see below
svw. soviel wie—as much as
s.Z. seinerzeit—at that time

T

Tit. Titel—title

U

u. und—and
u.a. und anderes—and others;
unter anderem—among other things, inter alia
u.a. und ähnliches—and the like
übl. üblich—usual
usf. und so fort—and so forth
usw. und so weiter—and so forth, etc.

V

v. von, vom—of, from; by
* **vgl. vergleiche—compare, cf.**
v. J. vorigen Jahres—of last year
v.M. vorigen Monats—of last month
v.u. von unten—from below

W

* **w.o. wie oben**—as above mentioned

Z

* **z. zu, zur, zum**—to at
* **z.B. zum Beispiel**—for example
zgl. zugleich—at the same time
z.T. zum Teil—partly
* **zuf. zufolge**—as a result of
zus. zusammen—together
zw. zwischen—between, among

APPENDIX L

German Proper Names

Adenauer, Konrad (1876–1967)—first chancellor of the German Federal Republic
Adler, Alfred (1870–1937)—Austrian psychologist
Ägyptian—Egypt
Albertus Magnus (c. 1200–1280)—German philosopher
Antillen—Antilles
Aristoteles—Aristotle
Ärmelkanal—English Channel
Asien—Asia
Bach, Johann Sebastian (1685–1750)—German composer
Baden-Württemberg—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Barlach, Ernst (1870–1938)—German sculptor
Barth, Karl (1886–1968)—Swiss theologian
Bayern—Bavaria one of the 16 Länder of Germany.
Beckmann, Max (1884–1950)—German painter
Belgien—Belgium
Benjamin, Walter (1892–1940)—German writer and philosopher
Berg, Alban (1885–1935)—Austrian composer
Berlin—one of the 16 Länder of Germany. From 1963–1989, it was divided by the Berlin Wall. Now it is the capital of Germany.
Bismarck, Otto von (1815–1898)—German statesman
Bodensee—Lake of Constance
Böhme, Jakob (1575–1624)—German mystic
Böhmen—Bohemia

Böll, Heinrich (1917–85)—German author
Bonhoeffer, Dietrich (1906–1945)—German theologian who was executed on account of his attempt to assassinate Hitler
Brandenburg—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Brandt, Willi (1913–92)—German politician
Braunschweig—Brunswick
Brecht, Bertolt (1898–1956)—German dramatist
Bremen—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Bruckner, Anton (1824–96)—Austrian composer
Brüning, Heinrich (1885–1970)—Chancellor of the Weimar Republic
Brüssel—Brussels
Buber, Martin (1878–1965)—German philosopher
Büchner, Georg (1813–37)—German dramatist
Bukarest—Bucharest
Bulgarien—Bulgaria
Bundesrepublik—Federal Republic
Bundestag—German Parliament
Calais—Straits of Dover
Celan, Paul (1920–1970)—German poet
Deutschland—Germany
Deutsche Demokratische Republik—German Democratic Republic—former East Germany
Diesel, Rudolf (1858–1913)—German inventor
Donau—Danube
Dostojewskij—Doestoevsky
Dreißigjähriger Krieg (1618–1648)—Thirty years war
Dürer, Albrecht (1471–1538)—German painter
Dürrenmatt, Friedrich (1921–)—Swiss dramatist
Ebert, Friedrich (1871–1925)—first president of the Weimar Republic
Eckhart, Meister (c.1260–1327)—founder of German mysticism
Eichendorff, Joseph (1788–1857)—German poet
Eismeer—Arctic Ocean
Elbe—German river
Elsaß—Alsace
Engels, Friedrich (1820–95)—German philosopher
Erhard, Ludwig (1897–1977)—second chancellor of the Federal Republic of Germany
Ernst, Max (1891–1976)—German painter
Fasching—the German carnival season that lasts from 11 November until Shrove Tuesday
Faust—drama written by Goethe

Feuerbach, Ludwig (1804–72)—German theologian
Fichte, Johann (1762–1814)—German philosopher
Florenz—Florence
Fontane, Theodor (1819–1898)—German author
Frankreich—France
Frauenkirche—Church of Our Lady
Freud, Sigmund (1856–1939)—Austrian psychiatrist, founder of psychoanalysis
Friedrich der Große (1712–1786)—Fredrick the Great
Frisch, Max (1911–1991)—Swiss author
Genf—Geneva
George, Stephan (1868–1933)—German writer (who died in Switzerland)
Glück, Christoph (1714–1787)—German composer
Goethe, Johann Wolfgang (1749–1832)—German poet
Grass, Günter (1927–)—German author
Griechenland—Greece
Grimm, Jakob (1765–1863) & Wilhelm (1786–1859)—German philologists
Grimmelshausen, Hans (1625–1676)—German novelist
Grönland—Greenland
Großbritannien—Great Britain
Grünewald, Mathais (c. 1475–1528)—German painter
Hahn, Otto (1879–1968)—German chemist
Hartmann von Aue (d. between 1210 and 1220)—Middle High German Epic poet
Hamburg—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Hauptmann, Gerhart (1862–1946)—German dramatist
Hegel, Georg Willhelm Friedrich (1770–1831)—German philosopher
Heidegger, Martin (1889–1976)—German philosopher
Heine, Heinrich (1797–1856)—German poet
Herder, Johann (1744–1803)—German philosopher
Hesse, Hermann (1877–1962)—German poet
Hessen—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Hiob—Job
Hofmannsthal, Hugo (1874–1929)—German poet
Hohenzollern—German dynasty, beginning in the 12th century
Hölderlin, Johann (1770–1843)—German poet
Horaz—Horace
Humboldt, Alexander (1769–1859)—German naturalist
Indien—India
Irland—Ireland
Island—Iceland
Italien—Italy

Jaspers, Karl (1883–1969)—German philosopher
Johannas—John
Johanna von Orléans—Joan of Arc
Jung, Carl (1875–1961)—Swiss psychiatrist
Kafka, Franz (1883–1924)—Czech author
Kaiser, Georg (1878–1945)—German dramatist
Kant, Immanuel (1724–1804)—German philosopher
Karl der Große (c. 742–814)—Charlemagne
Keller, Gottfried (1819–1890)—Swiss author
Klee, Paul (1879–1940)—Swiss born painter
Kleist, Heinrich (1777–1811)—German poet
Köln—Cologne
Konstantin—Constantine
Konstanz—Constance
Leibniz, Gottfried (1646–1716)—German philosopher
Lenz, Jakob Michael Friedrich (1751–1792)—German writer of the Sturm und Drang period
Lessing, Gotthold (1729–1781)—German poet
Lothringen—Lorraine
Ludwig—Louis
Lukas—Luke
Luther, Martin (1483–1546)—German Reformation leader
Luzern—Lucerne
Mahler, Gustav (1860–1911)—Austrian composer
Mailand—Milan
Main—German river
Mann, Thomas (1875–1955)—German author
Marc, Franz (1880–1916)—German painter
Markus—Mark
Marokko—Morocco
Martini, Fritz (1909–1991)—German literary critic, most famous for *Deutsche Literaturgeschichte*
Matthäus—Matthew
Mecklenberg-Vorpommern—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Metternich, Clemens (1773–1859)—Austrian statesman
Minnesang (12th century)—German courtly love poetry
Mittelmeer—Mediterranean Sea
Mörike, Eduard (1804–1875)—German poet
Mosel—Moselle
Moskau—Moscow
Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus (1756–1791)—German composer

München—Munich
Neapel—Naples
Nibelungenlied—German epic (c.1200)
Niederlande—Netherlands
Niedersachsen—Lower Saxony—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Nietzsche, Friedrich (1844-1900)—German philosopher
Nil—Nile
Nordrhein-Westfalen—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Nordsee—North Sea
Norwegen—Norway
Novalis (Friedrich von Hardenberg) (1772-1801) German poet
Oder—German river
Ostasian—Eastern Asia
Österreich—Austria
Ostsee—Baltic
Palästina—Palastine
Parzival—Percival
Paulus—Paul
Platon—Plato
Polen—Poland
Pommern—Pommerania
Prag—Prague
Preußen—Prussia
Regensburg—Ratisbon
Rhein—Rhine river
Rheinland-Pfalz—Rhineland-Palatinate—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Richter, Jean Paul (1763-1825)—German writer
Rilke, Ranier Maria (1875-1926)—Austrian poet
Rom—Rome
Röntgen, Wilhelm (1845-1923)—German physicist, discoverer of X-rays
Ruhr—German river
Russand—Russia
Saale—German river
Saarland—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Sachsen—Saxony
Schiller, Johann Christian Friedrich (1759-1805)—German poet
Schlegel, Friedrich (1772-1829)—German poet
Schlesien—Silesia
Schleswig-Holstein—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Schliemann, Heinrich (1822-1890)—discoverer of Troy
Schnitzler, Arthur (1862-1931)—Austrian dramatist and novelist

Schönberg, Arnold (1874–1951)—German composer
Schopenhauer, Arthur (1788–1860)—German philosopher
Schottland—Scotland
Schwaben—Swabia
Schwarzwald—Black Forest
Schweden—Sweden
Schweitzer, Albert (1875–1965)—German theologian
Schweiz—Switzerland
Siberien—Siberia
Singapur—Singapore
Sizilien—Sicily
Spanien—Spain
Spengler, Oswald (1880–1936)—German philosopher
Spinoza, Baruch (1632–1677)—German philosopher
Stifter, Adelbert (1805–1868)—Austrian author
Strauss, Richard (1864–1949)—German composer
Themse—Thames
Thüringen—Thuringia—one of the 16 Länder of Germany
Tillich, Paul (1886–1965)—German theologian
Tolstoj—Tolstoi
Trakl, Georg (1887–1914)—Austrian poet
Tschechoslowakei—Czechoslovakia
Türkei—Turkey
Ungarn—Hungary
Vatikan—Vatican
Venedig—Venice
Vereinigte Staaten—United States
Wagner, Richard (1813–1883)—German composer
Walther von der Vogelweide—(c. 1170–1230) German poet
Warschau—Warsaw
Weiß, Peter (1916–1982)—German dramatist
Werfel, Franz (1890–1945)—Austrian author
Weser—German river
Wien—Vienna
Wittgenstein, Ludwig (1889–1951)—German philosopher
Wolfram von Eschenbach (c. 1170–1220)—German poet
Zweig, Stefan (1881–1942)—Austrian author
Zwingli, Ulrich (1484–1531)—Swiss Reformation leader
Zypern—Cyprus

Index